Abstract

tcolorbox provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part. The package tcolorbox can be used for the setting of \LaTeX examples where one part of the box displays the source code and the other part shows the output. Another common use case is the setting of theorems. The package supports saving and reuse of source code and text parts.

1 Introduction
  1.1 Installation .......................... 8
  1.2 Loading the Package .................. 8
  1.3 Libraries ............................ 9

2 Quick Reference .......................... 11

3 Macros for Box Creation ................. 12
  3.1 Using tcolorbox and \tcbox .......... 12
  3.2 Producing tcolorbox Environments and Commands ............. 15
  3.3 Producing \tcbox Commands ........... 19
  3.4 Redefining other Environments (Wrapping with tcolorbox) .... 22

4 Option Keys ............................... 23
  4.1 Title ................................ 23
  4.2 Subtitle .............................. 26
  4.3 Upper Part ............................ 27
  4.4 Lower Part ............................ 29
  4.5 Colors and Fonts ...................... 33
  4.6 Text Alignment ......................... 36
  4.7 Geometry .............................. 40
    4.7.1 Width ........................... 40
    4.7.2 Rules ............................ 41
    4.7.3 Arcs ............................. 42
    4.7.4 Spacing .......................... 45
    4.7.5 Size Shortcuts ..................... 50
    4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right ............. 52
  4.8 Corners ............................... 54
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>Watermark Option Keys</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>Clip Environments</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>Border Line Option Keys</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>Shadow Option Keys</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6.1</td>
<td>Common Shadows and Halos</td>
<td>204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6.2</td>
<td>Lifted Shadows</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6.3</td>
<td>Generic Shadows</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6.4</td>
<td>TikZ Shadows</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>TikZ Picture Option Keys</td>
<td>214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>Underlay Option Keys</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>Finish Option Keys</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>Hyper Option Keys</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>Jigsaw Skin Variants</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.12</td>
<td>Draft Mode</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Library skins - Catalog of Skins</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>Skin Family “standard”</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>Skin Family “enhanced”</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>Skin Family “bicolor”</td>
<td>243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>Skin Family “tile”</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>Skin Family “beamer”</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>Skin Family “widget”</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>Skin Family “empty”</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>Skin “spartan”</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.9</td>
<td>Skin “draft”</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.10</td>
<td>Skin Family “freelance”</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Inclusion of Boxed Image Files</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>Macros</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>Option Keys</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>TikZ Auxiliary Macros</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>Straightening of the Arcs</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>Extracting Node Dimensions</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Hyper Nodes</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Beamer Support</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Library vignette</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>Vignette Drawing</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>Generic Geometry Settings</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>Generic Color and Style Settings</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Generic Fading Settings</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>Vignette as Underlay</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>Vignette as Finish</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Library raster</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>Concept of Rasters</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>Macros of the Library</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>Option Keys of the Library</td>
<td>311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>Adding Styles for Specific Boxes</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>Combining Columns or Rows</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>Rasters inside Rasters</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.6.1 Raster Setup .................................. 322
16.6.2 Placing Spaces ................................ 323

17 Libraries  \texttt{ listings}, \texttt{ listingsutf8}, and \texttt{ minted}  .................................. 327
17.1 Loading the Libraries ................................ 327
  17.1.1 Loading \texttt{ listings} ......................... 327
  17.1.2 Loading \texttt{ listingsutf8} ................... 327
  17.1.3 Loading \texttt{ minted}  .......................... 328
17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries  .......................... 328
17.3 Producing \texttt{ tcblisting} Environments ................. 331
17.4 Producing \texttt{ tcbinputlisting} Commands .............. 335
17.5 Option Keys of the \texttt{ listings} Library .................. 337
17.6 Option Keys of the \texttt{ listingsutf8} Library ............. 339
17.7 Option Keys of the \texttt{ minted} Library .................. 340
17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries ...................... 342
17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples .... 352
17.10 Creation of \LaTeX{} Tutorials ......................... 359
17.11 Creation of \LaTeX{} Exercises .......................... 366
17.12 List of Exercises .................................. 369
17.13 Solutions for the given \LaTeX{} Exercises ................ 370

18 Library  \texttt{ theorems}  .................................. 372
18.1 Macros of the Library .................................. 372
18.2 Option Keys of the Library ................................ 377
18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems ...................... 393
18.4 Using other theorem environments with \texttt{tcolorbox} .... 398

19 Library  \texttt{ breakable} .................................. 399
19.1 Technical Overview ................................... 399
19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs ............................. 400
19.3 Main Option Keys ..................................... 401
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance ..................... 406
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes .......................... 408
19.6 Breakable boxes and the \texttt{ multicol} package .......... 411
19.7 Break Point Insertion .................................. 414
19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins ............................ 415
19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break) ............................. 425

20 Library  \texttt{ magazine}  .................................. 426
20.1 Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays ....................... 426
20.2 Storing Content ....................................... 427
20.3 Retrieving Content ..................................... 429
20.4 Box Dimensions ....................................... 432
20.5 Leaflet Example ....................................... 434

21 Library  \texttt{ poster} ..................................... 436
21.1 Overview ............................................. 436
21.2 Main Poster Environment .................................. 437
21.3 Poster Settings ....................................... 439
21.4 Coverage .............................................. 440
21.5 Common Box Settings .................................... 441
21.6 Font Scaling ........................................... 441
1 Introduction

The package originates from the first edition of my book «\LaTeX– Einführung in das Textsatzsystem» [20] in about 2006. For the \LaTeX examples and tutorials given there, I wanted to have accentuated and colored boxes to display source code and compiled text in combination. Since, in my opinion, this type of boxes is also quite useful to highlight definitions and theorems, I applied them for my lecture notes in mathematics [21–23] as well. With this package, you are invited to apply these boxes for similar projects.

The breaking news for version 2.00 was the support for breakable boxes. This feature allows new applications of the package without affecting the core package too much if you do not need boxes to break automatically. With version 2.20, the often requested “side by side” mode for listings has been added. With version 3.00, boxed titles are introduced together with improved customization options for overlays, underlays, finishes, and own code extensions.

Since the first public release in 2011, I received a lot of feedback from all over the world. I want to thank all who wrote me for supporting this package by sending bug reports and ideas for new or better features.

1.1 Installation

Typically, \texttt{tcolorbox} will be installed as part of a major \LaTeX distribution and there is nothing special to do for a user.

If you intend to make a local installation \textit{by hand}, see the README file of the \texttt{tcolorbox} package for some hints. The short story is: you have to install not only \texttt{tcolorbox.sty}, but also all *.code.tex files in the local \texttt{texmf} tree.

1.2 Loading the Package

The base package \texttt{tcolorbox} loads the packages \texttt{pgf} [24], \texttt{verbatim} [19], \texttt{etoolbox} [8], and \texttt{environ} [18]. \texttt{tcolorbox} itself is loaded in the usual manner in the preamble:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

The package takes option keys in the key-value syntax. Alternatively, you may use these keys later in the preamble with \texttt{\tcbuselibrary*\texttt{P.9}} (see there). For example, the key to typeset listings is:

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage[ listings]{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
1.3 Libraries

The base package \texttt{tcolorbox} is extendable by program libraries. This is done by using option keys while loading the package or inside the preamble by applying the following macro with the same set of keys.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{(key list)}
\end{verbatim}

Loads the libraries given by the \texttt{(key list)}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listings, theorems}
\end{verbatim}

The following keys are used inside \texttt{\tcbuselibrary} respectively \texttt{\usepackage} without the key tree path /tcb/library/.

\texttt{/tcb/library/skins} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[skins]}

Loads the package \texttt{tikz} [24] and provides additional styles (skins) for the appearance of the colored boxes; see Section 10 from page 169.

\texttt{/tcb/library/vignette} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[vignette]}

Provides code for more ornamental; see Section 15 from page 292.

\texttt{/tcb/library/raster} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[raster]}

Provides additional macros and options for typesetting multiple boxes arranged in a kind of raster; see Section 16 from page 305.

\texttt{/tcb/library/listings} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[listings]}

Loads the package \texttt{listings} [7] and provides additional macros for typesetting listings which are described in Section 17 from page 327.

\texttt{/tcb/library/listingsutf8} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[listingsutf8]}

Loads the packages \texttt{listings} [7] and \texttt{listingsutf8} [11] for UTF-8 support. This is a variant of the library \texttt{listings} and is described in Section 17 from page 327.

\texttt{/tcb/library/minted} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[minted]}

Loads the package \texttt{minted} [14] to typeset listings with the \texttt{Pygments} [16] tool, also see Section 17 on page 327.

\texttt{/tcb/library/theorems} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[theorems]}

Provides additional macros for typesetting theorems which are described in Section 18 from page 372.

\texttt{/tcb/library/breakable} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[breakable]}

Provides support for automatic box breaking from one page to another; see Section 19 on page 399.

\texttt{/tcb/library/magazine} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[magazine]}

Provides support for storing broken box parts to be used later or in interchanged order, Section 20 on page 426.

\texttt{/tcb/library/poster} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[poster]}

Provides support for creating posters, Section 21 on page 436.

\texttt{/tcb/library/fitting} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[fitting]}

Provides support for font size adaption of the box content to the box dimensions; see Section 22 from page 450.

\texttt{/tcb/library/hooks} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{[hooks]}

Extends several option keys to “hookable” keys; see Section 23 from page 464.
/tcb/library/xparse

Loads the package \texttt{xparse} and is considered a legacy library kept for compatibility; see Section 24 from page 476.

/tcb/library/external

Provides externalization support for stand-alone document snippets, see Section 25 on page 477.

/tcb/library/documentation

Provides additional macros for typesetting \LaTeX\ documents which are described in Section 26 from page 489.

/tcb/library/many (style, no value)

Loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, \texttt{breakable}, \texttt{raster}, \texttt{hooks}, \texttt{theorems}, and \texttt{fitting}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of typesetting listings and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/most (style, no value)

Loads all libraries except \texttt{minted}, \texttt{documentation}, and \texttt{xparse}. Use this shortcut, if you want to use all features of \texttt{tcolorbox} with exception of using the \texttt{minted} package and using the specialized \texttt{documentation} library.

/tcb/library/all (style, no value)

Loads all libraries. Use this shortcut only, if you intend to use the \texttt{documentation} library.

Package \texttt{tcolorbox}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Base package</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Advanced Features</th>
<th>Advanced Listings</th>
<th>Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{breakable}</td>
<td>\texttt{listings}</td>
<td>\texttt{documentation}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{external}</td>
<td>\texttt{listingsutf8}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{fitting}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{hooks}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{magazine}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{poster}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{raster}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{skins}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{theorems}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{vignette}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Legacy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{xparse}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 Macros for Box Creation

3.1 Using \texttt{tcolorbox} and \texttt{tcbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[\langle\textit{options}\rangle\]
\langle\textit{environment content}\rangle
\end{tcolorbox}

This is the main environment to create an accentuated colored text box with rounded corners and, optionally, two parts. The appearance of this box is controlled by numerous options. In the most simple case the source code

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

creates the following compiled text box:

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

The text content of the box can be divided in an upper and a lower part by the command \texttt{tcblower}. Visually, both parts are separated by a line. For example:

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

This code gives the following box:

This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

The \textit{\langle options\rangle} control the appearance and several functions of the boxes, see Section 4 on page 23 for the complete list. A quick example is given here:

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=My nice heading]
This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
Here, you see the lower part of the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My nice heading

This is another \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Here, you see the lower part of the box.

\tcblower

Used inside \texttt{tcolorbox} to separate the upper box part from the optional lower box part. The upper and the lower part are treated as separate functional units. If you only want to draw a line, see \texttt{tccline} \texttt{P.234}.
`\tcbset\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}`

Sets options for every following `tcolorbox` inside the current \TeX group. By default, this does not apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 103.

For example, the colors of the boxes may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{tcolorbox} \[\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}\] \end{tcolorbox}

`\tcbsetforeverylayer\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}`

Sets options for every following `tcolorbox` inside the current \TeX group. In contrast to `\tcbset`, this does also apply to nested boxes, see Section 4.16 on page 103. Technically, the `\langle\text{options}\rangle` are appended to the default values for every tcolorbox which are applied by `/tcb/reset`.

You should not use this macro, if you are not completely sure that you want to have the `\langle\text{options}\rangle` also for boxes in boxes (in boxes in boxes ...).

\begin{tcolorbox} \[\text{colback=green!10!white}\] \[\text{\tcbsetforeverylayer\{colframe=red!75!black\}}\] \begin{tcolorbox} \[\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=All options for this box] \text{This is a tcolorbox.} \text{\par\medskip} \end{tcolorbox}}} \text{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Nested box] \text{Note that this nested box has a red frame but no green background.} \end{tcolorbox}}} \end{tcolorbox} \bigskip \begin{tcolorbox} \[\text{\begin{tcolorbox}[reset]} \text{Options given with \texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer}} \text{survive a \texttt{\reset}.} \end{tcolorbox}}} \end{tcolorbox}
`\texttt{tcolorbox}`

Creates a colored box which is fitted to the width of the given `<box content>`. In principle, most `<options>` for a `tcolorbox` \textsuperscript{p.12} can be used for `tcolorbox` with some restrictions. A `tcbbox` cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black, 
  fonttitle=\bfseries,nobeforeafter,center title}

Text \tcbbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World} \hfill
% \tcbbox[left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm,boxsep=0mm, 
  toptitle=0.5mm,bottomtitle=0.5mm,title=My table]{% 
  \arrayrulecolor{blue!50!black}\renewcommand{\arraystretch}{1.2} 
  \begin{tabular}{ccc} One & Two & Three \\
   Men & Mice & Lions \\
   Upper & Middle & Lower \end{tabular} 
}{% \end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{tikz} 
\tcbset{colframe=blue!50!black,colback=white,colupper=red!50!black, 
  fonttitle=\bfseries,center title}

% Fixed width box \begin{tcolorbox}Hello\ World!\end{tcolorbox} 
% Fitted width box (like hbox or makebox) \tcbbox{Hello\ \World!} 
% Fitted width box (using a TikZ node) \tcbbox[tikznode]{Hello\ \World!} 
\end{verbatim}
3.2 Producing \texttt{tcolorbox} Environments and Commands

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\newtcolorbox\{\texttt{init options}\}\texttt{\{name\}\texttt{\{number\}\texttt{\{default\}\texttt{\{options\}}}}}
\end{Verbatim}

Creates a new environment \texttt{(name)} based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. Basically, \texttt{\newtcolorbox} operates like \texttt{\newenvironment}. This means, the new environment \texttt{(name)} optionally takes \texttt{(number)} arguments, where \texttt{(default)} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{(options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}. Note that /\texttt{tcb/savedelimiter} \textsuperscript{P.32} is set to the given \texttt{(name)} automatically. The \texttt{(init options)} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \begin{Verbatim}
  \texttt{\newtcolorbox\{mybox\}\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
  \end{Verbatim}
  \begin{Verbatim}
  \texttt{\begin{mybox}}
  \texttt{This is my own box.}
  \texttt{\end{mybox}}
  \end{Verbatim}
  \texttt{This is my own box.}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\newtcolorbox\{mybox\}[1]\{colback=red!5!white,}
    \texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},}
    \texttt{title=\texttt{\{#1\}}}\end{Verbatim}
    \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\begin{mybox}\{Hello there\}}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory title.}
    \texttt{\end{mybox}}
    \end{Verbatim}
    \texttt{Hello there}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory title.}
  \end{itemize}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\newtcolorbox\{mybox\}[2]\}{colback=red!5!white,}
    \texttt{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},}
    \texttt{colbacktitle=red!85!black,enhanced,}
    \texttt{attach boxed title to top center=\{yshift=-2mm,}
    \texttt{title=\texttt{\{#2,#1\}}}\end{Verbatim}
    \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\begin{mybox}[colback=yellow]\{Hello there\}}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory title}
    \texttt{and options.}
    \texttt{\end{mybox}}
    \end{Verbatim}
    \texttt{Hello there}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory title and options.}
  \end{itemize}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\newtcolorbox[auto counter, number within=section]{pabox}[2]\}{%}
    \texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries,}
    \texttt{title=Examp.-\texttt{\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}}}\end{Verbatim}
    \begin{Verbatim}
    \texttt{\begin{pabox}\{Hello there\}}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title}
    \texttt{and options.}
    \texttt{\end{pabox}}
    \end{Verbatim}
    \texttt{Examp. 3.1: Hello there}
    \texttt{This is my own box with a mandatory numbered title}
    \texttt{and options.}
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\renewtcolorbox\{\texttt{init options}\}\texttt{\{name\}\texttt{\{number\}\texttt{\{default\}\texttt{\{options\}}}}}
\end{Verbatim}

Operates like \texttt{\newtcolorbox}, but based on \texttt{\renewenvironment} instead of \texttt{\newenvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTColorBox{(init options)}\{\{name\}\{\{specification\}\}\{\{options\}\}

Creates a new environment \textit{(name)} based on \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{\textcopyright P.12}. Basically, \texttt{\NewTColorBox} operates like \texttt{\NewDocumentEnvironment}. This means, the new environment \textit{(name)} is constructed with the given argument \textit{(specification)}. An error is issued if an environment with \textit{(name)} has already been defined. The \textit{(options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{\textcopyright P.12}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{\textcopyright P.32} is set to the given \textit{(name)} automatically. The \textit{(init options)} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{verbatim}
% counter from previous example
\NewTColorBox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}{O{red} m d"" !O{} }
{enhanced,colframe=#1!75!black,colback=#1!5!white,
 fonttitle={\bfseries},title={\thetcbcounter~#2},
 IfValueT={#3}{watermark text={#3}},#4}
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{blue}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{green}{My title}"My Watermark"
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{yellow}{My title}[colbacktitle=yellow!50!white,coltitle=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{purple}{My title}"All together"[coltitle=yellow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{table}
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
3.2 My title & This is a tcolorbox. \\
\hline
3.3 My title & This is a tcolorbox. \\
\hline
3.4 My title & This is a tcolorbox. My Watermark \\
\hline
3.5 My title & This is a tcolorbox. \\
\hline
3.6 My title & This is a tcolorbox. All together \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTColorBox[\textit{\textbackslash init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTColorBox}
\texttt{\textsuperscript{P.16}}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. An existing environment is redefined.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTColorBox[\textit{\textbackslash init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTColorBox}
\texttt{\textsuperscript{P.16}}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. The environment \texttt{\textit{name}} is only created if it is not already defined.

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTColorBox[\textit{\textbackslash init options}]\{\textit{name}\}\{\textit{specification}\}\{\textit{options}\}}}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTColorBox}
\texttt{\textsuperscript{P.16}}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentEnvironment}. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.
\NewTotalTColorBox\{\langle init options \rangle\}\{\langle name \rangle\}\{\langle specification \rangle\}\{\langle options \rangle\}\{\langle content \rangle\}

Creates a new command \langle name \rangle based on tcolorbox\textsuperscript{-P.12}. In contrast to \NewTColorBox\textsuperscript{-P.16}, also the \langle content \rangle of the tcolorbox is specified. Basically, \NewTotalTColorBox operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name \rangle is constructed with the given argument \langle specification \rangle. An error is issued if \langle name \rangle has already been defined. The \langle options \rangle are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{-P.12} which is filled with the specified \langle content \rangle.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{-P.32} is set to the given \langle name \rangle automatically. Also note that \texttt{/tcb/saveto}\textsuperscript{-P.28} and \texttt{/tcb/savelowerto}\textsuperscript{-P.29} cannot be used with \NewTotalTColorBox and friends.

The \langle init options \rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\NewTotalTColorBox{\diabox}{ O{} v m }
{ bicolor, nobeforeafter, equal height group=\diabox, width=5.7cm,
  fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries\ttfamily}, adjusted title=\#2, center title,
  colframe=blue!20!black, leftupper=0mm, rightupper=0mm, colback=black!75!white, \#1}
{ \tikz\path[fill zoom image=\#2] (0,0) rectangle (\linewidth,4cm);
  \tcblower #3}

\diabox{blueshade.png}{Created with \texttt{GIMP}.\\url{http://www.gimp.org}}
\diabox{goldshade.png}{Created with \texttt{GIMP}.\\url{http://www.gimp.org}}

\RenewTotalTColorBox\{\langle init options \rangle\}\{\langle name \rangle\}\{\langle specification \rangle\}\{\langle options \rangle\}\{\langle content \rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTColorBox\{\langle init options \rangle\}\{\langle name \rangle\}\{\langle specification \rangle\}\{\langle options \rangle\}\{\langle content \rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \langle name \rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTColorBox\{\langle init options \rangle\}\{\langle name \rangle\}\{\langle specification \rangle\}\{\langle options \rangle\}\{\langle content \rangle\}

Operates like \NewTotalTColorBox, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
3.3 Producing \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox} Commands

\texttt{\textbackslash newtcbox}\{\texttt{\textbackslash init\ options}\}\{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle number\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle default\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}

Creates a new macro \texttt{\langle name\rangle} based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash newtcbox} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash newcommand}. The new macro \texttt{\langle name\rangle} optionally takes \texttt{\langle number\rangle}+1 arguments, where \texttt{\langle default\rangle} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbox}. The \texttt{\langle init\ options\rangle} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox{\mybox}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black}
\mybox{This is my own box.}
\end{verbatim}

This is my own box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox{\mybox}[1]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#1}}
\mybox{Hello there}{This is my own box.}
\end{verbatim}

Hello there
This is my own box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox{\mybox}[2]\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title={#2},#1}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{Hello there} %
{This is my own box.}
\end{verbatim}

Hello there
This is my own box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox\[use counter from=pabox\]{\pbbox}[2]\{
\% counter from previous example
\colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=(\thetcbcounter) #2,#1
\}
\pbbox[colback=yellow]{Hello there} %
{This is my own box.}
\end{verbatim}

(3.7) Hello there
This is my own box.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcbox\[red\]{on line, arc=0pt,outer arc=0pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black, boxsep=0pt,left=1pt,right=1pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt, boxrule=0pt,bottomrule=1pt,toprule=1pt}
\newtcbox\[red\]{on line, arc=7pt,colback=#1!10!white,colframe=#1!50!black, before upper=\{\rule[-3pt]{0pt}{10pt}\},boxrule=1pt, boxsep=0pt,left=6pt,right=6pt,top=2pt,bottom=2pt}
\end{verbatim}

The \texttt{\mybox[green]{\texttt{\textbackslash quick}} brown}\ \texttt{\mybox[blue]{\texttt{\textbackslash fox}}} \texttt{\mybox[blue]{\texttt{\textbackslash jumps}}} over the \\
\texttt{\mybox[green]{\texttt{\textbackslash lazy}}} \texttt{\mybox[dog].}\ \texttt{\par}

The \texttt{\mybox[green]{\texttt{\textbackslash quick}} brown}\ \texttt{\mybox[fox]} \texttt{\mybox[blue]{\texttt{\textbackslash jumps}}} over the \\
\texttt{\mybox[green]{\texttt{\textbackslash lazy}}} \texttt{\mybox[dog].}

The \texttt{\textcolor{green}{\texttt{\textbackslash quick}} brown}\ \texttt{\textcolor{red}{\texttt{\textbackslash fox}}} \texttt{\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textbackslash jumps}}} over the \texttt{\textcolor{green}{\texttt{\textbackslash lazy}}} \texttt{\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{\textbackslash dog}}.}
\renewtcbox{(init options)}{(name)}{(number)}{(default)}{(options)}

Operates like \newtcbox\textsuperscript{P.19}, but based on \renewcommand instead of \newcommand. An existing macro is redefined.

\NewTCBox{(init options)}{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Creates a new command \(\text{name}\) based on \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14}. Basically, \NewTCBox operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \(\text{name}\) is constructed with the given argument \(\text{specification}\). An error is issued if \(\text{name}\) has already been defined. The \(\text{options}\) are given to the underlying \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14}.

Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}\textsuperscript{P.32} is set to the given \(\text{name}\) automatically.

The \(\text{init options}\) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{verbatim}
% counter from previous example
\NewTCBox[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}{ s m s }
{ nobeforeafter, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,
  title={#2 (Box \thetcbcounter)}, fonttitle=\bfseries,
  IfBooleanT={#1}{enhanced, drop shadow},
  IfBooleanT={#3}{colbacktitle=red!50!white} }

\mybox(Bird){This is my first box.}
\hfill
\mybox*{Tree}{This is my second box.}
\par\bigskip
\mybox(Bike)*{This is my third box.}
\hfill
\mybox*{City}*{This is my fourth box.}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{tcblist}
\item[\text{Bird (Box 3.8)}] This is my first box.
\item[\text{Tree (Box 3.9)}] This is my second box.
\item[\text{Bike (Box 3.10)}] This is my third box.
\item[\text{City (Box 3.11)}] This is my fourth box.
\end{tcblist}

\RenewTCBox{(init options)}{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBox{(init options)}{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \(\text{name}\) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBox{(init options)}{(name)}{(specification)}{(options)}

Operates like \NewTCBox, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
\NewTotalTCBox{}\{⟨name⟩\}\{⟨specification⟩\}\{⟨options⟩\}\{⟨content⟩\}

Creates a new command \texttt{⟨name⟩} based on \texttt{tcbox}–P.14. In contrast to \texttt{NewTCBox}–P.20, also the \{⟨content⟩\} of the \texttt{tcbox} is specified. Basically, \texttt{NewTotalTCBox} operates like \texttt{NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{⟨name⟩} is constructed with the given argument \{⟨specification⟩\}. An error is issued if \texttt{⟨name⟩} has already been defined. The \{⟨options⟩\} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbox}–P.14 which is filled with the specified \{⟨content⟩\}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter}–P.32 is set to the given \texttt{⟨name⟩} automatically. The \{⟨init options⟩\} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\NewTotalTCBox{⟨myverb⟩}{0{red} v !0{}}
{ fontupper=\ttfamily, nobeforeafter, tcbox raise base, arc=opt, outer arc=opt, top=opt, bottom=opt, left=0mm, right=0mm, leftrule=opt, rightrule=opt, toprule=0.3mm, bottomrule=0.3mm, boxsep=0.5mm, colback=#1!10!white, colframe=#1!50!black, #3}{#2}

To set a word \texttt{bold} in \texttt{myverb} \LaTeX, use \texttt{myverb[green]{\textbf{bold}}} or \texttt{myverb[yellow]{\bfseries bold}}.

In \texttt{myverb[blue]{\LaTeX}[enhanced,fuzzy halo]}, other font settings are done in the same way, e.g. \texttt{myverb[\textit]}, \texttt{myverb[\itshape]} or \texttt{myverb[\texttt]} or \texttt{myverb[\ttfamily]}.

\NewTotalTCBox{\commandbox}{s v}
{verbatim, colupper=white, colback=black!75!white, colframe=black}
{\IfBooleanT{#1}{\textcolor{red}{\ttfamily\bfseries > }}%
 \lstinline[language=command.com, keywordstyle=\color{blue!35!white}\bfseries ]{^#2^}#2}}

\commandbox*{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \commandbox{My Documents}.

\commandbox*{dir /A} lists the directory content.

\commandbox*{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \commandbox{example.txt} to \commandbox{d:\target}.

\texttt{cd "My Documents"} changes to directory \texttt{My Documents}.
\texttt{dir /A} lists the directory content.
\texttt{copy example.txt d:\target} copies \texttt{example.txt} to \texttt{d:\target}.

The next example uses \texttt{\texttt{\texttt{}}} from the \texttt{listings} package to typeset the verbatim content.
\RenewTotalTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨content⟩}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨content⟩}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \langle name \rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTCBox[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨content⟩}

Operates like \NewTotalTCBox\textsuperscript{P.21}, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

\tcboxverb[(options)]{⟨verbatim box content⟩}

Creates a colored box based on \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14} which is fitted to the width of the given \langle verbatim box content \rangle. The underlying \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14} is styled with /tcb/verbatim\textsuperscript{P.109} plus the given \langle options \rangle. The difference to \tcbox\textsuperscript{P.14} is that the \langle verbatim box content \rangle is interpreted verbatim. Therefore, \tcboxverb acts similar to \verb.

\tcboxverb{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[colback=blue!10!white,colupper=blue]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[blank,fuzzy halo]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[beamer]{\LaTeX}, \tcboxverb[enhanced,skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw,colframe=red]{\LaTeX}.

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
\hline
\LaTeX & \LaTeX & \LaTeX \\hline
\end{tabular}

3.4 Redefining other Environments (Wrapping with \texttt{tcolorbox})

\tcolorboxenvironment{(name)}{(options)}

An existing environment \langle name \rangle is redefined to be boxed inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given \langle options \rangle.

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|l|}
\hline
% tcbuselibrary{skins}  
\newenvironment{myitemize}{%  
\begin{itemize}}{%  
\end{itemize}}

\tcolorboxenvironment{myitemize}{blanker,  
before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,  
borderline west={3mm}{0pt}{red}}

Some text.  
\begin{myitemize}  
\item Alpha  
\item Beta  
\item Gamma  
\end{myitemize}  
More text.

Some text.  
\begin{myitemize}  
\item Alpha  
\item Beta  
\item Gamma  
\end{myitemize}  
More text.

See further examples in Section 18.4 on page 398.
4 Option Keys

For the *options* in \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} respectively \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{P.13} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros. It is easy to add your own style keys using the syntax for \texttt{pgf} keys, see \cite{20,24} or the examples starting from page 359.

4.1 Title

\texttt{/tcb/title} = \langle text \rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Creates a heading line with \langle text \rangle as content.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My heading line]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
My heading line
This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/notitle} \quad \text{(no value, initially set)}

Removes the title line if set before.

\texttt{/tcb/adjusted title} = \langle text \rangle \quad \text{(style, no default, initially unset)}

Creates a heading line with \langle text \rangle as content. The minimal height of this line is adjusted to fit the text given by \texttt{/tcb/adjust text}. This option makes sense for single line headings if boxes are set side by side with equal height. Note that it is very easy to trick this adjustment.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=White,arc=0mm,width=(\linewidth-4pt)/4, equal height group=AT,before=,after=\hfill,fonttitle=\bfseries}

The following titles are not adjusted:\\ 
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,Ägypten}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\n,colframe=red!75!black]
Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}

Now, we try again with adjusted titles:\\ 
\foreach \n in {xxx,ggg,AAA,Ägypten}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=\n,colframe=blue!75!black]
Some content.\end{tcolorbox}}

The following titles are not adjusted:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XXX</th>
<th>ggg</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>Ägypten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, we try again with adjusted titles:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XXX</th>
<th>ggg</th>
<th>AAA</th>
<th>Ägypten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
<td>Some content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{/tcb/adjust text} = \langle text \rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially Äpgjy)}

This sets the reference text for \texttt{/tcb/adjusted title}. If your texts never exceed “Äpgjy” in depth and height you don’t need to care about this option.
\[ /tcb/squeezed\ title=\langle\text\rangle \] (style, no default, initially unset)

Creates a single heading line with \langle\text\rangle as content. If the \langle\text\rangle is longer than the available space, the text is squeezed to fit into the available space.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,\scriptsize]
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title=\langle Short title\rangle}\] First box
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title=\langle This is a very very long title\rangle}\] Second box
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title=\langle This title is clearly too long for this application\rangle}\] Third box
\end{tcbitemize}

\[ /tcb/squeezed\ title*=\langle\text\rangle \] (style, no default, initially unset)

This is a combination of \texttt{/tcb/adjusted title} P.23 and \texttt{/tcb/squeezed title}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height,\scriptsize]
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title*=\langle Short title\rangle}\] First box
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title*=\langle This is a very very long title\rangle}\] Second box
\tcbitem \[\text{squeezed title*=\langle This title is clearly too long for this application\rangle}\] Third box
\end{tcbitemize}

\[ /tcb/titlebox=\langle mode\rangle \] (no default, initially visible)

Controls the treatment of the title part of the box. Feasible values for \langle mode\rangle are:
\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the title box,
\item \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the title contents.
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My invisible title,\scriptsize]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/detach title
Detaches the title from its normal position. The text of the title is stored into \tcbtitlename and the formatted title is available by \tcbtitle. The main application is to move the title from its usual place to another one.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][\{colbacktitle=red!10!white, colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, title=#2,fonttitle=\bfseries,\}]{My title}
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title, before upper=\tcbtitle\quad]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[detach title, after upper=\par\hfill \tcbtitle]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

This is a tcolorbox.

My title

My title — This is a tcolorbox.

My title: This is a tcolorbox.

/\tcb/attach title
Attaches the title to its normal position. This option is used to reverse /tcb/detach title.

/\tcb/attach title to upper=(text)
Attaches the title to the begin of the upper part of the box content. The optional \textit{text} is set between the formatted title and the box content.

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[2][\{colbacktitle=red!10!white, colback=blue!10!white,coltitle=red!70!black, title=#2,fonttitle=\bfseries,\}]{My title}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper={---}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[attach title to upper, after title={:}]{My title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

My title — This is a tcolorbox.

My title: This is a tcolorbox.

More title options are documented in Section 4.11 on page 70 and Section 10.2 on page 176.
4.2 Subtitle

Inside the box content, one or more subtitles can be added. In general, a subtitle is a further \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) which inherits some color and geometry options from the enclosing box. It may be customized just like any other \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,  
colback=red!5!white,  
colframe=red!75!black,  
fonttitle=\bfseries]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.  
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]{My subtitle}  
Further text.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,  
colback=red!5!white,  
colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=yellow!50!red,  
coltitle=red!25!black,  
fonttitle=\bfseries]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.  
\tcbsubtitle[before skip=\baselineskip]{My subtitle}  
Further text.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.

\texttt{\tcbsubtitle (options)}{(text)}

Used inside a \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) to add a subtitle box with the given \texttt{(text)}. This is an independent \texttt{tcolorbox}\(^{P.12}\) which is formatted by several inherited properties of the enclosing box, by further settings from \texttt{/tcb/subtitle style}, and by the given \texttt{(options)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,  
colback=red!5!white,  
colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=yellow!50!red!25!white,  
colupper=red!75!gray]  
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.  
\tcbsubtitle{My subtitle}  
Further text.  
\tcbsubtitle{Second subtitle}  
Further text.  
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
My subtitle
Further text.
Second subtitle
Further text.

\texttt{/tcb/subtitle style}=\texttt{(options)}

(no default, initially empty)

Adds \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(options)} to the settings for \texttt{\tcbsubtitle}.
4.3 Upper Part

The text content of a \texttt{tcolorbox} may be parted into a mandatory upper part and an optional lower part. These parts are separated by \texttt{tcblower}. If there is no \texttt{tcblower} present, there is no lower part and the upper part forms the complete text content.

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[upperbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox} (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\[27\]
\begin{tcolorbox}[invisible,saveto=\jobname_mysave1.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} which seems to be empty. The content is saved for later usage.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_mysave1.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}[saveto=\jobname_mysave2.tex]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,colback=red!10,coltitle=black,colbacktitle=red!20,sidebyside,title=Here we see the saved content including the lower part]
\input{\jobname_mysave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is the lower part.
4.4 Lower Part

\texttt{/tcb/lowerbox=\langle mode \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially \texttt{visible})}

Controls the treatment of the lower part of the box. Feasible values for \langle mode \rangle are:

- \texttt{visible}: usual type setting of the lower part,
- \texttt{invisible}: empty space instead of the lower part contents,
- \texttt{ignored}: the lower part is not used (here).

The last two values are usually applied in connection with \texttt{savelowerto}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but invisible).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=ignored,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part (but ignored).
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex:
$\frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname bspsave.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/savelowerto=\langle file name \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}

Saves the content of the lower part into a file for an optional later usage.

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part which may be quite complex:
$\frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname bspsave.tex}

\begin{tcolorbox}[lowerbox=invisible,savelowerto=\jobname bspsave.tex,colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is a \textcolor{red}{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part which may be quite complex: $f(x) = \frac{1+x^2}{1-x^2}$. 
This is a combination of /tcb/savelowerto → P.29 and /tcb/lowerbox → P.29 = ignored and additionally avoids typesetting the content of the lower part. This can be useful, if the lower part contains counters or similar.

\setcounter{enumi}{1}
Test counter: \theenumi

\begin{tcolorbox}[\redirectlowerto=\jobname_bspsave.tex, colback=white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part. \stepcounter{enumi}
New value of test counter: \theenumi.
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, we load the saved text:
\input{\jobname_bspsave.tex}

Test counter: 1

This is a tcolorbox.

Now, we load the saved text:
This is the lower part. New value of test counter: 2.
/tcb/lower separated=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to true, the lower part is visually separated from the upper part. It depends on the chosen skin how the visualization of the separation is done.

% \tcbslibrary{skins,raster}
\begin{tcbraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower separated]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,title=Lower not separated,lower separated=false]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
% 
\end{tcbraster}
/tcb/savedelimiter=(name)  (no default, initially tcolorbox)

Used in connection with new environment definitions which extend tcolorbox and use or allow the option savelowerto. To catch the end of the new box environment (name) has to be the name of this environment. Additionally, the environment definition has to use \texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}} instead of \begin{tcolorbox} and \end{tcolorbox} instead of \end{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example

Upper part.

Now, the saved part is used:

Saved lower part!

The savedelimiter is used implicitly with \texttt{\newtcolorbox} P.15 which allows a more convenient usage:

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{mybox}{My Example}
Upper part.
\tcblower
Saved lower part!
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Now, the saved part is used:
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!5]
\input{\jobname_bspsave2.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

My Example

Upper part.

Now, the saved part is used:

Saved lower part!
4.5 Colors and Fonts

\texttt{/tcb/colframe\textasciitilde(color)} 
(no default, initially \texttt{black!75!white})

Sets the frame \texttt{⟨color⟩} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colback\textasciitilde(color)} 
(no default, initially \texttt{black!5!white})

Sets the background \texttt{⟨color⟩} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Also see \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower\textasciitilde P.245} of the \texttt{3skins} library.

\texttt{/tcb/title filled\textasciitilde true|false} 
(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Switches the drawing of the title background according to the given value. This option is set to \texttt{true} automatically by \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle, /tcb/opacitybacktitle\textasciitilde P.57}, and \texttt{/tcb/title style\textasciitilde P.172}, and \texttt{/tcb/title code\textasciitilde P.160}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, title filled]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, title filled=false]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle\textasciitilde(color)} 
(no default, initially \texttt{black!50!white})

Sets the background \texttt{⟨color⟩} of the title area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colbacktitle=red!50!white, title=My title, coltitle=black, fonttitle=bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
/tcb/colupper=\langle color\rangle  \hspace{0.5cm} (no default, initially black)
Sets the text \langle color\rangle of the upper part.
\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/collower=\langle color\rangle  \hspace{0.5cm} (no default, initially black)
Sets the text \langle color\rangle of the lower part.
\begin{tcolorbox}[collower=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/coltext=\langle color\rangle  \hspace{0.5cm} (style, no default, initially black)
Sets the text \langle color\rangle of the box. This is an abbreviation for setting colupper and collower to the same value.
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltext=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/coltitle=\langle color\rangle  \hspace{0.5cm} (no default, initially white)
Sets the title text \langle color\rangle of the box.
\begin{tcolorbox}[coltitle=red!75!black, 
colbacktitle=black!10!white,title=Test]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Test
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
Sets \( \text{text} \) before the content of the upper part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontupper=Hello!-\sffamily]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello! This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Sets \( \text{text} \) before the content of the lower part (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fontlower=\sffamily\bfseries]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

Sets \( \text{text} \) before the content of the title text (e.g. font settings).

\begin{tcolorbox}[fonttitle=\sffamily\bfseries\large,title=Hello]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Hello
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

More color options are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 169.
4.6 Text Alignment

If there is no lower part, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{(alignment)} of the text content. Otherwise, \texttt{halign} determines the horizontal \texttt{(alignment)} of the upper part of the box only. The feasible values for \texttt{(alignment)} are more or less identical to the corresponding \texttt{/tikz/align} settings, even if the implementation differs.

- \texttt{justify}: usual left and right justified type setting.
- \texttt{left}: left border justification in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \texttt{flush left}: left border justification with \texttt{\raggedright} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \texttt{right}: right border justification in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \texttt{flush right}: right border justification with \texttt{\raggedleft} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \texttt{center}: centering in analogy to plain \texttt{\LaTeX}.
- \texttt{flush center}: centering with \texttt{\centering} of \texttt{\LaTeX}.

The differences between the flush and non-flush version are explained in detail in the \texttt{TikZ} manual [24]. The short story is that the non-flush versions will often look more balanced but with more hyphenations. \texttt{/tcb/halign upper} is an alias for \texttt{/tcb/halign}.
If `/tcb/halign` resp. `/tcb/halign upper` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign code` resp. `/tcb/halign upper code` allows to set arbitrary `<code>` to configure the horizontal alignment of the text content, e.g. using alignments from specialized packages.

If `/tcb/halign lower` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign lower code` allows to set arbitrary `<code>` to configure the horizontal alignment of the lower part of the box. The feasible values for `<alignment>` are the same as for `/tcb/halign`.

```latex
\begin{tcbraster}
[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign lower=flush center]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign lower=flush left]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign lower=flush right]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign lower=center]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign lower=left]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign lower=right]
Upper part. \textsc{tcblower} Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
```

If `/tcb/halign lower` is not flexible enough, `/tcb/halign lower code` allows to set arbitrary `<code>` to configure the horizontal alignment of the lower part of the box.

```
/tcb/halign lower code={⟨code⟩}
```

(no default)
/tcb/halign title=⟨alignment⟩ (no default, initially justify)

halign title determines the horizontal ⟨alignment⟩ of the title of the box. The feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are the same as for /tcb/halign → P.36.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,fonttitle=\bfseries, colback=red!15!white,colframe=red!75!black]
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush center,halign title=flush center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush left,halign title=flush left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=flush right,halign title=flush right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,halign title=center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=left,halign title=left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=right,halign title=right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{flushcenter}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{flushcenter}

\begin{flushleft}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{flushleft}

\begin{flushright}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{flushright}

\begin{center}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{center}

\begin{left}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{left}

\begin{right}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{right}

/tcb/halign title code={⟨code⟩} (no default)

If /tcb/halign title is not flexible enough, /tcb/halign title code allows to set arbitrary ⟨code⟩ to configure the horizontal alignment of the title of the box.

/tcb/flushleft upper (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P.36 to flush left.

/tcb/center upper (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P.36 to flush center.

/tcb/flushright upper (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign → P.36 to flush right.

/tcb/flushleft lower (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P.37 to flush left.

/tcb/center lower (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P.37 to flush center.

/tcb/flushright lower (style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/halign lower → P.37 to flush right.
Shortcut for setting \tcb/halign title \(^{\text{P.38}}\) to **flush left**.

Shortcut for setting \tcb/halign title \(^{\text{P.38}}\) to **flush center**.

Shortcut for setting \tcb/halign title \(^{\text{P.38}}\) to **flush right**.

The vertical alignment settings are only relevant for boxes which are larger than their natural height, see Section 4.10 on page 59.

If the height of a \tcolorbox{} is not the natural height, \texttt{valign} determines the vertical \langle alignment \rangle of the upper part. Feasible values are:

- **top**: Anchor text at top.
- **center**: Anchor text at center.
- **bottom**: Anchor text at bottom.
- **scale**: Scale text vertically to fit into the available space. This is brutal and may not look very good. Consider Section 22 on page 450 alternatively.
- **scale\***: Like \texttt{scale}, but scaling is bounded by \texttt{/tcb/valign scale limit}.

For a box with natural height, these settings are meaningless.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/valign upper}\langle alignment\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially top)}

Alias for \texttt{/tcb/valign}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/valign lower}\langle alignment\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially top)}

This key has the same meaning for the lower part as \texttt{valign} for the upper part, i.e., it determines the vertical \langle alignment \rangle of the lower part with feasible values top, center, bottom, scale, and scale\*.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/valign scale limit}\langle real number\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially 1.1)}

Sets an upper scale limit for the \texttt{scale\*} setting in \texttt{/tcb/valign} and \texttt{/tcb/valign lower}. Note that this value is not reset by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \(^{\text{P.120}}\). So, changes also apply to embedded boxes.

Also see \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside align} \(^{\text{P.136}}\) for alignment settings when upper part and lower part are set side-by-side.
4.7 Geometry

4.7.1 Width

\texttt{/tcb/width=⟨length⟩} (no default, initially \texttt{\linewidth})

Sets the total width of the colored box to \texttt{⟨length⟩}. See also \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.59}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth/2]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{\tcbset\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[text width=4cm]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}} where the text has a width of 4cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox} where the text has a width of 4cm.

\texttt{\tcbset\{width=4cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to width=1cm]
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

See Section 4.10 on page 59 for setting fixed height values.
4.7.2 Rules

\( /tcb/toprule=\langle \text{length} \rangle \) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the top rule to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcolorbox}[toprule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\( /tcb/bottomrule=\langle \text{length} \rangle \) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the bottom rule to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\( /tcb/leftrule=\langle \text{length} \rangle \) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the left rule to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\( /tcb/rightrule=\langle \text{length} \rangle \) (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the right rule to \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcolorbox}[rightrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/titlerule=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets the line width of the rule below the title to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[titlerule=3mm,title=This is the title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/boxrule=⟨length⟩ (style, no default, initially 0.5mm)
Sets all rules of the frame to ⟨length⟩, i.e. /tcb/toprule→P.41, /tcb/bottomrule→P.41, /tcb/leftrule→P.41, /tcb/rightrule→P.41, and /tcb/titlerule.

\begin{tcolorbox}[boxrule=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

More options for drawing a /tcb/borderline→P.199 are provided by using skins documented in Section 10 from page 169.

4.7.3 Arcs
/tcb/arc=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 1mm)
Sets the inner radius of the four frame arcs to ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets \texttt{/tcb/arc} to match the half of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, this gives a circle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center, square, circular arc]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

If the height of the box is smaller than the width, the result will look quite ugly.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, halign=center, valign=center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This only works for a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height}. Also, \texttt{/tcb/bean arc} must be used after width and height are set by option keys.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm, height=2cm, bean arc]
Box A
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=2cm, height=3cm, bean arc]
Box B
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets \texttt{/tcb/arc} to match \(\frac{1}{2+\sqrt{2}}\) of the inner width of the colored box. If width and height of the box are identical, the interior is a regular octogon.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced, size=minimal, auto outer arc, width=2.1cm, octogon arc, colback=red, colframe=white, colupper=white, fontupper=\fontsize{7mm}{7mm}\selectfont\bfseries\sffamily, halign=center, valign=center, square, arc is angular, borderline={0.2mm}{-1mm}{red}]
STOP
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/arc is angular

Using this option applies a patch which straightens the corners arcs of the boxes. The little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original TikZ code. This change may break with future updates of TikZ.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is angular]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[arc is curved]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/outer arc=(length)

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=4mm, outer arc=1mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/auto outer arc

Sets the outer radius of the four frame arcs automatically in dependency of the inner radius given by /tcb/arc \textsuperscript{P. 42}. 

\begin{tcolorbox}[arc=3mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.7.4 Spacing

`/tcb/boxsep=⟨length⟩`  
(no default, initially 1mm)

Sets a common padding of ⟨length⟩ between the text content and the frame of the box. This value is added to the key values of left, right, top, bottom, and middle at the appropriate places.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,
  before=,after=\\hfill}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
interior: w=192.4873pt, h=46.1298pt
```

```
frame: w=195.33255pt, h=48.97505pt
```

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxsep=5mm,draft]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm,\enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
\\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to left by=5mm,left*=0mm,\enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is some text.
```

This is some text.

```
\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}
```

```
N 2017-02-16
```

```
/tcb/left=⟨length⟩  
(style, no default, initially 4mm)
```

Sets the left space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting lefttitle, leftupper, and leftlower to the same value.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm,\enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[left=0mm,\enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is some text.
\[tcb/lefttitle=(length)\] (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between title text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[lefttitle=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[tcb/leftupper=(length)\] (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between upper text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftupper=3cm,title=My Title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[tcb/leftlower=(length)\] (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the left space between lower text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[leftlower=3cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[tcb/right=(length)\] (style, no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the right space between all text parts and frame (additional to boxsep). This is an abbreviation for setting righttitle, rightupper, and rightlower to the same value.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,right=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=5mm, right*=0mm, halign=right, enhanced, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is some text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm, righttitle=2cm, title=My very long title text]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

My very long title text

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with compressed upper box dimensions.
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,rightlower=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
\tcblower
This is the lower part with large space at right.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with standard upper box dimensions.
This is the lower part with large space at right.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[top=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[toptitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\texttt{/tcb/rightlower}=(\textit{length}) \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially 4mm)
Sets the right space between lower text and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).

\texttt{/tcb/top}=(\textit{length}) \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially 2mm)
Sets the top space between text and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).

\texttt{/tcb/toptitle}=(\textit{length}) \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially 0mm)
Sets the top space between title and frame (additional to \texttt{boxsep}).
/tcb/bottom=\langle length \rangle 
(no default, initially 2mm)
Sets the bottom space between text and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottom=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.

/tcb/bottomtitle=\langle length \rangle 
(no default, initially 0mm)
Sets the bottom space between title and frame (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[bottomtitle=3mm,title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

This is a tcolorbox.

/tcb/middle=\langle length \rangle 
(no default, initially 2mm)
Sets the space between upper and lower text to the separation line (additional to boxsep).

\begin{tcolorbox}[middle=0mm,boxsep=0mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

This is the lower part.
4.7.5 Size Shortcuts

\[ /tcb/size\langle \text{name} \rangle \]
(no default, initially \text{normal})

Sets all geometry keys with exception of \[ /tcb/width \] P. 40 to predefined length values. For \text{name}, the following values are feasible:

- \text{normal}: normal sized boxes e.g. of width \texttt{\linewidth}.
- \text{title}: title line sized boxes.
- \text{small}: small boxes e.g. for keyword highlighting.
- \text{fbox}: identical to the standard \texttt{\fbox}.
- \text{tight}: no padding space at all.
- \text{minimal}: no padding space, no box rules.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \tcbox[size=\s,on line,title=Test]{\s} }
\foreach \s in {normal,title,small,fbox,tight,minimal} {
  \begin{tcolorbox}[size=\s,on line,title=Test,width=2.2cm]
    \s
  \end{tcolorbox} }
\end{verbatim}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>\textbf{Predefined values}</th>
<th>\textbf{normal}</th>
<th>\textbf{title}</th>
<th>\textbf{small}</th>
<th>\textbf{fbox}</th>
<th>\textbf{tight}</th>
<th>\textbf{minimal}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boxrule</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>0.4mm</td>
<td>0.3mm</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.4pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxsep</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>3.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>left</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right</td>
<td>4.0mm</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottom</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.25mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toptitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bottomtitle</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0mm</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>middle</td>
<td>2.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.2pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc</td>
<td>1.0mm</td>
<td>0.75mm</td>
<td>0.5mm</td>
<td>1.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>outer arc</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>auto</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
<td>0.0pt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sets the text width of the upper part to the current line width plus an optional \textit{length}. This is achieved by changing the keys \texttt{/tcb/width P.40 /tcb/enlarge left by P.95}, and \texttt{/tcb/enlarge right by P.95} appropriately. The resulting box is overlapping into the left and right margin of the page. Note that this style option has to be given after all other geometry keys! Also see \texttt{/tcb/grow sidewards P.97} and \texttt{/tcb/spread sidewards P.100}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[oversize,title=Oversized box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\textit{Normal text for comparison:}\n

\textit{Oversized box}\n

\textit{Normal box}\n
4.7.6 Toggle Left and Right

```
/tcb/toggle left and right=(toggle preset) (default evenpage, initially none)
```

According to the (toggle preset), the left and the right settings of the tcolorbox are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- **none**: no switching.
- **forced**: the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched.
- **evenpage**: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right rules, spaces, and corners are switched. This value also sets /tcb/check odd page\footnote{P.115} to **true**.

Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by /tcb/toggle enlargement\footnote{P.98}. For example, /tcb/oversize\footnote{P.51} changes the bounding box.

![Horizontal bounding box enlargements are not toggled by this option. They can be toggled independently by /tcb/toggle enlargement. For example, /tcb/oversize changes the bounding box.](lichtspiel.jpg)

This example switches a 1cm thick rule from the left to the right side depending on the page number. Thereby, the rule is always on the outer side of the double-sided paper. Additionally, a ball is drawn on the outer side with help of an overlay.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{tcbifoddpage}
\coordinate (X) at ([xshift=-5mm]frame.east);
\end{tcbifoddpage}
\fill[shading=ball,ball color=blue!50!white,opacity=0.5] (X) circle (4mm);
\end{tcbclipframe}
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}
```


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volupat at, tinci-


4.8 Corners

The four corners of any \texttt{tcolorbox} can be set individually as \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} or as \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}. These settings are also reflected in the behavior of \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{P.199} and \texttt{/tcb/shadow} \textsuperscript{P.210} as one would expect.

By default, all four corners are \textit{rounded}. So, only the \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} option will be necessary for most use cases. The \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55} option can be used to revert a \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} setting.

\texttt{/tcb/sharp corners=\{position\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(default \texttt{all}, initially unset)}

The \texttt{\{position\}} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{sharp} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \texttt{\{position\}} are:

- \texttt{northwest}
- \texttt{northeast}
- \texttt{southwest}
- \texttt{southeast}
- \texttt{north}
- \texttt{south}
- \texttt{east}
- \texttt{west}
- \texttt{downhill}
- \texttt{uphill}
- \texttt{all}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners=northwest ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, sharp corners ]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/rounded corners=(position)  
(default all, initially all)

The /tcb/rounded corners can be used to revert a /tcb/sharp corners\textsuperscript{*P.54} setting. The \textit{position} denotes one or more of the four box corners to be set as \textit{rounded} corners. The not assigned corners will retain their mode. Feasible values for \textit{position} are\textsuperscript{2}:

- northwest
- northeast
- southwest
- southeast
- north
- south
- east
- west
- downhill
- uphill
- all

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,  
  colframe=red!75!black,  
  sharp corners,  
  rounded corners=northwest ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,  
  colframe=red!75!black,  
  sharpish corners ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/sharpish corners
(style, no value)

Shortcut for setting /tcb/arc\textsuperscript{*P.42} and /tcb/outer arc\textsuperscript{*P.44} to 0pt. With this setting, rounded corners will appear as quasi-sharp, but e.g. the shadow will be somewhat rounder than the shadow of really sharp corners.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,  
  colframe=red!75!black,  
  sharpish corners ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,  
  colframe=red!75!black,  
  sharp corners,  
  rounded corners=northwest ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,  
  colframe=red!75!black,  
  sharpish corners ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textsuperscript{2}The graphical examples assume that the boxes were set to have sharp corners before.
The following examples will show the differences between \texttt{/tcb/rounded corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}, \texttt{/tcb/sharpish corners} \textsuperscript{P.55}, and \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \textsuperscript{P.54}. The later two give the same core box, but \texttt{/tcb/borderline} \textsuperscript{P.199} and \texttt{/tcb/shadow} \textsuperscript{P.210} settings are slightly different. The following examples use \texttt{/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow} \textsuperscript{P.204}.
4.9 Transparency

Transparency effects are likely to be used in conjunction with \textit{jigsaw} skin variants, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityframe=0.25, colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacityback=0.5, title filled, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityframe=0.5, opacitybacktitle=0.5, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[standard jigsaw, colframe=red, opacityfill=0.7, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityframe=0.25, colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityback=0.5, colframe=red, opacitybacktitle=0.5]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[opacityfill=0.7, title=This is a title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

Also see \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacklower}\footnote{P.245 of the \texttt{\input{skins}} library.} of the \texttt{\input{skins}} library.
\texttt{/tcb/opacityupper=\langle fraction \rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially 1.0)}

Sets the text opacity of the upper box part to the given \texttt{\langle fraction \rangle}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacityupper=0.5, interior ]
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\langle style=\{preaction=\{fill=white, pattern=checkerboard, color=gray!40\}\}\rangle}
\end{verbatim}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/opacitylower=\langle fraction \rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially 1.0)}

Sets the text opacity of the lower box part to the given \texttt{\langle fraction \rangle}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitylower=0.5, interior ]
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\langle style=\{preaction=\{fill=white, pattern=checkerboard, color=gray!40\}\}\rangle}
\end{verbatim}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/opacitytext=\langle fraction \rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially 1.0)}

Sets the text opacity of the upper and the lower box part to the given \texttt{\langle fraction \rangle}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytext=0.5, interior ]
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\langle style=\{preaction=\{fill=white, pattern=checkerboard, color=gray!40\}\}\rangle}
\end{verbatim}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/opacitytitle=\langle fraction \rangle} \hspace{2cm} \text{(no default, initially 1.0)}

Sets the text opacity of the box title to the given \texttt{\langle fraction \rangle}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,opacitytitle=0.7, coltitle=black, fonttitle=\textbf{\texttt{\textbf{bfseries}}}, title=This is a title, title ]
\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\langle style=\{preaction=\{fill=white, pattern=checkerboard, color=gray!40\}\}\rangle}
\end{verbatim}
This is a \texttt{\textbf{tcolorbox}}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.10 Height Control

In a typical usage scenario, the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is computed automatically to fit the content. Nevertheless, the height can be set to a fixed value or to fit commonly for several boxes, e.g. if boxes are set side by side.

The height control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes. If a box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P. 401}, the height is always computed according to the \textit{natural height}.

\texttt{/tcb/natural height} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially set)

Sets the total height of the colored box to its natural height depending on the box content.

\texttt{/tcb/height=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default)

Sets the total height of the colored box to \texttt{\langle length \rangle} independent of the box content. \texttt{\langle length \rangle} is the minimum height of the box, if \texttt{/tcb/height plus} is larger than zero.

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 1cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=2cm,valign=center]
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=3cm,split=0.5,valign=center,valign lower=center]
This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\tcblower} \hspace{1cm} Lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[height=1cm,height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/height plus=\langle length \rangle} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0pt)

The box may extend a given fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} up to the given \texttt{\langle length \rangle}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,nobeforeafter]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,nobeforeafter]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,width=3cm,nobeforeafter]
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\texttt{/tcb/height from\texttt{=\langle min\rangle} to \langle max\rangle}  \hfill (style, no default)

Sets the box height to a dimension between \langle min\rangle and \langle max\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=4.5cm,nobeforeafter]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}

\begin{tcolorbox}[text height=2cm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.

\texttt{/tcb/text height\texttt{=\langle length\rangle}}  \hfill (style, no default)

Sets the text height to \langle length\rangle. This is the length from the top of the upper part to the bottom of the optional lower part. See also /tcb/text width→P.40.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=4.5cm,nobeforeafter]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} where the text area has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/add to height=(length) (style, no default)

Adds \langle length \rangle to the current height of the colored box. /tcb/height=\textsuperscript{P.59} has to be set before this key is used! If this option is used several times, then the /tcb/height=\textsuperscript{P.59} is also increased several times.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to height=1cm]
This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has a height of 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has a height of 3cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/add to natural height=(length) (style, no default)

The application of this option generates a box with natural height plus the given \langle length \rangle. If this option is used several times, then the last setting of \langle length \rangle wins. The resulting box is not considered a fixed height box and the implementation is quite different to /tcb/add to height.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[add to natural height=1cm]
This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This box has natural height plus 1 cm.
\end{tcolorbox}
If set to \texttt{true}, the height of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is set to the rest of the available vertical space of the current page. If set to \texttt{maximum}, the page is compressed as much as possible. Note that the \texttt{tcolorbox} is always set as its own paragraph using this option. Also see \texttt{/tcb/text fill} → P.75.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[height fill, 
\color{red!5!white}, 
\colorframe{red!75!black}, 
\fonttitle{\textbf}, 
\title{Box which fills the rest of the page}
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Box which fills the rest of the page

If this option is used for a tcolorbox which is embedded inside another (outer) tcolorbox and if this outer tcolorbox has a fixed height, then the given (fraction) of the available text height of the outer tcolorbox is used as /tcb/height \ref{P.59} for the current tcolorbox. Otherwise, /tcb/natural height \ref{P.59} is applied for the current tcolorbox.

\tcbs{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 3.5cm,height=3.5cm]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
This inner box matches the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with natural height]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Inner box,nobeforeafter,inherit height]
This inner box has its natural height.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Outer box with fixed height 5cm,height=5cm]
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.6]
Deeply nested box using 60 percent of the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red,beforeafter skip=0pt,inherit height=0.4]
Deeply nested box using 40 percent of the available space.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
Sets `/tcb/height` to match the width of the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[
width=3cm,
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
halign=center,valign=center,
square]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=3cm,
colback=red!5!white,
colframe=red!75!black,
halign=center,valign=center,
square]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

`/tcb/space=⟨fraction⟩` (no default, initially 0)

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is distributed between the upper and the lower part of the box. This space could also be negative. ⟨\textit{fraction}⟩ with a value between 0 and 1 is the amount of space which is added to the upper part, the rest is added to the lower part. If there is no lower part, then all of the space is added to the upper part always.

```
\tcbset{width=(\textwidth-2\textwidth)/3,before=,after=\hfill,
colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm}
\foreach \f in {0.2,0.4,0.7}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[space=\f]
  This is the upper part.
  \tcblower
  This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}}
```

This is the upper part.

This is the upper part.

This is the upper part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

This is the lower part.

`/tcb/space to upper` (style)

This is an abbreviation for `space=1`, i.e. all extra space is added to the upper part.

`/tcb/space to lower` (style, initially set)

This is an abbreviation for `space=0`, i.e. all extra space is added to the lower part (if there is any).
This is an abbreviation for \texttt{space=0.5}, i.e. the extra space equally distributed between the upper and the lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[width=\linewidth-2\textwidth/3,before=,after=\hfill, colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm]
\foreach \myspace in {space to upper,space to both,space to lower}
{\begin{tcolorbox}[\myspace]
\begin{itemize}
  \item This is the upper part.
  \item This is the lower part.
\end{itemize}
\end{tcolorbox}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/space to both} \quad \texttt{(style)}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is saved into the given local \texttt{(macro)}. This \texttt{(macro)} can and should be used inside the box content to add content which is vertically sized to match \texttt{(macro)}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item The actual length saved into \texttt{(macro)} is adapted dynamically during several compilations – at least two, but maybe more.
  \item Due to the adaption algorithm, objects can be sized with \texttt{(macro)} plus any offset length.
  \item Never ever use \texttt{(macro)} multiplied with a factor. The only exception to this rule is that the space can be split into parts which sum to \texttt{(macro)}.
  \item Never use this in combination with \texttt{/tcb/fit}. \footnote{P.455}
\end{itemize}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=3cm, space to=\myspace]
This is my box of height 3cm. The space is filled with a picture:\\[2mm]\includegraphics[width=\linewidth,height=\myspace]{goldshade.png}\\[1mm]This is some other text.
\end{tcolorbox}
If the height of a `tcolorbox` is not the natural height, the \textit{(fraction)} with a value between 0 and 1 determines the positioning of the segmentation between the upper and the lower part. Here, 0 stands for top and 1 for bottom. Note that the box is split regardless of the actual dimensions of the text parts!
Boxes which are members of an equal height group will all get the same height, i.e. the maximum of all their natural heights. The \( id \) serves to distinguish between different height groups. Note that you have to compile twice to see changes and that height groups are global definitions.

\[
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={One}]
   \text{My smallest box.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Two}]
   \text{This box is also small.}
   \begin{tcolorbox}[width=(\textwidth-2mm)/3,before=,after=\hfill,arc=0mm,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries]
   \text{But with a lower part.}
   \end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=A,adjusted title={Three}]
   \text{This box contains a lot of text just to fill the space with \texttt{word flowing} and \texttt{flowing} and \texttt{flowing} until the box is filled with all of it.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B]
   \text{Now, we use another equal height group.}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[equal height group=B,after=\]
   \begin{equation*}
   \int_{0}^{1} x^2 = \frac{1}{3}.
   \end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}

See Section 16 on page 305 for more equal height options.
Plants a \langle length \rangle into the equal height group with the given \langle id \rangle. This ensures that the height will not drop below \langle length \rangle. Note that you cannot reduce a computed height value by using this key with a small value. The difference to applying \texttt{/tcb/height} directly is that the boxes are never too small for their content.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \item A
  \item B
\end{tcbitemize}
Sets the current box to a fixed /tcb/height which is copied from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, no fixed height setting is used. If \langle id\rangle is omitted, the current equal height group is used which has to be set before by /tcb/equal height group. Note that the natural height of the current box is not considered for computation of the group height. The main application for /tcb/use height from group is that the height can be adapted further by /tcb/add to height.

\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group=C,add to height=-2cm,colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white]
Height from group \enquote{C} of the previous example, but reduced by 2cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows,title=Box \tetcbrasternum,enhanced,size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\begin{tcolorbox}First line\second line\The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]Test\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use height from group]First line\second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}The height of this box rules.\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\[ \texttt{\textbackslash tcbheightfromgroup}\{\langle macro\rangle}\{\langle id\rangle\} \]

Saves the height from an equal height group with the given \langle id\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If this height is not available during the current compilation, \langle macro\rangle is set to 0pt.
4.11 Box Content Additions

The following options introduce some arbitrary ⟨code⟩ to the content of a \texttcolorbox. These additions can be given at the beginning or at the ending of the title, the upper part, or the lower part.

**U 2023-01-27** /tcb/before title=(code) (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the title. The ⟨code⟩ is appended by a final \ignorespaces.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

**U 2023-01-27** /tcb/before title*=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the title. In contrast to /tcb/before title, no \ignorespaces is appended.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

**U 2023-01-27** /tcb/after title=(code) (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the content of the title. The ⟨code⟩ is prepended by a leading \unskip.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

**U 2023-01-27** /tcb/after title*=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially unset)

The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the content of the title. In contrast to /tcb/after title, no \unskip is prepended.
The given ⟨code⟩ is placed after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part. The ⟨code⟩ is appended by a final \ignorespaces.

\tcbset{before upper=⟨\textit{The story:}\par\rangle,} \[\text{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}\]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title

The story:
This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[size=small, tile, \[\text{colback=yellow!20, colbacktitle=yellow!70!black, title=My table, hbox, center, center title, before upper=⟨\begin{tabular}{cc}, after upper=⟨\end{tabular},]\]]\]
\begin{tabular}{cc}
Title \\
one & two \\
three & four
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

Title

one two
three four
The given \texttt{code} is placed after the content of the upper part. The \texttt{code} is prepended by a leading \texttt{\unskip}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[before upper=\frqq,after upper=\frqq,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textit{Read more next week}

From version 3.80 to 3.94, this option prepended an \texttt{\unskip} to the given \texttt{code}. From version 3.95 to 4.15, this option was deprecated. From version 4.20, this option is re-established with changed semantic (no \texttt{\unskip}!).
The given \texttt{code} is placed \textit{after} the color and font settings and \textit{before} the content of the lower part. The \texttt{code} is appended by a final \texttt{\ignorespaces}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tabular}{cc}
one & two \\
three & four
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{\begin{tabular}{cc}
    \textbf{Title} \\
    one & two \\
    three & four
\end{tabular}}

\texttt{\begin{tabular}{cc}
    \textbf{Title} \\
    one & two \\
    three & four
\end{tabular}}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[after lower=\textit{This is the end.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}\[before lower=\$,after lower=\$,
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black\]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)=1.
\end{tcolorbox}
If \texttt{/tcb/text fill} is used, one cannot have a lower part and the box is unbreakable.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, height=8cm,text fill, title=My filled box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\par\vfill
\begin{center}
My middle text.
\end{center}
\par\vfill
This is the end of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

My filled box

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

My middle text.

This is the end of my box.
This style sets `/tcb/before upper` and `/tcb/after upper` and several geometry keys to support a `tabular*` with the given `<preamble>`. The packages `array` and `colortbl` have to be loaded separately.

% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[|table|]{xcolor}
\tcbset{%enhanced,fonttitle=bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}[tabulars={@{|c|c|c|c|c|c|},
boxrule=0.5pt,title=My table}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00
\hline
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
<th>Four</th>
<th>Sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>10000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>14000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>18000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>12000.00</td>
<td>15000.00</td>
<td>42000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is a variant of `/tcb/tabulars` which adds some `<code>` before the table starts.

% \usepackage{array}
% \usepackage{colortbl} - or - \usepackage[|table|]{xcolor}
\tcbset{%enhanced,fonttitle=bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}[tabulars*=\{\extracolsep{\fill}\hspace{5mm}\}\{\hspace{5mm}\},
boxrule=0.5pt,title=My table]
\hline
One & Two & Three \hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 \hline
2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
If `/tcb/tabularx` or `/tcb/tabularx*` are used, one cannot have a lower part.

/tcb/tabularx=(preamble)

This style sets `/tcb/before upper`\textsuperscript{p,	extsection71} and `/tcb/after upper`\textsuperscript{p,	extsection72} and several geometry keys to support a `tabularx` with the given (preamble). The packages `tabularx`\textsuperscript{[5]}, `array`, and `colortbl` have to be loaded separately.

%/usepackage{array,tabularx}
%/usepackage{colortbl} - or - %usepackage{table}{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}

\begin{tcolorbox}[tabularx={X||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y},title=My table]
\begin{tabularx}{\textwidth}{X|X|X|X|X|X}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
<th>Four</th>
<th>Sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>10000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>14000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
<td>5000.00</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>18000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sum</td>
<td>6000.00</td>
<td>9000.00</td>
<td>12000.00</td>
<td>15000.00</td>
<td>42000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/tcb/tabularx*=\{(code)\}\{(preamble)\}

This is a variant of `/tcb/tabularx` which adds some \texttt{\string\{code\}} before the table starts.

%/usepackage{array,tabularx}
%/usepackage{colortbl} - or - %usepackage{table}{xcolor}
\tcbset{enhanced,fonttitle=bfseries\large,fontupper=\normalsize\sffamily,
colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,colbacktitle=Salmon!30!white,
coltitle=black,center title}
\begin{tcolorbox}[\{arrayrulewidth=0.5mm\},tabularx={|X|X|X}|title=My table]
\begin{tabularx}{\textwidth}{|X|X|X|X|}
\hline
One & Two & Three \\
\hline
1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 \\
2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}
\end{tcolorbox}

My table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>One</th>
<th>Two</th>
<th>Three</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000.00</td>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2000.00</td>
<td>3000.00</td>
<td>4000.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This style adds a centered \texttt{tikzpicture} environment to the start and end of the upper part. The \langle \texttt{options} \rangle may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcbox}
\[\texttt{tikz upper},fonttitle=\textbf{\texttt{bfseries}},colback=white,colframe=black, title=\texttt{\texttt{tikzname}\ drawing}\]
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbox}

This style adds a centered \texttt{tikzpicture} environment to the start and end of the lower part. The \langle \texttt{options} \rangle may be given as TikZ picture options.

\begin{tcblisting}
\[\texttt{tikz lower},listing side text,fonttitle=\textbf{\texttt{bfseries}},bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,colframe=black, righthand width=3cm,title=\texttt{\texttt{tikzname}\ drawing}\]
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}
/tcb/tikznode upper=⟨options⟩ (style)
This style places the upper part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The \(⟨options⟩\) may be given as \Ti\kZ node options. This style is especially useful for boxes with multiline texts which are fitted to the text width.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\newtcbox{\headline}[1][\{enhanced,center,ignore nobreak,fontupper=\Large\bfseries,\nl\textcolor{red!50!black}{colframe=red!50!black},colback=red!10!white,drop fuzzy shadow=yellow,tikznode upper,#1\}]
\headline{Important\Headline}

Important Headline

/tcb/tikznode lower=⟨options⟩ (style)
This style places the lower part content into a centered Ti\kZ node. The \(⟨options⟩\) may be given as \Ti\kZ node options.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,colback=LightBlue!50!white,colbacklower=white,\nl\textcolor{red!50!black}{colframe=black},tikznode lower={inner sep=2pt,draw=red,fill=yellow}]
Upper part.
\tcblower
Lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

Upper part.

/tcb/tikznode=⟨options⟩ (style)
Shortcut for setting /tcb/tikznode upper and /tcb/tikznode lower the same time.

/tcb/varwidth upper=⟨length⟩ (style, default /tcb/width \(\rightarrow\) P.40)
This style places the upper part content into a \texttt{varwidth} environment. This style needs the \texttt{varwidth} package [1] to be loaded manually. The resulting box has a maximal width of \(⟨length⟩\). This option is only senseful for a \texttt{\tcbox \(\rightarrow\) P.14}.

% \usepackage{varwidth}
\newtcbox{\varbox}[\{colframe=red!50!black,\nl\textcolor{red!50!black}{colback=red!10!white},varwidth upper\}]
\varbox{Short text.}
\varbox{This box contains is a longer text which is broken.}
4.12 Overlays

With an overlay, arbitrary \textit{graphical code} can be added to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This code is executed \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. Therefore, you can decorate the \texttt{tcolorbox} with your own extensions. Common special cases are \textit{watermarks} which are implemented using overlays. See Subsection 10.3 from page 187 if you want to add watermarks.

If you use the core package only, the \textit{graphical code} has to be \texttt{pgf} code and there is not much assistance for positioning. Therefore, the usage of the \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231} mode from the library skins is recommended which allows \texttt{tikz} code and gives access to \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes} \textsuperscript{P.157} for positioning.

\texttt{/tcb/overlay=⟨graphical code⟩} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)

Adds \textit{graphical code} to the box drawing process. This \textit{graphical code} is drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior and \textit{before} the text content.

\begin{tcolorbox} 
\texttt{\begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)}]}
\path\fill=blue!75!white,draw=blue,double=white!85!blue,preaction={opacity=0.6,fill=blue!75!white},line width=0.1mm,double distance=0.2mm,pattern=fivepointed stars,pattern color=white!75!blue
([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)
\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} {
\begin{scope}\[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}\]
\path\[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10,line width=1mm\] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm);
\path\[fill=black\] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm);
\end{scope}}\end{scope}}\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox} 
\begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)}]
\path\fill=blue!75!white,draw=blue,double=white!85!blue,preaction={opacity=0.6,fill=blue!75!white},line width=0.1mm,double distance=0.2mm,pattern=fivepointed stars,pattern color=white!75!blue
([xshift=-0.2mm,yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east)
\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} {
\begin{scope}\[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}\]
\path\[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10,line width=1mm\] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm);
\path\[fill=black\] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm);
\end{scope}}\end{scope}}\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/no overlay  
(style, no default, initially set)
Removes the overlay if set before.

/tcb/overlay broken={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable\textsuperscript{P.402}, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay last={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay first together. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay middle and last={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay middle and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay unbroken and /tcb/overlay last together. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

/tcb/overlay first and middle={(graphical code)}  
(no default, initially unset)
This is an optimized abbreviation for setting /tcb/overlay first and /tcb/overlay middle together. /tcb/overlay\textsuperscript{P.80} overwrites this key.

% Preamble:
%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
%\newcounter{example}

This example demonstrates the application of break sequence specific overlay options. Here, we define an environment \texttt{myexample} based on \texttt{tcolorbox} where the visible drawing is done totally by overlay keys. Here, the first application of \texttt{myexample} produces an unbroken \texttt{tcolorbox}. The frame is drawn by the code given with /tcb/overlay unbroken. The second application of \texttt{myexample} is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given with /tcb/overlay first, /tcb/overlay middle, and /tcb/overlay last.
Example 1


Example 2


Suspendisse vitae elit. Aliquam arcu neque, ornare in, ullamcorper quis, commodo eu, libero.


4.13 Floating Objects

\(/\text{tcb/floatplacement}=\langle\text{values}\rangle\) (no default, initially \text{htb})

Sets \langle\text{values}\rangle as default values for the usage of \text{/tcb/float} and \text{/tcb/float*}. Feasible are the usual parameters for floating objects.

\tcset\{\text{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,}
\text{watermark color=red!15!white}\}
egin{tcolorbox}[floatplacement=t, float, 
\text{title=Floating box from }|\text{floatplacement}|, 
\text{watermark text={I am floating}}]
This floating box is placed at the top of a page.
\end{tcolorbox}

\(/\text{tcb/float}=\langle\text{values}\rangle\) (default from \text{floatplacement})

Turns the box to a floating object where \langle\text{values}\rangle are the usual parameters for such floating objects. If they are not used, the placement uses the default values given by floatplacement.

\begin{tcolorbox}[float, title=Floating box from |float|, 
\text{enhanced, watermark text={I'm also floating}}]
This box floats to a feasible place automatically. You do not have to use a numbering for this floating object.
\end{tcolorbox}

\(/\text{tcb/float*}=\langle\text{values}\rangle\) (default from \text{floatplacement})

Identical to \text{/tcb/float}, but for wide boxes spanning the whole page width of two column documents or in conjunction with the packages \text{multicol} or \text{paracol}. Note that you have to set \text{width=\textwidth} additionally, if the box should span the whole page width in these cases!

\begin{tcolorbox}[float*=b, title=Floating box from |float*|, width=\textwidth, 
\text{enhanced, watermark text={I'm also floating}}]
In this single column document, you will see no difference to |float|.
\end{tcolorbox}

\(/\text{tcb/nofloat}\) (style, initially set)

Turns the floating behavior off.

\begin{tcolorbox}[float*]
In this single column document, you will see no difference to \text{float}.
\end{tcolorbox}
For floating objects, the `\texttt{tcb/before}`\textsuperscript{P.87} and `\texttt{tcb/after}`\textsuperscript{P.87} settings are ignored. Instead, `\texttt{tcb/before float}` and `\texttt{tcb/after float}` can be used. Further, with `\texttt{tcb/every float}`, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before a floating box. If the box is `\texttt{tcb/breakable}`\textsuperscript{P.401}, the given \texttt{(code)} is inserted before every part of the break sequence. The most common use case is `\texttt{every float=\centering}`.

```latex
\tcbox[float=htb,title={Floating box},every float=\centering, colback=blue!50!black,colframe=blue!50!white,colbacktitle=blue!10!white, coltitle=black,center title] {\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}}
```

For floating objects, the `\texttt{tcb/before}`\textsuperscript{P.87} and `\texttt{tcb/after}`\textsuperscript{P.87} settings are ignored. Code can be inserted after the begin of the float environment and before `\texttt{tcb/every float}` with `\texttt{tcb/before float}` and between the end of the box and the end of the float environment with `\texttt{tcb/after float}`.

These options are not compatible with `\texttt{tcb/breakable}`\textsuperscript{P.401} floating objects and are ignored, if the box is set to be breakable.
4.14 Embedding into the Surroundings

Typically, but not necessarily, a tcolorbox is put inside a separate paragraph and has some vertical space before and after it. This behavior is controlled by the keys /tcb/before and /tcb/after.

Before version 4.40, the default setting for /tcb/before and /tcb/after was given by /tcb/autoparskip → P.91. Starting with version 4.40, the default setting is given by /tcb/before skip balanced → P.88 and /tcb/after skip balanced → P.88.

Note that old documents may need adaptations of page breaks. Alternatively, the old default setting can be restored by using

\tcbsetforeverylayer{autoparskip}

inside the document preamble.

/tcb/before=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially see /tcb/before skip balanced → P.88)
Sets the ⟨code⟩ which is executed before the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes. Also, it is not used, if the box follows a heading immediately and /tcb/ignore nobreak → P.93 is set to false.

/tcb/after=⟨code⟩ (no default, initially see /tcb/after skip balanced → P.88)
Sets the ⟨code⟩ which is executed after the colored box. It is not used for floating boxes.

/tcb/nobeforeafter (style, no value)
Abbreviation for clearing the keys before and after. The colored box is not put into a paragraph and there is no space before or after the box.

/tcb/force nobeforeafter (style, no value)
Forces the setting of /tcb/nobeforeafter even if /tcb/before and /tcb/after are set to other values later. Do not use this option globally unless you really know what you do. Note that embedded boxes do not inherit this forced clearance.
**/tcb/before skip balanced=⟨glue⟩** (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before \(^{\text{P.87}}\).

If the depth of the preceding \TeX{} box is between 0pt and 0.3\baselineskip, the distance between the baseline of the preceding \TeX{} box and the tcolorbox is set to \langle glue⟩+0.3\baselineskip.

If the depth is larger, the distance of the preceeding \TeX{} box and the tcolorbox is set to \langle glue⟩.

Alternatively, see /tcb/before skip \(^{\text{P.89}}\) which ignores the baseline.

```
Some text. \begin{tcolorbox}[before skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text. This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

**/tcb/after skip balanced=⟨glue⟩** (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \langle glue⟩ after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/after \(^{\text{P.87}}\). Additionally, \texttt{\textbackslash prevdepth} is set to 0.3\baselineskip. The following \TeX{} box may enlarge the space by further glue to adjust its baseline. Alternatively, see /tcb/after skip \(^{\text{P.89}}\) which ignores the baseline.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip balanced=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text.
```

**/tcb/beforeafter skip balanced=⟨glue⟩** (no default, initially 0.5\baselineskip plus 2pt)

Inserts some vertical space of the given \langle glue⟩ before and after the colored box. This style sets /tcb/before skip balanced and /tcb/after skip balanced.

```
\newtcolorbox{doubleline}[1][]{
  beforeafter skip balanced=0pt,
  height=1.8\baselineskip,
  enlarge top by=.1\baselineskip,
  enlarge bottom by=.1\baselineskip,
  colframe=blue!20,colback=blue!5,
  size=small,valign upper=center,#1 }
\noindent\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[use as bounding box] (0,0) rectangle (0.1,0.1);
  \foreach \y in {0,1,...,9} {
    \draw[very thin,red]
    (-0.2,-\y*\baselineskip) --
    (\linewidth+0.2cm,-\y*\baselineskip);
  }
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{doubleline} Abc \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Def \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} Ghi \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} line 1 \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} line 2 \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} line 3 \end{doubleline}
\begin{doubleline} line 4 \end{doubleline}
\end{doubleline}
```
Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} before the colored box. This style sets \texttt{/tcb/before \texttt{→} P.87}. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced \texttt{→} P.88}, this \textit{glue} is relative to the lower edge of the preceeding box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[before skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} after the colored box. This style sets \texttt{/tcb/after \texttt{→} P.87}. In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced \texttt{→} P.88}, this \textit{glue} is relative to the upper edge of the following box and not to the baseline.

\begin{tcolorbox}[after skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}

Inserts some vertical space of the given \textit{glue} before \textit{and} after the colored box. This style sets \texttt{/tcb/before skip} and \texttt{/tcb/after skip}.

\tcbset{beforeafter skip=0pt, colframe=red!50!white}

\text before
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
Second box. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
Second box. \end{tcolorbox}
\text after
\texttt{/tcb/left\_skip=(length)} (style, no default, initially 0mm)

Inserts some horizontal space of the given \langle length \rangle before the colored box. This style sets /tcb/grow to left by \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{-}P.96}} with the negated \langle length \rangle, i.e. the bounding box and box width are changed.

\begin{Verbatim}
\noindent\rule{\linewidth}{2pt}
\begin{tcolorbox}[left skip=1cm, colframe=red!50!white]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{Verbatim}
This option is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced} and \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced} (see note on page 87). Sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} to values which are recommended, if the package \texttt{parskip} is used and there is no better idea for \texttt{before} and \texttt{after}. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{parskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\parindent=0pt}, after={\par}}}
```

This option is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced} and \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced} (see note on page 87). Sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} to values which are recommended, if the package \texttt{parskip} is not used and there is no better idea for \texttt{before} and \texttt{after}. This is similar to:

```
\tcbset{noparskip/.style={before={\par\pagebreak[0]\smallskip\parindent=0pt}, after={\par\smallskip}}}
```

This option is considered to be superseded by \texttt{/tcb/before skip balanced} and \texttt{/tcb/after skip balanced} (see note on page 87). Tries to detect the usage of the package \texttt{parskip} and sets the keys \texttt{before} and \texttt{after} accordingly. Actually, the following is done:

- If the length of \texttt{parskip} is greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \texttt{/tcb/parskip} is executed. Here, the usage of package \texttt{parskip} is assumed.
- Otherwise, if the length of \texttt{parskip} is not greater than 0pt at the beginning of the document, \texttt{/tcb/noparskip} is executed. Here, the absence of package \texttt{parskip} is assumed.
/tcb/baseline=(length)  
(no default, initially 0pt)
Used to set the \pgfset baseline value of the resulting tcolorbox.

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[baseline=3mm]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

N 2014-10-10
/tcb/box align=(alignment)  
(style, no default, initially bottom)
Used to set the /tcb/baseline value of the resulting tcolorbox. Feasible values for \textit{alignment} are:
- \texttt{bottom}: alignment with the box bottom,
- \texttt{top}: alignment with the box top,
- \texttt{center}: alignment with the box center,
- \texttt{base}: alignment with the box content base. This option is not applicable for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsc{P.12} but for a \texttt{tcbox} \textsc{P.14} only. It is an alias for /tcb/tcbox raise base P.109.

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=top]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=bottom]
First line.\newline Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

92
\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,width=4cm,nobeforeafter}
Some text\dotfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
One line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[box align=center]
First line.\Second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbset{colframe=red!50!white,nobeforeafter}
Some text................................
One line. Another line

\n2014-12-11 \tcb/ignore nobreak=true|false \hfill (default true, initially false)
After a heading, \LaTeX{} tries to avoid a break by setting a \texttt{nobreak} boolean value. Starting from version 3.33, the \texttt{tcb/before} \texttt{P.87} respectively \texttt{tcb/before skip} \texttt{P.89} settings are not used after a heading if \texttt{tcb/ignore nobreak} is set to \texttt{false}. For an unbreakable box, \texttt{tcb/before nobreak} is used instead. Further, a \texttt{tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.401} box will also try to avoid a break between a heading and a directly following first part of a break sequence. Set \texttt{tcb/ignore nobreak} to \texttt{true}, if \texttt{nobreak} should be ignored as prior to version 3.33. Also, such a setting may be used locally to enforce the \texttt{tcb/before} \texttt{P.87} setting.

\n2014-12-16 \tcb/before nobreak=⟨code⟩ \hfill (no default, initially \texttt{\noindent})
Sets the \langle\texttt{code}\rangle which is executed before the colored box if it is unbreakable, if \texttt{tcb/ignore nobreak} is not set, and if the box follows a heading.

\n2017-02-23 \tcb/parfillskip restore=true|false \hfill (default true, initially true)
If this option is set to be \texttt{true}, the minimum value of \texttt{parfillskip} is tested at specific spots, if it is greater than \texttt{0pt}. If so, \texttt{parfillskip} is restored to \texttt{\@flushglue} which happens to be the default value.
These tests are executed for \texttt{tcb/parskip} \texttt{P.91}, \texttt{tcb/noparskip} \texttt{P.91}, \texttt{tcb/after skip} \texttt{P.89}, \texttt{tcb/breakable} \texttt{P.401}, and \texttt{tcbraster} \texttt{P.307}.
This option was created to automatically avoid overfull box warnings with \texttt{parfillskip} changing packages.
4.15 Bounding Box

Normally, every tcolorbox has a bounding box which fits exactly to the dimensions of the outer frame. Therefore, \LaTeX reserves exactly the space needed for the box. This behavior can be changed by enlarging (or shrinking) the bounding box. If the bounding box is enlarged, the tcolorbox will get some clearance around it. If the bounding box is shrunk, i.e. enlarged with negative values, the tcolorbox will overlap to other parts of the page. For example, the tcolorbox could be stretched into the page margin.

The following examples use /tcb/show bounding box \(\rightarrow\) P.201 to display the actual bounding box. For this, the library \skins has to be included and /tcb/enhanced \(\rightarrow\) P.231 has to be set.

4.15.1 Shifting Bounding Box Borders

/\texttt{tcb/enlarge top initially by}\=(\texttt{length}) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \(\langle\texttt{length}\rangle\). If the box is breakable, only the first box of the break sequence gets enlarged. /\texttt{tcb/enlarge top by} \(\rightarrow\) P.95 overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbset}{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=-5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge top initially by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/enlarge bottom finally by}\=(\texttt{length}) \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially 0mm)}

Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \(\langle\texttt{length}\rangle\). If the box is breakable, only the last box of the break sequence gets enlarged. /\texttt{tcb/enlarge bottom by} \(\rightarrow\) P.95 overwrites this key.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbset}{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=5mm]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge bottom finally by=-5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/enlarge top at break by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \((\text{length})\), if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.401. In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge top by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge bottom at break by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \((\text{length})\), if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.401. In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. /tcb/enlarge bottom by overwrites this key.

/tcb/enlarge top by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the top of the box by \((\text{length})\). /tcb/enlarge top initially by \(\text{P.94}\) and /tcb/enlarge top at break by are set to \((\text{length})\).

/tcb/enlarge bottom by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the bottom of the box by \((\text{length})\). /tcb/enlarge bottom finally by \(\text{P.94}\) and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break by are set to \((\text{length})\).

/tcb/enlarge left by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by \((\text{length})\).

\[ \text{This is a } \textbf{tcolorbox}. \]

\[ \text{This is a } \textbf{tcolorbox}. \]

/tcb/enlarge right by = (length)  
Enlarges the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by \((\text{length})\).

\[ \text{This is a } \textbf{tcolorbox}. \]

\[ \text{This is a } \textbf{tcolorbox}. \]
/tcb/enlarge by⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the bounding box distance to all sides of the box by ⟨length⟩.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,width=5cm,nobeforeafter}
\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enlarge by=5mm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/grow to left by⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the current box width by ⟨length⟩ and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the left side of the box by −⟨length⟩. Also see /tcb/left skip → P.90.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[width=5cm,grow to left by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox} with a width of 7cm.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/grow to right by⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0mm)
Enlarges the current box width by ⟨length⟩ and enlarges (shrinks) the bounding box distance to the right side of the box by −⟨length⟩. Also see /tcb/right skip → P.90.

\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[grow to right by=2cm,grow to left by=1cm,
   enhanced,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
4.15.2 Box Alignment

\texttt{/tcb/flush left} (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box to the right side to fill the line completely.

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[flush left,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}

\texttt{/tcb/flush right} (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box to the left side to fill the line completely.

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[flush right,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}

\texttt{/tcb/center} (style, no value)

Enlarges the bounding box equally to both sides to fill the line completely.

\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[center,width=5cm,enhanced,show bounding box]}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\texttt{\end{tcolorbox}}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}
This page is an even page. Therefore, the left and right enlargements are toggled. This box stretches to the right margin on odd pages and to the left margin on even pages. The current document is one-sided – this feature makes sense for two-sided documents only.

### 4.15.3 Toggle Enlargements

**/tcb/toggle enlargement=(toggle preset)**  
(default `evenpage`, initially `none`)

According to the *(toggle preset)*, the left and the right enlargements of the bounding box are switched or not. Feasible values are:

- **none**: no switching.
- **forced**: the values of the left and right enlargement are switched.
- **evenpage**: if the page is an even page, the values of the left and right enlargement are switched. This value also sets `/tcb/check odd page`\textsuperscript{P.115} to `true`.

> See `/tcb/toggle left and right`\textsuperscript{P.52} to toggle geometry settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[toggle enlargement=none,\textbf{enhanced,}\textbf{show bounding box}]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[toggle enlargement=forced\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[toggle enlargement=evenpage\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=red!60!black,colback=red!15!white,  
  fonttitle=\bfseries,title=\tt{Floating box from \texttt{toggle enlargement}},  
  width=\textwidth,\textbf{grow to right by=2cm,\textbf{toggle enlargement,\textbf{float=t}}}]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,  
  grow to left by=20mm,\textbf{grow to right by=-5mm}]
\end{tcolorbox}
4.15.4 Spread Box to Page Borders

The following border options are not applicable to nested boxes, boxes inside tables, etc. For boxes inside lists, the options may work, but not necessarily. Also, boxes should be set with \noindent and full width.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread outwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,move upwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,move upwards=*, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,fill downwards, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
This is an example for “spread upwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread upwards,sharp corners=north,height=3cm,\
  colframe=blue!75!black,interior style={top color=blue!50,bottom color=white}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread upwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is an example for “spread downwards”.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread downwards,sharp corners=south,\
  colframe=red!75!black,interior style={top color=white,bottom color=red!50}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread downwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread sidewards,\
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,spread inwards,\
  colframe=blue!75!black,interior style={top color=blue!50,bottom color=white}]
This is an example for \enquote{spread inwards}.
\end{tcolorbox}
4.15.5 Box Extrusion

The following keys should not be used with breakable boxes.

/\texttt{tcb/shrink tight} (style, no value, initially unset)

The total colored box is shrunk to the dimensions of the upper part. There should be no lower part and no title. This style sets the /\texttt{tcb/boxsep} to 0pt and other geometry keys to fitting values. This option is likely to be used with the following extrusion keys.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem \texttt{\textcolor{blue}{\texttt{tcb\{ipsum\} dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.}}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit.

/\texttt{tcb/extrude left by}=(\textit{length}) (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \textit{length} to the left side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{tcolorbox}[extrude left by=1cm]
Curabitur dictum gravida mauris.
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.

/\texttt{tcb/extrude right by}=(\textit{length}) (style, no default, initially unset)

The colored box is extruded by the given \textit{length} to the right side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

\begin{tcolorbox}[extrude right by=1cm]
Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
\end{tcolorbox}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis.
/tcb/extrude top by = \langle length \rangle
(style, no default, initially unset)
The colored box is extruded by the given \langle length \rangle to the top side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
estibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tcbox[extrude top by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. 
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```


/tcb/extrude bottom by = \langle length \rangle
(style, no default, initially unset)
The colored box is extruded by the given \langle length \rangle to the bottom side. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
estibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tcbox[extrude bottom by=1cm]{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. 
Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna.
```

/tcb/extrude by = \langle length \rangle
(style, no default, initially unset)
The colored box is extruded by the given \langle length \rangle to all sides. The inner width and the bounding box is kept unchanged and the operation is additive!

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white, frame style={opacity=0.25},interior style={opacity=0.5}, nobeforeafter,tcbox raise base,shrink tight,extrude by=2mm}

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
estibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tcbox{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. \tcbox[colframe=Green,interior style={opacity=0.0}]{Nam} arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, \tcbox{vulputate} a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. \tcbox{Mauris ut leo.}
```

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetuer adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, 
estibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. \tcbox{Curabitur} dictum gravida mauris. \tcbox{Nam} arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis egestas. Mauris ut leo.
4.16 Layered Boxes and Every Box Settings

A \texttt{tcolorbox} may contain another \texttt{tcolorbox} and so on. The package takes track of the nesting level using a counter \texttt{tcblayer}. Counter values may be used for doing some fancy things, but you should never change the counter value yourself.

The package takes special care for the first four layers or nesting levels, called managed layers. Here, footnote texts are administrated to find their intended place and specific layer dependent options may be set by changing \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n} \footnote{P.104}. If needed, the number of managed layers can be increased by setting \texttt{\tcbsetmanagedlayers} \footnote{P.104} to a higher value than 4.

The following styles have a considerable influence on how layered boxes are processed. Note especially that nested boxes are getting a \texttt{/tcb/reset} \footnote{P.120} by default. You can change this, but be prepared for surprises if you do.

If the defaults are \textit{not changed}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} gets its options in the following order. Following options overwrite preceding options.

1. On package load, all options are set to default values.
2. Every \texttt{\tcbset} \footnote{P.13} command adds or changes options for the following boxes inside the current \TeX group.
3. While entering a \texttt{tcolorbox}, a \texttt{/tcb/every box on layer n} \footnote{P.104} or \texttt{/tcb/every box on higher layers} \footnote{P.104} option list is applied. With default settings this means:
   - For layer 1 (lowest layer), the \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Not overwritten options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset} \footnote{P.13} survive.
   - For layer 2 and above (nested boxes), a \texttt{/tcb/reset} \footnote{P.120} followed by \texttt{/tcb/every box} option list is applied. Every resettable options given by a preceding \texttt{\tcbset} \footnote{P.13} and by the surrounding box(es) are reset.
4. The \texttt{⟨options⟩} given to the \texttt{tcolorbox} are applied. Or, if the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox} \footnote{P.15} or friends, the \texttt{⟨options⟩} given there are applied.
5. If the box was generated by \texttt{\newtcolorbox} \footnote{P.15} or friends, some automated options are applied.

\texttt{/tcb/every box} \footnotemark

By default, this style is empty.

\begin{verbatim}
% default setting:
\tcbset{every box/.style={}}
\end{verbatim}

It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{verbatim}
% setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\tcbset{every box/.style={enhanced}}
\end{verbatim}

The alternative for setting something for every box (on every layer) is

\texttt{\tcbsetforeverylayer} \footnote{P.13}:

\begin{verbatim}
% setting all boxes to be enhanced:
\tcbsetforeverylayer{enhanced}
\end{verbatim}
Here, \( n \) has to be replaced by a number ranging from 1 to the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\[
\begin{verbatim}
% default settings:
\tcbset{ every box on layer 1/.style={every box},
         every box on layer 2/.style={reset,every box},
         every box on layer 3/.style={reset,every box},
         every box on layer 4/.style={reset,every box},
           }
\end{verbatim}
\]

Higher layers are layers above the highest managed layer number (4 by default).

\[
\begin{verbatim}
% default setting:
\tcbset{every box on higher layers/.style={reset,every box}}
\end{verbatim}
\]

\texttt{tcbsetmanagedlayers\{(number)\}}

Replaces the highest managed layer number by \( \langle \text{number} \rangle \) where 4 is the default. This macro can only be used inside the preamble. Using a \( \langle \text{number} \rangle \) lower than 4 typically makes no sense, but is not forbidden.

\[
\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum} \tcbselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tcbset{colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\textbfseries,
colback=red!5!white,
every box/.style={enhanced,watermark text=\textthetcblayer,
before=\text\textsmallskip,after=\text\textsmallskip},
every box on layer 2/.append style={colback=yellow!10!white,drop fuzzy shadow}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,title=Layer 1 Box]
Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.
\lipsum[2]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 2 Box]
abc\footnote{The footnote of abc}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another Box,ams equation]
\tcbbhighmath{\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n}} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
Some text\footnote{Footnote from some text}.
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Yet Another Box]
\tcboxfit[height=2cm]{\lipsum[1]}
My text.
\begin{tcolorbox}
Another \lipsum text\footnote{A \lipsum text}.\lipsum[3]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Layer 4,colframe=blue,colback=white]
Layer 4\footnote{Layer 4 footnote}
\end{tcolorbox}
The End\footnote{Last footnote}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\]

Layer 1 Box

Here comes a footnote\footnote{Footnote from layer 1 box}.

\lipsum[1--3]

Layer 2 Box

abc

*The footnote of abc*

Another Box

\[
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\]

Some text.

Yet Another Box


My text.


Layer 4

Layer 4

*Layer 4 footnote*

The End.

*Footnote from layer 1 box

*Footnote from some text
4.17 Capture Mode

\texttt{/tcb/capture=(mode)} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially minipage)}

The capture \texttt{(mode)} defines how the box content is processed. Feasible values for \texttt{(mode)} are:

- \texttt{minipage}:
  This is the default \texttt{(mode)} for \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. The content may have an upper and a lower part. Optionally, the box can be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401}. The box content is put into a minipage or into something similar to a minipage.

- \texttt{hbox}:
  This is the default \texttt{(mode)} for \texttt{tcbox} \textsuperscript{P.14}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The colored box is sized according to the dimensions of the content. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/hbox}.

- \texttt{fitbox}: (needs the \texttt{fitting} library)
  This is the default \texttt{(mode)} for \texttt{tcboxfit} \textsuperscript{P.450}. The content cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken. The content is sized according to the dimensions of the colored box. A shortcut to set this mode is \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{P.455}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=minipage] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=hbox] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[capture=fitbox, height=9mm] \% needs the `fitting' library This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/hbox} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Shortcut for \texttt{capture=hbox}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{colframe=blue!75!black, colback=white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[hbox] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/minipage} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}

Shortcut for \texttt{capture=minipage}.
4.18 Text Characteristics

The text inside a tcolorbox is formatted using a \LaTeX minipage if the box is unbreakable. If breakable, the box tries a mimicry of a minipage. In a minipage or parbox, paragraphs are formatted slightly different as the main text. If the key value is set to false, the normal main text behavior is restored. In some situations, this has some unwanted side effects. It is recommended that you use this experimental setting only where you really want to have this feature.

```latex
% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2,nobeforeafter,arc=1mm,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries,fontupper=\small,
  left=2mm,right=2mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,equal height group=parbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox,adjusted title={parbox=true (normal)}]
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[parbox=false,adjusted title={parbox=false}]
  \lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parbox=true (normal)</th>
<th>parbox=false</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
/tcb/hyphenationfix=true|false (default true, initially false)

Long words at the beginning of paragraphs in very narrow boxes will not be hyphenated using pdflatex. This problem is circumvented by applying the hyphenationfix option.

\begin{tcolorbox}
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthalttereikonzipist.\par
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[hyphenationfix]
Rechnungsadjunktentochter.\par
Statthalttereikonzipist.\par
\end{tcolorbox}

parbox=false and hyphenationfix should not be used together. They are targeting different box types and they do not blend very well.

4.19 Files

/tcb/tempfile=(file name) (no default, initially \jobname.tcbtemp)

Sets (file name) as name for the temporary file which is used inside tcbwritetemp\textsuperscript{P.145} and \tcbusetemp\textsuperscript{P.145} implicitly.
4.20 \texttt{tcbox Specials}

The following options are applicable for \texttt{tcbox}^\textsuperscript{P.14} and \texttt{tcboxmath}^\textsuperscript{P.375} only.

/\texttt{tcb/tcbox raise}=(\texttt{length})  

(no default, initially 0pt)

Raisers the \texttt{tcbox}^\textsuperscript{P.14} by the given \texttt{⟨length⟩}.

```
\texttt{\tcset{colframe=blue!50!black, colback=white, colupper=red!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, nobeforeafter, center title}}
```

Test \texttt{\dotfill}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox raise base]{Hello World 1}\dotfill}
\texttt{\tcbox[Hello World 2]\dotfill}
\texttt{\tcbox[tcbox raise=5mm]{Hello World 3}}

\texttt{Test \ldots\ldots\ldots Hello World 1 \ldots\ldots\ldots Hello World 2 \ldots\ldots\ldots Hello World 3}

/\texttt{tcb/tcbox raise base}  

(style, no value, initially unset)

Raisers the \texttt{tcbox}^\textsuperscript{P.14} such that the base of its content matches the base of the environmental line; see example above.

/\texttt{tcb/on line}  

(style, no value, initially unset)

Combines /\texttt{tcb/tcbox raise base} with /\texttt{tcb/nobeforeafter}^\textsuperscript{P.87}. The resulting box behaves analogue to \texttt{\fbox}.

/\texttt{tcb/verbatim}  

(style, no value)

Sets options for a \texttt{verbatim} style \texttt{tcbox}^\textsuperscript{P.14}. Since the indented boxes may contain only very few words, the dimensions are made smaller and /\texttt{tcb/nobeforeafter}^\textsuperscript{P.87} and /\texttt{tcb/tcbox raise base} are set.

\texttt{\DeclarerNTTCBox{myverb}{v}{verbatim, colframe=red!75!black, colupper=blue}{#1}}

\texttt{\myverb{\textbf}} is a \texttt{\LaTeX} command.

\texttt{\textbf} is a \texttt{\LaTeX} command.
/tcb/tcbox width=⟨mode⟩

(no default, initially auto)

Controls how \tcbox→P.14 respects a /tcb/width→P.40 setting. Feasible values for ⟨mode⟩ are:

- **auto** (initial setting): ignore /tcb/width→P.40 and set box width according to its content.
- **auto limited**: Set box width according to its content, if it is smaller than /tcb/width→P.40. Otherwise, the content is set like in a \tcolorbox→P.12 with line breaks.
- **forced center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40. The content is centered and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40. The content is left aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **forced right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40. The content is right aligned and may overlap the box borders.
- **minimum center**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40, if the content fits into. The content is centered and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→P.40.
- **minimum left**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40, if the content fits into. The content is left aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→P.40.
- **minimum right**: Set box width according to /tcb/width→P.40, if the content fits into. The content is right aligned and the box width may grow beyond /tcb/width→P.40.

```
\tcbset{size=small, on line, before upper=\strut, colframe=blue!75!black, colback=blue!5!white, fontupper=\normalsize, width=4cm}
\tcbbox[tcb width=auto]{auto}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=auto limited]{auto limited}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=auto limited]{auto limited with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced center]{forced center}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced center]{forced center with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced left]{forced left}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced left]{forced left with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced right]{forced right}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=forced right]{forced right with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum center]{minimum center}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum center]{minimum center with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum left]{minimum left}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum left]{minimum left with long text}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum right]{minimum right}\quad \tcbbox[tcb width=minimum right]{minimum right with long text}
```
4.21 Counters, Labels, and References

/tcb/phantom\langle code\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The \langle code\rangle is put in a box at the upper left corner of the tcolorbox. If the tcolorbox is breakable, the \langle code\rangle is executed for the first box of the break sequence only. If there already was some phantom code given, the new \langle code\rangle is appended.

The \langle code\rangle is intended to be used for counter stepping, labelling, and related operations which do not produce visible text.

- The \langle code\rangle is executed before the title and box content, i.e. counter values are ensured to be increased before usage.
- Labels are ensured to reference the correct page number.
- The \langle code\rangle is executed only once even during fitting operations for title and box content.
- In combination with the hyperref package, the hyper anchor is set to the upper left corner of the tcolorbox, i.e. links inside the pdf document will jump to the box pleasantly.
- Since the \langle code\rangle is executed inside a \TeX group, only global operations can survive this group.

Examples for the phantom usage are given in Section 17.11 from page 366, e.g. Example 17.1 on page 367.

/tcb/nophantom \quad \text{(no value, initially set)}

Removes the phantom code if set before.

N 2023-02-08 /tcb/label is label \quad \text{(no value, initially set)}

Sets \texttt{\label} as labelling for tcolorbox (global or per box). When /tcb/label and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \texttt{\label}. References can be made by \texttt{\ref}, \texttt{\pageref}, and similar macros. This is the default \LaTeX behaviour. Note that this option is not getting reset by /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.120}.

N 2023-02-08 /tcb/label is zlabel \quad \text{(no value, initially unset)}

Sets \texttt{\zlabel} as labelling for tcolorbox (global or per box). When /tcb/label and friends are used, the underlying labeling macro is \texttt{\zlabel}. This needs the \texttt{zref} package \textsuperscript{[13]} or packages building upon \texttt{zref} to be loaded. References can be made by \texttt{\zref}. If the \texttt{zref-clever} package \textsuperscript{[2]} is loaded, \texttt{\zcref}, \texttt{\zpagemref}, and similar macros can be applied. Note that this option is not getting reset by /tcb/reset \textsuperscript{P.120}.

U 2023-02-08 /tcb/label=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

The \langle marker\rangle is set as label text with \texttt{\label} for a reference with the \texttt{\ref} macro, if /tcb/label is label is active, or as label text with \texttt{\zlabel} for a reference with the \texttt{zref} macro and similar, if /tcb/label is zlabel is active. Typically, this option is used for numbered boxes, see Subsection 5.1 from page 125, e.g. /tcb/new/auto counter \textsuperscript{P.125}.

N 2014-11-28 /tcb/phantomlabel=\langle marker\rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Equivalent to /tcb/label for an unnumbered box. A \texttt{\phantomsection} from the package hyperref \textsuperscript{[17]} is used to set a correct hyperlink target. This is not needed for a numbered box.
\tcb\step\{\textit{counter}\} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Shortcut for \texttt{phantom=\ref{stepcounter\#1}}. The given \textit{counter} is increased and ready for labelling. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 125.

\tcb\step\text{ and label}\{\textit{counter}\}\{\textit{marker}\} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/step} and \texttt{/tcb/label^{P.111}}. This option is not needed when using the convenient automated numbering introduced with version 2.40, see Subsection 5.1 from page 125.

\tcb\label\text{ type}\{\textit{type}\} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

This option has a different meaning based upon the chosen labeling mechanism.

- If \texttt{/tcb/label is label^{P.111}} is active:
  The option key \texttt{/tcb/label type} can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{cleveref} package \cite{6} which has to be loaded separately. \textit{(type)} has to be a cross-reference type \textit{known} to \texttt{cleveref} like \texttt{theorem}, \texttt{algorithm}, \texttt{result}, etc. References made with \texttt{cleveref} will use this type. Note that using \texttt{label type} will result in compilation errors, if \texttt{cleveref} is not loaded. For an example, see Theorem 18.3.5 on page 395.

- If \texttt{/tcb/label is zlabel^{P.111}} is active:
  The option key \texttt{/tcb/label type} can be used only in conjunction with the \texttt{zref-clever} package \cite{2} which has to be loaded separately. \textit{(type)} has to be a cross-reference type \textit{known} to \texttt{zref-clever}. This \textit{(type)} is bound to an automatic \texttt{tcolorbox} counter which has to be set up using \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter^{P.125}}, \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter from^{P.126}}, \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter^{P.126}}, or \texttt{/tcb/new/use counter*^{P.126}}. If \texttt{/tcb/label is zlabel^{P.111}} is set, but \texttt{zref-clever} is not loaded, using \texttt{zref-clever countertype} will be silently ignored.

\U2023-02-09 \texttt{/tcb/no label type} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no value, initially set)}

Removes a \texttt{/tcb/label type}, if set before.
If the `nameref` package is loaded, the given \textit{(text)} is used for corresponding `\nameref` macros. If the `zref-titleref` package is loaded, the given \textit{(text)} is used to set the reference text for `\ztitleref`. Typically, the \textit{(text)} will be chosen to be identical or nearly identical to the one for `/tcb/title`\textsuperscript{P.23}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[auto counter, number within = section]{pabox}[2][%][colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Examp.~\thetcbcounter : #2, #1]}
{\begin{pabox}[label={mynamelabel}, nameref={Title or anything else}]{Title text}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{pabox}
This box is automatically numbered with `\ref{mynamelabel}` on page `\pageref{mynamelabel}`.
The box is titled \textit{\enquote{\nameref{mynamelabel}}}.
\end{pabox}

\textbf{Examp. 4.1: Title text}

This is a tcolorbox.

This box is automatically numbered with 4.1 on page 113.
The box is titled “Title or anything else”.

/tcb/nameref is used automatically inside \newtcbtheorem\textsuperscript{P.372}.

Sets both `/tcb/list entry`\textsuperscript{P.134} and `/tcb/nameref` to \textit{(text)}. The most likely use case is to set a \textit{short title} for the «list of tcolorbox(es)» and for box referencing.
\texttt{/tcb/hypertarget=\{marker\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

A \texttt{\hypertarget} from the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} is used to create an internal link of an anchor \langle \text{marker} \rangle. This \langle \text{marker} \rangle can be referenced by \texttt{\hyperlink} or \texttt{/tcb/hyperlink} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.221}}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{Click me to jump to Box B.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/bookmark=\{text\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Sets a PDF bookmark with the given \langle \text{text} \rangle, if the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} is loaded. This bookmark is set with an automated destination (the current box) and is set one level below the current bookmark level.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/bookmark*=\{\langle options\rangle\}\{\langle text\rangle\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Identical to \texttt{/tcb/bookmark}, but additional \langle \text{options} \rangle from the package \texttt{bookmark} \cite{bookmark} can be given.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{Open the bookmark view of the previewer to see the bookmark.}\]
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/index=\{entry\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Adds an index \langle \text{entry} \rangle for the box. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\index{\langle entry\rangle}} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.111}}.

\texttt{/tcb/index*=\{name\}\{\langle entry\rangle\}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Adds an \langle \text{entry} \rangle to an index with a specific \langle \text{name} \rangle. This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{\index[\langle name\rangle]{\langle entry\rangle}} to \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.111}}. An index extension package like \texttt{imakeidx} has to be loaded to use this option key.
4.22 Even and Odd Pages

Also see /tcb/toggle left and right *P.52 and /tcb/toggle enlargement *P.98 for further even/odd options.

/tcb/check odd page=true/false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, a precise even/odd page testing for the current box is applied. This is done by using labels. If a box moves to another page, the document has to be compiled twice for the correct settings. If set to false, even/odd page tests may give wrong results for the first box of a page.

/tcb/toggle left and right *P.52, /tcb/toggle enlargement *P.98, and /tcb/if odd page automatically set check odd page, but for \tcbifoddpage *P.117 this option has to be set explicitly.

/tcb/if odd page={}⟨odd options⟩{⟨even options⟩} (style, no default)

If the current box is on an odd page, the ⟨odd options⟩ are applied. On an even page, the ⟨even options⟩ are applied. /tcb/check odd page is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

\begin{tcolorbox}[if odd page={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}]
This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page.

If a box is /tcb/breakable *P.401, using /tcb/if odd page only acts upon the first box. If the setting should be repeated for every partial box of the break sequence, the option should be packed into /tcb/extras *P.408. In this case, /tcb/check odd page has to be set explicitly! Also see /tcb/if odd page* *P.116.

/tcb/if odd page or oneside={}⟨odd options⟩{⟨even options⟩} (style, no default)

For onesided documents, the ⟨odd options⟩ are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to /tcb/if odd page.
\textbf{This option needs the \texttt{breakable} library, see Section 19 on page 399.}

For breakable boxes, if the current partial box is on an odd page, the \textit{(odd options)} are applied. On an even page, the \textit{(even options)} are applied. \texttt{/tcb/check odd page} \footnote{P.115} is automatically set for precise even/odd page testing.

In contrast to \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} \footnote{P.115}, \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is used on every partial box of a break sequences and not only on the first box. Another difference is that \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is applied quite late during option processing, while \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} \footnote{P.115} is applied immediately.

\texttt{/tcb/if odd page*} is implemented as \texttt{/tcb/if odd page} \footnote{P.115} packed into \texttt{/tcb/extras} \footnote{P.408}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\texttt{breakable,if odd page*={colback=yellow!50}{colback=red!50}}\]
This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
This breakable box is colored in yellow on an odd page and is colored in red on an even page. For every partial box, the test is repeated, i.e. this would give a yellow, red, yellow, red, \ldots sequence for a long content.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{For onesided documents, the \textit{(odd options)} are applied always. For twosided documents, this style is identical to \texttt{/tcb/if odd page*}.}
The \texttt{tcbifoddpage} macro can be used inside underlay, overlay, or watermark code to test if the box is on an odd page. This will work also for boxes in a break sequence. The macro can also be used inside the box \texttt{content text}. For unbreakable boxes, the correct page test is applied. But for /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} boxes, \texttt{tcbifoddpage} will always give the result for the page of the \textit{first} box inside the box \texttt{content text}. If needed, the methods from the packages \texttt{changepage} or \texttt{ifoddpage} could be used here.

```latex
\tcbset{colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[
enhanced,check odd page,
title={Example for a box on an \texttt{tcbifoddpage}\{odd\}{even} page},
watermark text={\texttt{tcbifoddpage}\{Odd\}{Even} page!}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

### Example for a box on an odd page


\texttt{tcbfoddpageoroneside}\{\textit{odd code}\}\{\textit{even code}\}

For onesided documents, the \textit{odd code} is executed always. For twosided documents, this macro is identical to \texttt{tcbifoddpage}.

\texttt{N 2016-11-18}
This is a unique identifier (arabic number) for a tcolorbox. It is locally defined inside boxes and has no meaning outside. It is used for precise even/odd page testing, but may also be valuable for elaborate user code.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,title=Box \thetcolorboxnumber]
This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{This box is \thetcolorboxnumber} and
\tcbox[on line,size=fbox]{this box is \thetcolorboxnumber}.
This box is \thetcolorboxnumber.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box is 1244.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5,check odd page,title=Box on page \thetcolorboxpage]
This box is located on page \thetcolorboxpage.
\end{tcolorbox}

This box is located on page 118.
4.23 Externalization

See Section 25 on page 477 for the \texttt{external} library of \texttt{tcolorbox}.

If the \textit{externalization} library of the \texttt{tikz} package is used and \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} is set to \texttt{tikzpicture}, a \texttt{tcolorbox} could trigger the externalization process which will arise a compilation error.

To avoid this, there are two possible strategies:

- Ensure, that \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} is set before a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used. If you typically use the pattern \texttt{\tikzexternalenable some picture \tikzexternaldisable}, there is nothing to care about.

- If \textit{externalization} is enabled globally, use \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} to shield any \texttt{tcolorbox}. The preamble code could look like this:

\begin{verbatim}
\usetikzlibrary{external}
\tikzexternalize
\tcbset{shield externalize}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize=\{true|false\}} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

If set to \texttt{true}, the drawing part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not being externalized which is a good thing at the current state of art. Nevertheless, if the \texttt{tcolorbox} contains a \texttt{tikzpicture}, this picture is still externalized. Pictures drawn with help of \texttt{/tcb/tikz upper} or alike are \textit{not} externalized.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is used inside a node of an encircling \texttt{tikzpicture} which is externalized, do \textit{not} use \texttt{\tikzexternaldisable} in front of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. \texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is deactivated automatically inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}.

\texttt{/tcb/shield externalize} is applied for every following \texttt{tcolorbox} inside the current \TeX\ group and is not affected by \texttt{/tcb/reset}.

\texttt{/tcb/external=\{file name\}} (no default, initially unset)

Convenience option which calls \texttt{\tikzsetnextfilename\{file name\}}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to set the externalization \texttt{\{file name\}} for the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} or the library \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.

\texttt{/tcb/ remake=\{true|false\}} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Convenience option which calls \texttt{\tikz/external/ remakeln ext}. Typically, it may be used inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} to force the remake of the first \texttt{tikzpicture} which is discovered \textit{inside} the box content. The package \texttt{tikz} or the library \texttt{skins} has to be loaded to use this option. Additionally, \texttt{\usetikzlibrary{external}} has to be used.
4.24 Miscellaneous

/tcb/reset (no value, initially set)

Sets (nearly) all \tcolorbox settings (including loaded libraries) back to their default values plus any settings given by \tcbsetforeverylayer$^{*}$P.13, /tcb/savedelimiter$^{*}$P.32, /tcb/capture$^{*}$P.106, and /tcb/shield externalize$^{*}$P.119 keep their values. Also, all raster values (see Section 16 on page 305) are not resetted. This option is useful for boxes in boxes where the inner box should not inherit the settings of the outer box. Note that for boxes inside boxes the reset is done automatically, if the standard settings of the package are used (v2.40 and above), see Section 4.16 from page 103.

/tcb/code=\langle code \rangle (no default, initially unset)

The given \langle code \rangle is executed immediately. This option is useful to place some arbitrary code into an option list.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black, code={Useless at this spot but functional.}, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcbraster}
\item[\tcbrastercontent] This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcolorbox}

Useless at this spot but functional.

My \textit{working} title

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}. 

120
Wraps the `\tl_if_blank:n(TF)` command(s) of expl3 for option setting. If the ⟨token list⟩ consists only of blank spaces or is entirely empty, the ⟨true options⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨false options⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfBlankF={#1}{title=`#1' } }
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{ }
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```

Wraps the `\tl_if_empty:n(TF)` command(s) of expl3 for option setting. If the ⟨token list⟩ is entirely empty, the ⟨true options⟩ are set. Otherwise, the ⟨false options⟩ are set.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1]{ IfEmptyTF={#1}{colframe=red}{title=`#1' } }
\begin{mybox}{My title}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}{ }
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
```
Wraps the \IfNoValue(TF) command(s) of \texttt{xparse} for option setting. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} has no value, the \texttt{⟨true options⟩} are set. Otherwise, the \texttt{⟨false options⟩} are set.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[My title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

Wraps the \IfValue(TF) command(s) of \texttt{xparse} for option setting. If the \texttt{⟨argument⟩} has a value, the \texttt{⟨true options⟩} are set. Otherwise, the \texttt{⟨false options⟩} are set.

\begin{tcolorbox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[My title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
Wraps the `\IfBoolean(TF)` command(s) of \texttt{xparse} for option setting. If the \texttt{\langle argument\rangle} is `\BooleanTrue`, the \texttt{\langle true options\rangle} are set. If the \texttt{\langle argument\rangle} is `\BooleanFalse`, the \texttt{\langle false options\rangle} are set.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\item This is a tcolorbox.
\item This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbitemize}
Annihilates the current \texttt{tcolorbox} as far as possible. Basically, this comments out the whole \texttt{tcolorbox} by using a key. If the option list of the current \texttt{tcolorbox} contains arbitrary code with global impact (like counter settings), these actions are not undone automatically. Nevertheless, the effects of \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{P.111}, \texttt{/tcb/step} \textsuperscript{P.112}, \texttt{/tcb/new/auto counter} \textsuperscript{P.125}, etc., are removed by \texttt{/tcb/void}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[
    title=This box is completely removed by the following key, 
    void
]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

This option key cannot be applied for every situation. For example, if several box environments with the same environment name are nested, for the outer environment \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used, since the end of the inner environment will be misinterpreted as end of the outer environment. Also, \texttt{/tcb/void} cannot be used for environments wrapped with \texttt{tcolorboxenvironment} \textsuperscript{P.22}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[
    title=This box is completely removed by the following key, 
    nirvana
]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}
    Nested Box
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}
5 Initialization Option Keys

The initialization options are only applicable for the generation of new environments and commands based on \tcolorbox and friends. Particularly, they can be used for

- \newtcolorbox → P.15, \NewTColorBox → P.16, \NewTotalTColorBox → P.18,
- \newtcblisting → P.331, \NewTCBListing → P.333,
- \newtcbinputlisting → P.335, \NewTCBInputListing → P.336,
- \newtcbtheorem → P.372, \NewTcbTheorem → P.372,
- \newtcbxfit → P.452, \NewTCBoxFit → P.453, \NewTotalTCBoxFit → P.454,

and friends like \renewtcolorbox → P.15, etc.

Typically, these options may generate counters and alike. It is strongly recommended that you use initialization options inside the preamble only. Otherwise, you may get trouble when using LATEX’s \include features. Also, it is recommended to generate new environments and commands with these options after \hyperref is loaded to avoid warnings about duplicate identifiers.

5.1 Numbered Boxes

Counters assigned using the initialization options are administrated automatically. Especially, they are increased for each new box. Independent from the real counter name, the counter value can be referenced by \tcbcounter, e.g. inside the title of the box. The real counter name is stored inside \tcbcounter.

/\texttt{tcb/new/auto counter} (no value, initially unset)

Creates a new counter automatically. With /\texttt{tcb/new/number format} → P.127 and /\texttt{tcb/new/number within} → P.127, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \tcbcounter.

\begin{tcolorbox}[auto counter,number within=section]{pabox}[2]%
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Examp.~\tcbcounter: #2,#1
\end{tcolorbox}

Examp. 5.1: Title with number

This box is automatically numbered with 5.1 on page 125. Inside the box, the \tcbcounter can also be referenced by \tcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{tcbox@cnt@pabox}. 
Here, a counter from another \texttt{tcolorbox} is reused. Note that the settings for \texttt{/tcb/new/number format=^P.127} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within =^P.127} are inherited and cannot be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[use counter from=pabox]{mybox}[2]\[%
colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1\]
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounterfrom}]{Title with continued number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\ref{myusecounterfrom}} on page \texttt{\pageref{myusecounterfrom}}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Some Box 5.2: Title with continued number
This box is automatically numbered with 5.2 on page 126. Inside the box, the 5.2 can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@pabox}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph\]{mybox}[2]\[%
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1\]
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX\ number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\ref{myusecounter}} on page \texttt{\pageref{myusecounter}}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Some Box A: Title with \LaTeX\ number
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 126. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/use counter*=(counter)}
Here, an ordinary existing \LaTeX\ \texttt{(counter)} is used for numbering. With \texttt{/tcb/new/number format=^P.127} and \texttt{/tcb/new/number within =^P.127}, the appearance and behavior of the counter can be changed. The counter value is referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}.

% \newcounter{myexample}\% \texttt{preamble}
\begin{tcolorbox}[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph\]{mybox}[2]\[%
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1\]
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX\ number}
This box is automatically numbered with \texttt{\ref{myusecounter}} on page \texttt{\pageref{myusecounter}}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/new/no counter}
The created boxes are not numbered. This is the default. The option may be used to overrule a previous option.

\texttt{/tcb/new/reset counter on overlays=true|false}
For \texttt{beamer} slides, this invokes the \texttt{\resetcounteronoverlays} command for the box counter. The counter is automatically reset on subsequent overlay slides of a frame. Thereby, the counter will be the same on all slides of every frame.

\begin{tcolorbox}[use counter=myexample,number format=\Alph\]{mybox}[2]\%
colback=green!5!white,colframe=green!55!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=Some Box \thetcbcounter: #2,#1\]
\begin{mybox}[label={myusecounter}]{Title with \LaTeX\ number}
This box is automatically numbered with A on page 126. Inside the box, the A can also be referenced by \texttt{\thetcbcounter}. The real counter name is \texttt{myexample}.
\end{mybox}
\end{tcolorbox}
The automatic counter is set to zero, if \langle counter \rangle is increased. Additionally, during output, the value of \langle counter \rangle is prepended to the value of the automatic counter. To prepend the automatic counter with the chapter number and to reset it with every new chapter, use:

\begin{phbox}[label={myfreestyle}]{Title with freestyle number}
This box is automatically numbered with \ref{myfreestyle} on page \pageref{myfreestyle}. Inside the box, the \texttt{\thetcbcounter} can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{\tcb@cnt@phbox}.
\end{phbox}

\textbf{Definition in the preamble:}
\begin{verbatim}
\newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section, number freestyle={\Q\noexpand\thesection\noexpand\Alph{\tcbcounter}}],
]{phbox}[2][% colback=yellow!15!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Question~\thetcbcounter: #2,#1}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Question (Q/5/A): Title with freestyle number}
This box is automatically numbered with (Q/5/A) on page 127. Inside the box, the (Q/5/A) can also be referenced by \thetcbcounter. The real counter name is \texttt{tcb@cnt@phbox}.
The following options `/tcb/new/crefname` and `/tcb/new/Crefname` need to be set inside the preamble.

```
\newtcolorbox{mybluebox}[auto counter,number within=section,
  crename={bluebox}{blueboxes}]
  [colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  title=Bluebox \thetcbcounter
  ]{#2,#1}
```

This option key can be used only in conjunction with the `cleveref` package [6] which has to be loaded separately. It creates a cross-reference type for the new `tcolorbox`es, where the lowercase ⟨singular⟩ and ⟨plural⟩ forms of the cross-reference are given. This type is the environment or macro name and `/tcb/label type` is set automatically. See `/tcb/label type` and [6] for more information.

```
% \usepackage{varioref}
% \usepackage{cleveref}
\begin{mybluebox}[label={myreference}]{My title}
This is an example.
\end{mybluebox}
```

```
\Cref{myreference}, \cref{myreference}.
\Cpageref{myreference}, \cpageref{myreference}.
\nameCref{myreference}, \namecref{myreference}.
\labelcref{myreference}, \labelcpageref{myreference}.
With \texttt{varioref}:
\Vref{myreference}, \vref{myreference}.
\Vref*{myreference}, \vref*{myreference}.
```

Bluebox 5.1: My title

This is an example.

Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Page 128, page 128.
Bluebox, bluebox.
5.1, 128.
With `varioref`:
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Bluebox 5.1, bluebox 5.1.
Used to comfortably blend into an existing schema of naming and numbering for some selected cases. For example, a tcolorbox can be used to display and entitle an image pretending to be a standard figure environment. Here, \texttt{/tcb/title}\rightarrow\texttt{P.23} is used instead of the standard \texttt{caption} and \texttt{/tcb/list text}\rightarrow\texttt{P.134} can be used instead of the optional parameter of the standard \texttt{caption}. Also, \texttt{/tcb/new/list type}\rightarrow\texttt{P.132} is automatically adapted (changed with version 6.0.5).

Feasible values for \texttt{⟨name⟩} are:

- \textbf{figures}: blend into the standard \texttt{figure} environment.
- \textbf{tables}: blend into the standard \texttt{table} environment.
- \textbf{listings}: blend into the standard \texttt{lstlisting} environment of the package \texttt{listings} [7].

Note that \texttt{blend into=listings} can only be used in the document content or, preferably, inside a \texttt{\AtBeginDocument} clause! Using it without \texttt{\AtBeginDocument} inside the preamble does not work since the \texttt{listings} packages initializes its counter also inside \texttt{\AtBeginDocument}.

```
\begin{figure}[htb]
  \centering\includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
  \caption{A standard figure}
\end{figure}

\newtcolorbox[blend into=figures]{myfigure}[2][]{float=htb,capture=hbox, title={#2},every float=\centering,#1}

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
  \includegraphics[height=4cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}
```

Figure 1: A standard figure

Figure 2: A tcolorbox figure
/tcb/blend before title=(value) (no default, initially colon)

This option formats the title output of /tcb/new/blend into \[P.129\]. Note that this is a common tcolorbox option which should be set globally or in the normal option part of \newtcolorbox \[P.15\].

Feasible values for \(<\text{value}\)> are:

- **colon**: use name/number plus colon.
- **dash**: use name/number plus dash.
- **colon hang**: use name/number plus colon with hanging indent.
- **dash hang**: use name/number plus dash with hanging indent.

\begin{myfigure}[A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title]
\includegraphics[height=5cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

\textbf{Figure 3 – A tcolorbox figure with quite a long title}
This option formats the title output of /tcb/new/blend into \textsuperscript{P.129}. The \textit{(code)} takes one parameter, the name/number. Use this, if /tcb/blend before title \textsuperscript{P.130} is not flexible enough.

\begin{myfigure}{A tcolorbox figure}
\includegraphics[height=6cm]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\end{myfigure}

Figure 4

A tcolorbox figure
5.2 Lists of tcolorboxes

For figures and tables, \LATEX provides the \listoffigures and \listoftables commands to create lists of these numbered entities. Also, a tcolorbox can be part of such a kind of list.

1. Assign a list \langle name \rangle by the initialization option /tcb/new/list inside.

2. Optionally, a new \langle type \rangle for list entries may be assigned by the initialization option /tcb/new/list type.

3. List entries a generated automatically within each new tcolorbox using the above initialization.
   - If /tcb/list entry \textsuperscript{P.134} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, if /tcb/title \textsuperscript{P.23} is set, the entry is generated with it.
   - Otherwise, the entry is generated with the current number and the environment name.

4. The generated list is displayed by \tcblistof \textsuperscript{P.133}.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list inside=\langle name \rangle} (no default, initially unset)

Assigns a list or contents file to the generated tcolorboxes. Entries to this list are saved to a file which gets the \langle name \rangle as file name extension. The list is referenced by this name in \tcblistof \textsuperscript{P.133}. For example:

\begin{lstlisting}[language=TeX]
list inside=exam
\end{lstlisting}

See Section 17.11 from page 366 for a complete example.

\texttt{/tcb/new/list type=\langle type \rangle} (no default, initially \texttt{tcolorbox})

Optionally, some \langle type \rangle can be assigned to the list entries. For a new \langle type \rangle, a macro \texttt{\l@\langle type \rangle} has to exist which controls the format of the list entry. The default type is defined by

\begin{lstlisting}[language=TeX]
newcommand*{\l@tcolorbox}{\dottedtocline{1}{1.5em}{2.3em}}
\end{lstlisting}

This is identical to the \texttt{\l@section} setting of \LATEX. \texttt{\l@tcolorbox} can be redefined or a new \langle type \rangle can be assigned.
Displays the generated list of \texttt{tcolorboxes} with the given \texttt{name}. The heading is generated by \texttt{(macro)}\{\texttt{short}\}\{\texttt{title text}\} where \texttt{section} is the default setting for \texttt{macro}. Here, as usual, \texttt{title text} is the title of the section or chapter while \texttt{short} is a shorter title for headings and table of contents.

- If \texttt{macro} ends with a *, \texttt{tcblistof} mimics the behavior of \texttt{listoffigures} from the standard \LaTeX\ classes and adds the title to the left and right mark for headings.
- If \texttt{macro} starts with \texttt{chapter}, a possible two column document setting is restored to one column (as standard \LaTeX\ classes do for \texttt{listoffigures}).

To display the list inside a subsection, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}[subsection]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{tcblistof}

The result of the example is found as Subsection 17.12 on page 369.

To apply the list similar to \texttt{listoffigures} for a report or book, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}[chapter*]{exam}{List of Exercises}
\end{tcblistof}

To set a short title for headings with the default \texttt{section} setting, use for example:

\begin{tcblistof}{exam}{List of Exercises}{Elaborate List of Fine Exercises for all Students of my Course}
\end{tcblistof}

\begin{itemize}
  \item The core of the list is generated by \texttt{@starttoc}\{\texttt{name}\} which can be wrapped into an own macro.
\end{itemize}
The following options are not initialization options, but common options, which are typically reasonable in connection with lists of \texttt{tcolorboxes}.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/list entry=⟨text⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, this key describes the \texttt{(text)} for an entry into the generated list, e.g.
      \begin{verbatim}
      list entry={⟨\textprotect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example⟩}
      \end{verbatim}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/list text=⟨text⟩} \hspace{1cm} \text{(style, no default)}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/list entry} to \texttt{⟨\textprotect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}⟨text⟩⟩}. So, the following settings are identical:
      \begin{verbatim}
      list text={My beautiful Example},
      list entry={⟨\textprotect\numberline{\thetcbcounter}My beautiful Example⟩}
      \end{verbatim}
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/add to list=⟨⟨list⟩⟩{⟨type⟩}} \hspace{1cm} \text{(no default, initially unset)}
    \begin{itemize}
      \item If the «list of tcolorbox(es)» feature described in the current subsection is used, list entries are generated automatically. With this key, you can enforce an entry to the given \texttt{⟨list⟩} with the given \texttt{⟨type⟩}. This issues:
      \begin{verbatim}
      \addcontentsline{⟨⟨list⟩⟩}{⟨type⟩}{⟨entry text⟩}
      \end{verbatim}
      \texttt{⟨entry text⟩} may be given by \texttt{/tcb/list entry}.
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, \texttt{/tcb/list entry} typically has not to be given, because this entry will be generated automatically.

This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, \texttt{/tcb/list text} typically has not to be given, because this entry will be generated automatically.

This is a customization option. For numbered boxes, this feature is configured automatically, where \texttt{⟨list⟩} is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list inside} \textsuperscript{P.132} and \texttt{⟨type⟩} is set by \texttt{/tcb/new/list type} \textsuperscript{P.132}.
6 Side by Side

A side by side box is a special \texttt{tcolorbox} where the upper and lower part of the box are set side by side. All boxes of this kind are unbreakable.

Further side by side options for code examples are \texttt{/tcb/listing side text}, \texttt{/tcb/text side listing}, \texttt{/tcb/listing outside text}, and \texttt{/tcb/text outside listing}.

6.1 Basic Settings

\texttt{/tcb/sidebyside=true|false} (default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Normally, the upper part and the lower part of the box have their positions as their names suggest. If \texttt{sidebyside} is set to \texttt{true}, the upper part is drawn \textit{left-handed} and the lower part is drawn \textit{right-handed}. Both parts are drawn together with the geometry settings of the upper part but the space is divided horizontally according to the following options. Colors, fonts, and box content additions are used individually. The resulting box is unbreakable.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,sidebyside]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\tcblower
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,sidebyside,righthand width=3cm,}
\texttt{sharpcorners,boxrule=.4pt,colback=green!5,colbacklower=green!50!black!50]}
\texttt{\lipsum[2]}
\tcblower
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the vertical \textit{(alignment)} for the left-handed and right-handed part. Feasible values for \textit{(alignment)} are:

- \textbf{center}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{c}.
- \textbf{top}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{t} (aligns the top lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \textbf{bottom}: identical to \texttt{minipage} option \texttt{b} (aligns the bottom lines of the left-handed and right-handed side according to their baselines).
- \textbf{center seam}: aligns the center of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \textbf{top seam}: aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
- \textbf{bottom seam}: aligns the very bottom seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=center,sidebyside align=center]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
tclower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=top,sidebyside align=top]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
tclower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=bottom,sidebyside align=bottom]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
tclower
This is a short text.
\end{tcolorbox}

\textbf{center}, \textbf{top}, and \textbf{bottom} are identical to the known corresponding \texttt{minipage} options. While this is the preferred approach for text content, the result for boxed content like tables or images may not be as expected.

For such content, one may use \textbf{center seam}, \textbf{top seam}, and \textbf{bottom seam}. For example, \textbf{top seam} aligns the very top seam of the left-handed and right-handed side.
This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

- **center seam**
  - This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

- **top seam**
  - This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.

- **bottom seam**
  - This is my description text for the pictures displayed on the right-handed side.
\texttt{/tcb/sidebyside\ gap=⟨length⟩} \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially 10mm)

Sets the horizontal distance between the left-handed and right-handed part to \(⟨\text{length}\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Wide gap, sidebyside gap=30mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=Narrow gap, sidebyside gap=1mm]
This is a text which is too long for one line.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/lefthand width=⟨length⟩} \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially unset)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given \(⟨\text{length}\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, sidebyside, lefthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, sidebyside, righthand width=3cm]
This is the upper (\textit{left-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/righthand width=⟨length⟩} \hspace{2cm} (no default, initially unset)

Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given \(⟨\text{length}\rangle\).

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, sidebyside, righthand width=3cm]
This is the lower (\textit{right-handed}) part.
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/lefthand ratio=(fraction) \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0.5)

Sets the width of the left-handed part to the given \(\text{(fraction)}\) of the available space. \(\text{(fraction)}\) is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
This is the upper (left-handed) part. \hline
\end{tabular}
\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
This is the lower (right-handed) part. \hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/righthand ratio=(fraction) \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially 0.5)

Sets the width of the right-handed part to the given \(\text{(fraction)}\) of the available space. \(\text{(fraction)}\) is a value between 0 and 1.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My title}
\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
This is the upper (left-handed) part. \hline
\end{tabular}
\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
This is the lower (right-handed) part. \hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
If one side of a side-by-side box should be adapted to the width of its content, this width has to be computed beforehand. The following example uses a savebox `\mysavebox` to store the picture to determine its width. A more convenient way to handle this task is to use the methods from Section 6.2 on page 141.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[fill=red!20,draw=red!50!black]
  (0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
  -- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}
6.2 Advanced Settings

\texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsidebyside[(options)]\{\{left-handed content\}\}\{\{right-handed content\}\}}}

Creates a colored box using more or less arbitrary \texttt{(options)} for a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. The \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}\textsuperscript{P.135} option is set to \texttt{true} and the \texttt{(left-handed content)} and \texttt{(right-handed content)} is filled into the box appropriately. The resulting box is unbreakable. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbsidebyside} is not only a shortcut for using a normal \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12} with \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}\textsuperscript{P.135}, but allows setting further options like \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside adapt}\textsuperscript{P.142} and \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside switch}\textsuperscript{P.144}.

\begin{quote}
\% \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselibrary{skins}}
\% \texttt{\textbackslash usepackage{lipsum}}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsidebyside[title=The Triangle,}
\hspace{1em} sidebyside adapt=left, \hspace{1em}
\hspace{1em} bicolor, colback=white, colbacklower=yellow!10, \hspace{1em}
\hspace{1em} fonttitle=\texttt{\textbf{series}}, center title, drop lifted shadow, \hspace{1em}
\}{{\%}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=red!20, draw=red!50!black]
(0,0) node[below]{A} -- (3,1) node[right]{B}
-- (1,4) node[above]{C} -- cycle;
\end{tikzpicture}\%
\}}\texttt{\textbackslash lipsum[1]}
\end{quote}

The Triangle

The option allows the left-handed and/or right-handed side to determine the dimensions of the box. This option is only valid inside `\tcbsidebyside` on page 141.

Feasible values for `(side(s))` are:

- **none**: no measurement of left-handed and right-handed side.
- **left**: the actual width of the left-handed content is used to set `/tcb/lefthand width` on page 138.
- **right**: the actual width of the right-handed content is used to set `/tcb/righthand width` on page 138.
- **both**: the actual width of the left-handed and right-handed content is used to set `/tcb/lefthand width` on page 138, `/tcb/righthand width` on page 138, and the overall `/tcb/width` on page 40.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=left, title=Very important table, beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10, lower separated=false,sidebyside gap=5mm]
\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbuselibrary}

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

Very important table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsidebyside[sidebyside adapt=right, blanker,sidebyside gap=5mm]
\lipsum[2]
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);
\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);
\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);
\end{tikzpicture}

% \tcbsidebyside{sidebyside adapt=both, enhanced,center, title=Both sides adapted, attach boxed title to top center={yshift=-2mm}, coltitle=black,boxed title style={colback=red!25}, segmentation style=solid,colback=red!5,colframe=red!50}{% 
\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|} \hline
left & center & right \\
\hline
A & B & C \\
D & E & F \hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tikzpicture}
}}

Both sides adapted

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>left</th>
<th>center</th>
<th>right</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
/tcb/sidebyside switch=true|false (default true, initially false)

If set to true, the (left-handed content) and (right-handed content) of \tcb{} are switched. Obviously, this option is only valid inside \tcb{}.

The side switching can be made even/odd page sensitive, if used inside /tcb/if odd page. 

\begin{tabular}{|l|c|r|}
\hline
left & center & right \\
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
D & E & F \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

This table contains the most important figures for all future actions. You may notice that B follows A, C follows B, and so on.
The following macros are slightly modified versions of the original macros from the known packages `moreverb` and `verbatim`. They are used implicitly inside of a `tcolorbox` environment, but they can be used outside also.

\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{⟨file name⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbverbatimwrite}

Saves the ⟨environment content⟩ to a file named by ⟨file name⟩. \TeX{} macros inside the environment are not expanded.

Now, we are using the file:
\input{⟨jobname_verbexp.tex⟩}

This environment may be used inside an own environment. Note, that inside the environment definition \begin{tcbverbatimwrite} has to be used instead of \begin{tcbverbatimwrite} and \end{tcbverbatimwrite} instead of \end{tcbverbatimwrite}.

\newenvironment{myverbatim}
{\begin{tcbverbatimwrite}{⟨jobname_myverb.tex⟩}}
{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}}

Now, we are using the file:
This is the text which is saved by my own environment.
\input{⟨jobname_myverb.tex⟩}

\begin{tcbwritetemp}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Has the same function as \begin{tcbverbatimwrite}, but uses the key value of `tempfile` for the file name.

Now, we are using the file:
This text is saved as is.
\tcbusetemp

\tcbusetemp

Loads the current temporary file which was saved by \begin{tcbwritetemp}.
If this option is set to be `true`, the percent sign `%` is silently ignored for `tcbverbatimwrite` and all macros and environments which are built using `tcbverbatimwrite`, e.g. `tcbwritetemp`, `tcblisting`, or `dispExample`. This option may be useful for creating some special effects, but mainly it is intended to be applied for documentation with DocStrip. The creation of this option was motivated by Yudai Nakata. Note that this option is not getting reset by `/tcb/reset`.

Normal usage:

```latex
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
%\end{center}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

\tcbusetemp
\tcbset{verbatim ignore percent}
```

Option applied:

```latex
%\begin{center}\bfseries
This is my text.
%\end{center}
```

Note that *every* percent sign is removed, also escaped ones.
If this option is set to be \texttt{true}, spaces and tabs before \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}} on the same line are ignored. The same is true for all environments based on \texttt{tcbverbatimwrite}. If anything else precedes \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}} on the same line, the complete content is written.

If this option is set to be \texttt{false}, everything preceding \texttt{\end{tcbverbatimwrite}} is written. This was the default behavior before version 6.0.0.

The idea of \texttt{/tcb/verbatim ignore indention at end} is that the environment can be indented. The creation of this option was inspired by Yukai Chou.
8 Recording

The package provides some macros and options to take records during compilation. This is done by \LaTeX\ file operations to save some data to a file for later usage. The main application scenario is depicted in Section 8.3 on the next page where information about example solutions is recorded and read again in Section 8.4 on page 152.

8.1 Macros

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbstartrecording[(file name)]
\end{verbatim}

Opens a file denoted by (file name) for writing the records. The default file name is \jobname.records. See Section 8.3 on the next page for an example application.

In some situations, a not existing optional parameter may cause parsing problems. If this happens (or just for precaution), use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbstartrecording\relax
\end{verbatim}

or

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbstartrecording[\jobname.records]
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbrecord{(content)}
\end{verbatim}

Records any (content) to the record file. \tcbrecord is implemented as \immediate\write. \tcbstartrecording has to be called before; otherwise, \tcbrecord is silently ignored.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbrecord{\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbstoprecording
\end{verbatim}

Closes the current record file which was opened by \tcbstartrecording before.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbinputrecords[(file name)]
\end{verbatim}

Opens a file denoted by (file name) for reading the records via \input. The default file name is the name of the last used record file for saving. \tcbstoprecording has to be called before.

8.2 Options

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/record=(content) (style, no default)
\end{verbatim}

Records any (content) to the record file, see \tcbrecord. This key can be used several times to write several lines.

\begin{verbatim}
record={\string\solution{\thetcbcounter}{solutions/exercise-\thetcbcounter.tex}}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/no recording
\end{verbatim}

Disables \tcbrecord and /tcb/record inside the current group.
8.3 Example: Exercises

The following application example creates exercises and their corresponding solutions. Each pair is generated inside a single \texttt{tcolorbox} where the solution is given below \texttt{tcblower}. For every example, the solution part is saved by \texttt{/tcb/savelowerto} to a file. The saving is recorded using \texttt{/tcb/record} to a file. The saving is recorded using \texttt{/tcb/record} to a file. To enlighten the possibilities, the second exercise has no solution. Finally, the solutions are input in Section 8.4 on page 152.

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:

\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sin((\sin x)^2)
\end{equation*}

\tcblower

The derivative is:

\begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' \\
&= \cos((\sin x)^2) 2 \sin x \cos x.
\end{align*}
\end{exercise}
\begin{exercise}[no solution]
It holds:
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{dx} \left( \ln|x| \right) = \frac{1}{x}.
\end{equation*}
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = (\sin(\sin x))^2
\end{equation*}
\[ \begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( (\sin(\sin x))^2 \right)' \\
&= 2\sin(\sin x) \cos(\sin x) \cos x.
\end{align*} \]
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}
\end{equation*}
\[ \begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \right)' \\
&= \frac{3x^2 - 12x + 2}{2\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}}.
\end{align*} \]
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3
\end{equation*}
\[ \begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 \right)' \\
&= 3 \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^2 \frac{(1 - 2x)3 - (2 + 3x)(-2)}{(1 - 2x)^2} \\
&= \frac{21(2 + 3x)^2}{(1 - 2x)^4}.
\end{align*} \]
\end{exercise}

\begin{exercise}
Compute the derivative of the following function:
\begin{equation*}
f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2}
\end{equation*}
\[ \begin{align*}
f'(x) &= \left( \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \right)' \\
&= \frac{(\sin 2x)^2 \left[ (-\sin x)(\cos 2x)^2 + 4\cos x \cos x \cos x \cos x(-\sin 2x) \right] - \cos x \cos x(2x)}{(\sin 2x)^4} \]
\quad \&= -\frac{\cos(2x) \left[ \sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4\cos x(\sin 2x)^2 \right] + 4 \cos x \cos x(2x)}{(\sin 2x)^3}\]
\quad \&= -\frac{\cos(2x) \left[ \sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4\cos x(\sin 2x)^2 \right]}{(\sin 2x)^3}.
\end{align*} \]
Exercise 8.1: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sin((\sin(x))^2) \]

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.2: It holds:

\[ \frac{d}{dx} \ln(x) = \frac{1}{x} \]

Exercise 8.3: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (\sin(\sin(x)))^2 \]

Solution on page 152

Exercise 8.4: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \]

Solution on page 152
Exercise 8.5: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 \]

Solution on page 153

Exercise 8.6: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \]

Solution on page 153

Exercise 8.7: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \]

Solution on page 153

Exercise 8.8: Compute the derivative of the following function:

\[ f(x) = (x^2 + 1)\sqrt{x^4 + 1} \]

Solution on page 153

8.4 Example: Solutions

This concludes the example given in Section 8.3 on page 149. Now, the saved and recorded solutions are included.

Solution of Exercise 8.1 on page 151:
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sin((\sin x)^2) \right)' = \cos((\sin x)^2)2 \sin x \cos x. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.3 on page 151:
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( (\sin(x))^2 \right)' = 2 \sin(x) \cos(x) \cos x. \]

Solution of Exercise 8.4 on page 151:
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x} \right)' = \frac{3x^2 - 12x + 2}{2\sqrt{x^3 - 6x^2 + 2x}}. \]
### Solution of Exercise 8.5 on page 152:
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^3 = 3 \left( \frac{2 + 3x}{1 - 2x} \right)^2 \left(1 - (2 + 3x)(-2)\right) = \frac{21(2 + 3x)^3}{(1 - 2x)^4}. \]

### Solution of Exercise 8.6 on page 152:
The derivative is:

\[
\begin{align*}
    f''(x) &= \left( \frac{\cos x}{(\tan 2x)^2} \right)' = \left( \frac{\cos x (\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^2} \right)' \\
    &= (\sin 2x)^2 \left[ \frac{-x}{(\cos 2x)^2} + \frac{(\cos x)4 \cos 2x (-\sin 2x)}{(\sin 2x)^3} \right] - \cos x (\cos 2x)^2 \sqrt[3]{2 \cos x} \cos x \\
    &= \frac{\cos(2x) \sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4 \cos x (\sin 2x)^2 + 4 \cos x (\cos 2x)^2}{(\sin 2x)^3} \\
    &= \frac{-\cos(2x) \sin x \sin 2x \cos 2x + 4 \cos x}{(\sin 2x)^3}.
\end{align*}
\]

### Solution of Exercise 8.7 on page 152:
The derivative is:

\[ f'(x) = \left( \cos((2x^2 + 3)^3) \right)' = -\sin((2x^2 + 3)^3) 3(2x^2 + 3)^2 2 \cdot 2x \\
= -12x(2x^2 + 3)^2 \sin((2x^2 + 3)^3). \]

### Solution of Exercise 8.8 on page 152:
The derivative is:

\[
\begin{align*}
    f'(x) &= \left( (x^2 + 1) \sqrt{x^2 + 1} \right)' = 2x \sqrt{x^2 + 1} + \frac{2x^3(x^2 + 1)}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}.
\end{align*}
\]
9 Technical Overview and Customization

This section provides a technical overview of the skin concept of \texttt{tcolorbox}. For most applications of \texttt{tcolorbox}, one will not need to know the bells and whistles described herein. You may proceed to Section 10 on page 169 where the customization options for most users are documented.

The following explanations also cover options and settings from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 169.

9.1 Skins and Drawing Engines

From a technical point of view, a skin is a style definition for the appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The core package provides some additional option keys for skins but only two skins called \texttt{standard} \footnote{P.229} and \texttt{standard jigsaw} \footnote{P.230}. The \texttt{skins} library adds several more skins. To change to a skin, only one option from the core package has to be set.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcb/skin=⟨name⟩  \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{verbatim}

Sets the current skin to \texttt{⟨name⟩}. This is a style definition which sets all the following keys, i.e. for many use cases there is nothing more to do.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcb/skin \hspace{1em} first=⟨name⟩  \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{verbatim}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.401} and is broken actually, then the skin for the first part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 415. Typically, this key is set by \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[beamer,adjusted title=My title]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcb/skin \hspace{1em} middle=⟨name⟩  \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{verbatim}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.401} and is broken actually, then the skin for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 415. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcb/skin \hspace{1em} last=⟨name⟩  \hspace{1em} (style, no default, initially \texttt{standard})
\end{verbatim}

If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P.401} and is broken actually, then the skin for the last part of the break sequence is set to \texttt{⟨name⟩}, see Subsection 19.8 on page 415. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin}.
/tcb/graphical environment=(name) (no default, initially \texttt{pgfpicture})

Sets the graphical environment for the \texttt{tcolorbox} to \texttt{(name)}. Feasible values are \texttt{pgfpicture} and \texttt{tikzpicture} or environments which inherit from one of these two. This key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.154} and may seldom be used directly.

The skin of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is drawn by up to four \textit{engines}. Afterwards, the text content is drawn which is not part of a skin. The four steps are:

1. The \textit{frame} of the box, drawn by \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}.
2. The \textit{interior} of the box. The interior of a box with title is drawn differently from a box without title. \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} or \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.156} is used to draw the interior.
3. The \textit{segmentation} (line) of the box, if there is a lower part; drawn by \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}.
4. The \textit{title area} of the box, if there is a title and \texttt{/tcb/title filled} \textsuperscript{P.33} is set to \texttt{true}; drawn by \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}.

/tcb/frame engine=(name) (no default, initially \texttt{standard})

Sets the \textit{frame} drawing engine for a box to \texttt{(name)}. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.154}. Feasible values for \texttt{(name)} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathfirstjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathmiddlejigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{pathlastjigsaw}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

/tcb/interior titled engine=(name) (no default, initially \texttt{standard})

Sets the \textit{interior} drawing engine for a titled box to \texttt{(name)}. Typically, this key is set by a \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.154}. Feasible values for \texttt{(name)} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.
 Sets the \textit{interior} drawing engine for an untitled box to \texttt{(name)}. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \textit{\textasciitilde P.154}. Feasible values for \texttt{(name)} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \textit{\textasciitilde P.170},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \textit{\textasciitilde P.170},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \textit{\textasciitilde P.170},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/interior style \textit{\textasciitilde P.170},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

 Sets the \textit{segmentation (line)} drawing engine for a box to \texttt{(name)}. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \textit{\textasciitilde P.154}. Feasible values for \texttt{(name)} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/segmentation style \textit{\textasciitilde P.172},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

 Sets the \textit{title area} drawing engine for a titled box to \texttt{(name)}. Typically, this key is set by a /tcb/skin \textit{\textasciitilde P.154}. Feasible values for \texttt{(name)} are:

- \texttt{standard}: the original code from the core package,
- \texttt{path}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \textit{\textasciitilde P.172},
- \texttt{pathfirst}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \textit{\textasciitilde P.172},
- \texttt{pathmiddle}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \textit{\textasciitilde P.172},
- \texttt{pathlast}: a \texttt{tikz} path which is controlled by /tcb/title style \textit{\textasciitilde P.172},
- \texttt{freelance}: deprecated.
- \texttt{spartan}: a quite spartan code.
- \texttt{empty}: draw nothing.

 After an engine is set to an initializing value, the resulting graphical code can be changed using code option keys, see Section 9.2 on page 158.
\tcbset{colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,
width=(\linewidth-8mm)/2,before=,after=\hfill,equal height group=geon}

\begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=The title]
The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,adjusted title=The title,frame code={\path[draw=red,fill=red!25]
(frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);},
interior titled code={\path[draw=blue,fill=blue!25]
(interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
segmentation code={\path[draw=green,fill=green!25]
(segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);},
title code={\path[draw=black,fill=brown!75!black]
(title.south west) rectangle (title.north east);}]
The upper part. \tcblower The lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
9.2 Code Option Keys

The following code options are applicable for all skins. The used \textit{graphical code} can be any \texttt{pgf} code. For all skins with exception of \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.229} and \texttt{standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.230}, the \textit{graphical code} can also be any \texttt{TikZ} code.

\texttt{/tcb/frame code=⟨graphical code⟩} (code, default from \texttt{standard})

The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the \textit{frame} of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame code={
\foreach \n in {north east,north west,south east,south west}
{\path [fill=red!75!black] (interior.\n) circle (3mm); } }]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/frame empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/frame code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame hidden} \textsuperscript{P.170}.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled code=⟨graphical code⟩} (code, default from \texttt{standard})

The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the \textit{interior} of the box, if the box comes with a title.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,interior titled code={
\path [draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
{{[xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.north west} -- {[xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.south west}}
{{[xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.south east} -- {[xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.north east}};
}
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

\texttt{/tcb/interior titled empty} (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the untitled interior. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/interior hidden} \textsuperscript{P.171}.
/tcb/interior code=(graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the interior of the box, if the box is without a title.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,interior code={
\path[draw=red!5!white,line width=5mm,line cap=round]
([xshift=3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north west)
--([xshift=-3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south east)
([xshift=3mm,yshift=3mm]interior.south west)
--([xshift=-3mm,yshift=-3mm]interior.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \tcb/interior code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use \tcb/interior hidden → P.172.

/tcb/segmentation code=(graphical code) (code, default from standard)

The given (graphical code) is used for drawing the segmentation area of the box.

\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,segmentation code={
\path[top color=red!5!white,bottom color=red!5!white,middle color=blue]
(segmentation.south west) rectangle (segmentation.north east);}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/segmentation empty (style, no value)

This is a shortcut for setting \tcb/segmentation code to empty. This option removes the drawing of the segmentation line. Alternatively, use \tcb/segmentation hidden → P.172.
The given \textit{graphical code} is used for drawing the title area of the box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\textbf{tcolorbox}\\This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.\\This is the lower part.\]
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/title code} to empty. This option removes the drawing of the title area. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/title hidden} \textsuperscript{p.173}. 
9.3 Subskins

A subskin is a new \texttt{/tcb/skin} \cite{P.154} based on an existing skin which is extended or changed.

\textbf{Never use geometry settings or bounding box options inside a subskin definition! If one skin is replaced by another skin, the overall bounding box should stay constant. Especially, if a skin is used for a breakable box, unpredictable and unpleasant results could arise otherwise. If you want to change the geometry also, use an additional style. See the skin \texttt{beamer} \cite{P.258} and the style \texttt{/tcb/beamer} \cite{P.258} as pattern.}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbsubskin\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle base skin\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}}

Creates a new skin \langle name\rangle which inherits all properties of an existing \langle base skin\rangle plus the given \langle options\rangle. The new skin \langle name\rangle can be used as value for the keys \texttt{/tcb/skin} \cite{P.154}, \texttt{/tcb/skin first} \cite{P.154}, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle} \cite{P.154}, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last} \cite{P.154}. As \langle base skin\rangle, one can take \texttt{standard} \cite{P.229}, \texttt{empty} \cite{P.265}, \texttt{enhanced} \cite{P.231}, or any skin from the \texttt{skins} library, see Section 10 on page 169.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcbsubskin{mycross}{empty}{frame code={%
\draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.south west)--(frame.north east);
\draw[red,line width=5pt] (frame.north west)--(frame.south east);},
skin first=mycross,skin middle=mycross,skin last=mycross}
\begin{tcolorbox}[skin=mycross]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of\{\langle base skin\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \langle base skin\rangle plus the given \langle options\rangle. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin first} \cite{P.154}. See a detailed example on page 271.

\texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of\{\langle base skin\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \langle base skin\rangle plus the given \langle options\rangle. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin middle} \cite{P.154}. See a detailed example on page 271.

\texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of\{\langle base skin\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}} (no default, initially unset)

Creates a new unnamed skin which inherits all properties of an existing \langle base skin\rangle plus the given \langle options\rangle. This skin is set as \texttt{/tcb/skin last} \cite{P.154}. See a detailed example on page 271.
9.4 Drawing Scheme

Depending on the complexity of a tcolorbox definition, the resulting box is drawn in a more or less complex series of steps.

To document and demonstrate these drawing steps, we consider the following box definition:

```latex
\newtcolorbox{testbox}[1][]{enhanced,title=Test Box,
  boxrule=1mm,titlerule=0.5mm,colframe=blue!50!black,
  interior style={top color=blue!20!green!50!white,bottom color=blue!20!yellow!50!white},
  colbacktitle=blue!50!green!90!white,segmentation style={solid},
  fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow,borderline={0.3mm}{0.35mm}{yellow!50!white},
  underlay={\path[fill image opacity=0.15,fill image scale=0.9,
    fill stretch picture={\draw[blue,line width=2mm] circle (1);}
  (interior.south west) rectangle (interior.north east);},
  watermark text={Watermark},watermark color={green!20!white},
  finish={\begin{tcbclipframe}
  \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
  (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
  \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
  (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
  \end{tcbclipframe}},#1}
```

For this definition, we get the maximal number of drawing steps:

1. shadow
2. frame

- Section 10.6 on page 204.
- /tcb/colframe → P.33, /tcb/opacityframe → P.57
- /tcb/frame code → P.158
- /tcb/frame style → P.169

Lower part

- Section 10.9 on page 219
9.5 Color Names

Color settings for a `tcolorbox` are saved into named colors which may be used inside a box, e.g. for an overlay. These color names are

- `tcbcolframe` set by `/tcb/colframe` (frame color)
- `tcbcolback` set by `/tcb/colback` (background color)
- `tcbcolbacktitle` set by `/tcb/colbacktitle` (background color of the title)
- `tcbcolbacklower` set by `/tcb/colbacklower` (skin dependend background color of the lower part; needs `skins` to be loaded)
- `tcbcolupper` set by `/tcb/colupper` (text color upper part)
- `tcbcollower` set by `/tcb/collower` (text color lower part)
- `tcbcoltitle` set by `/tcb/coltitle` (text color title)

```latex
\% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Color names, 
    colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!5, 
    colbacktitle=blue!50, colupper=red!35!black]
\foreach \name in {tcbcolframe, tcbcolback, tcbcolbacktitle, tcbcolbacklower, 
    tcbcolupper, tcbcollower, tcbcoltitle} 
{\tikz\path[draw,fill=\name] 
  (0,0) rectangle node[right=4mm,font=\ttfamily]{\name} (0.8,0.8);\par}
\end{tcolorbox}
```

-----

Color names

- `tcbcolframe`
- `tcbcolback`
- `tcbcolbacktitle`
- `tcbcolbacklower`
- `tcbcolupper`
- `tcbcollower`
- `tcbcoltitle`
9.6 Useful Properties

The following macros describe certain properties which may be used for the drawing scheme, see Section 9.4 on page 162. Sometimes, they are even available inside the box content. All of them are considered to be read-only and should never be redefined by the user.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbheightspace}

If the height of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not the natural height, the space difference between the forced and the natural size is hold by \texttt{tcbheightspace}. This macro is not usable inside the box content, but for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.217}}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.80}}, etc. If such a space information is needed inside the box content, see \texttt{/tcb/space to}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.65}} instead.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \texttt{\textbackslash tcbufeslibrary\{skins\}}
\newtcolorbox\{testbox\}[2]\{}\{enhanced,size=fbox,
  colframe=blue!75!black,colback=white,height=#2,
  underlay={\node[above,inner sep=3pt] at (interior.south){\%
    \includegraphics[width=\texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextwidth},height=\texttt{\textbackslash tcbheightspace}-3pt]{goldshade.png}};
  },
#1\}
\begin{testbox}\{3cm\}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\begin{testbox}\{2cm\}
  This is my box. The space is filled with a picture.
\end{testbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextwidth}

This property describes the box content width.

- If there also is a lower part, it describes the width of the upper part.
- For \texttt{/tcb/sidebyside}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.135}} boxes, it describes the combined text width plus segmentation.
- This property can be used inside the box content text with exception of \texttt{/tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.455}} boxes.
- \texttt{tcbtextwidth} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.217}}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.80}}, etc.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue!75!black]
  Inside a box: \texttt{\textbackslash tcbtextwidth} (=\texttt{\textbackslash the\{\textbackslash linewidth\}}).
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}}

This property describes the designated box content height. If the box is larger than the natural height, the actual content will be smaller than \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.

- For boxes with a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.59}, this property can be used inside the box content text. For other boxes, it denotes 0pt inside the box content.
- \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight} can be used for all box types for skins or inside \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.217}, \texttt{/tcb/overlay} \textsuperscript{P.80}, etc.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,
  underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}};}]
Inside a box with natural height: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colframe=blue!75!black,height=1cm,
  underlay={\node[left,red] at (frame.east) {Here: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}};}]
Inside a box with fixed height: \texttt{\textbackslash cbtextheight}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash cbsegmentstate}

This macro contains 0, 1, or 2. It is set for every unbroken box and every broken partial box with the following meaning:

- 0: The current (partial) box contains only an upper part.
- 1: The current (partial) box contains an upper and a lower part. The segmentation node can be used for positioning.
- 2: The current (partial) box contains only a lower part. This can only be true for parts of breakable boxes.

Skins like \texttt{bicolor} \textsuperscript{P.243} use this property to paint the (partial) boxes.

\begin{verbatim}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins,raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height,enhanced,
  watermark text=\texttt{\textbackslash cbsegmentstate}]
\begin{tcolorbox}Upper part\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Upper part \tcblower Lower part\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}
10 Library \skins

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{skins}

This also loads the package tikz [24]. Typically but not necessarily, the following skins use tikz instead of pgf.

In the following, general settings and options of the library are documented. The actual catalog of skins is found in Section 11 on page 227.

10.1 Style Option Keys

The following style options are applicable for all skins which use engines of type \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. Especially, the skin \texttt{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231} supports all of them and \texttt{standard} \textsuperscript{P.229} none.

\texttt{/tcb/frame style=(tikz keys)} (style, no default)

The \texttt{tikz keys} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \texttt{frame} of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.155} is set to \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

\texttt{/tcb/frame style image=(file name)} (no default, initially unset)

Fills the frame with an external image referenced by \texttt{(file name)}.
/tcb/frame style tile={(graphics options)}{(file name)} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the frame with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}. The \textit{(graphics options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/frame hidden (style, no value)
This is a shortcut for \texttt{frame style=\{draw=none,fill=none\}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the frame. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/frame empty \textsuperscript{P.158}}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, frame hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/interior style=(tikz keys) (style, no default)
The \texttt{(tikz keys)} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the interior of the box. They are used for the titled and for the untitled version as well.
This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{P.155}} or \texttt{/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{P.156}} is set to \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. It is \textit{not} available for standard.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style={left color=red!20!white, right color=yellow!50!white}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
This is the lower part.
/tcb/interior style image=(file name) \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the interior with an external image referenced by \textit{(file name)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style image=goldshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior style tile={width=2cm}{crinklepaper.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/interior hidden \hspace{1cm} (style, no value)
This is a shortcut for \texttt{interior style=\{draw=none,fill=none\}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the interior. Alternatively, use /tcb/interior empty \textsuperscript{P.159} and/or /tcb/interior titled empty \textsuperscript{P.158}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, interior hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
The \texttt{tikz keys} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{segmentation} line of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \texttt{path} \textsuperscript{P.156} is set to \texttt{path}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,segmentation style={double=white,draw=blue,double distance=1pt,solid}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\texttt{/tcb/segmentation hidden} \texttt{(style, no value)}

This is a shortcut for \texttt{segmentation style={draw=none,fill=none}}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the segmentation line. See also \texttt{/tcb/lower separated} \texttt{P.31} which has the same effect for most skins. Alternatively, use \texttt{/tcb/segmentation empty} \texttt{P.159}.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title,segmentation hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

\texttt{/tcb/title style=\texttt{tikz keys}} \texttt{(style, no default)}

The \texttt{tikz keys} are used inside the \texttt{tikz} path command for drawing the \textit{title area} of the box.

This option is available if the \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \texttt{path} \textsuperscript{P.156} is set to \texttt{path}, \texttt{pathfirst}, \texttt{pathmiddle}, or \texttt{pathlast}. It is \textit{not} available for \texttt{standard}.

```
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,coltitle=blue!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,title style={left color=blue!15!yellow,right color=red!85!black}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
/tcb/title style image=⟨file name⟩ (no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with an external image referenced by ⟨file name⟩.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, title style image=blueshade.png]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title style tile={⟨graphics options⟩}{⟨file name⟩} (no default, initially unset)
Fills the title area with a tile pattern based on an external image referenced by ⟨file name⟩. The ⟨graphics options⟩ are given to the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics} command.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, title style tile={width=1cm}{pink_marble.png}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.

/tcb/title hidden (style, no value)
This is a shortcut for title style={draw=none, fill=none}. Depending on the skin, this option switches off the drawing of the title background. See also /tcb/title filled → P.33 for a similar effect. Alternatively, use /tcb/title empty → P.160.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title, enhanced,title hidden]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
This is the lower part.
The ⟨tikz keys⟩ are used to draw a title rule, i.e. a rule below the optional title. The width of the rule is controlled by /tcb/titlerule → P.42. It may be set directly to a smaller width to create mixed effects with the standard rule. This option is implemented as an /tcb/underlay → P.217. Thus, it is not available for standard → P.229 and standard jigsaw → P.230, but for all other skins, e.g. enhanced → P.231. As an underlay, this option can be used multiple times and is removed by /tcb/no underlay → P.217.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,  
colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,  
colbacktitle=red!50!yellow, fonttitle=\bfseries,  
title=My title,  
titlerule=1mm,  
titlerule style=yellow ]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}
The combined Ti\textsc{k}Z style applied to frame, interior, and title background can be used by authors in customizing code.

/**\texttt{tikz/tcb fill frame} (style, no value)**
This is a Ti\textsc{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{frame} of the box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/**\texttt{tikz/tcb fill interior} (style, no value)**
This is a Ti\textsc{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{interior} of the box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

/**\texttt{tikz/tcb fill title} (style, no value)**
This is a Ti\textsc{k}Z style which is finally applied to the \textit{title area} of the box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\tcblower
This is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
### 10.2 Boxed Title Option Keys

#### 10.2.1 Boxed Title Placement

The following options place the title text into an own \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14}. This boxed title can be customized independently from the main box using /tcb/boxed title style\textsuperscript{p.181}. The placement can be influenced by \texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}.

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top left\texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14} and attached to the top left corner of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top text left\texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14} and attached to the top left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top text left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top center\texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14} and attached to the top of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top text right\texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14} and attached to the top right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, halign=right, attach boxed title to top text right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```

\texttt{/tcb/attach boxed title to top right\texttt{\langle boxtitle options\rangle}} \texttt{(style, default empty)}

The title is boxed with a \texttt{tcb}\textsuperscript{p.14} and attached to the top right corner of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

```
My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
```
The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` \ref{P.14} and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` \ref{P.14} and attached to the bottom left corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom text left]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` \ref{P.14} and attached to the bottom center of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom center]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` \ref{P.14} and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box and shifted to match title text and box text. Note that this matches the upper part, even, if there is a lower part.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, halign=right, attach boxed title to bottom text right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

The title is boxed with a `\tcbox` \ref{P.14} and attached to the bottom right corner of the main box.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom right]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```
This is a convenient style to mimic a standard title. It uses \textit{/tcb/attach boxed title to top center} \textsuperscript{P.176}, \textit{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \textsuperscript{P.185}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top, boxed title style=colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

In contrast to \textit{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches. Typically, one would not use different colors for the frame as in the example below.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top*, boxed title style=colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This is a convenient style to produce a standard-like title at the bottom of the box. It uses \textit{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom center} \textsuperscript{P.177}, \textit{/tcb/minipage boxed title} \textsuperscript{P.185}, and sizes the boxed title to match the base box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom, boxed title style=colframe=red]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

In contrast to \textit{/tcb/attach boxed title to top}, this style uses smaller left and right rules to avoid previewer glitches.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to bottom]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

This style combines \textit{/tcb/attach boxed title to bottom*} with \textit{/tcb/boxed title style} \textsuperscript{P.181}. The \{options\} are given to \textit{/tcb/boxed title style} \textsuperscript{P.181}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[tile,flip title={sharp corners}, title=My title,colback=red!10, colbacktitle=red!75!black]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
10.2.2 Options for the Boxed Title Placement

The ⟨boxtitle options⟩ of the keys described above are shift values. The dimensions of the boxed title are stored into two macros \tcbboxedtitleheight and \tcbboxedtitlewidth. These macros can be used inside the following ⟨boxtitle options⟩:

/tcb/boxtitle/xshift=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)
The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the horizontal direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left=⟨xshift=−2mm⟩, boxed title style={⟨size=small,colback=blue⟩}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshift=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)
The boxed title is shifted by ⟨length⟩ in the vertical direction.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={⟨yshift=−\tcbboxedtitleheight/2⟩, boxed title style={⟨size=small,colback=blue⟩}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)
The text inside the main box is shifted by ⟨length⟩ to give room for e.g. a sunken title.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={⟨yshift=−3mm, yshifttext=−1mm⟩, boxed title style={⟨size=small,colback=blue⟩}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/boxtitle/yshift*=⟨length⟩ (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets /tcb/boxtitle/yshift and /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext the same time. /tcb/boxtitle/yshifttext is only set if necessary.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top center={⟨yshift*=−3mm⟩, boxed title style={⟨size=small,colback=blue⟩}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

The bounding box of the resulting total tcolorbox is adapted automatically to the vertical dimensions of the boxed title. Possible horizontal enlargements are not automatically computed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title, attach boxed title to top left=⟨xshift=−2mm,yshift=−2mm⟩, boxed title style={⟨size=small,colback=blue⟩, show bounding box]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

My title
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
10.2.3 Options for the Boxed Title Box

The boxed title options are implemented as an underlay, see Section 10.8 on page 217. Therefore, a boxed title is not drawn, if a skin does not support underlays like standard→P.229. Still, the room for the boxed titles gets reserved in these cases.

A TikZ node title is produced by a boxed title which can be used inside /tcb/frame code→P.158, /tcb/interior code→P.159, underlays, overlays, and finishes.

A boxed title is almost always the first underlay. The only exceptions are underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title→P.218 which are drawn before. Additionally, underlays defined by /tcb/underlay boxed title→P.218 are only drawn, if a boxed title is actually set. They are ignored, if there is no boxed title.

\tcbboxed title size\(=\langle size\rangle\) (no default, initially title)

This setting defines the basic size for the title box. Further settings can be applied using \tcbboxed title style→P.181. Feasible values for \(\langle size\rangle\) are:

- title: Sets the size according to /tcb/size→P.50=title.
- standard: No size setting. Typically, this is identical to /tcb/size→P.50=normal.
- copy: The size values for a title of the base box are copied for the title box.

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,enhanced,boxrule=0.4pt,
title=My title,attach boxed title to top center]
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=title]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=standard]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[boxed title size=copy]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

My title
This is a tcolorbox.

My title
This is a tcolorbox.
By default, a boxed title is dimensioned with \texttt{/tcb/size} \P.50=\texttt{title} and inherits the \texttt{/tcb/skin} \P.154 and \texttt{/tcb/colframe} \P.33 of the main box. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/colback} \P.33 is inherited from the main \texttt{/tcb/colbacktitle} \P.33. Font and color of the title text are set as usual. All other \langle options \rangle are set by the \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} key. Since a boxed title is set by \texttt{\textbackslash tbox} \P.14, all \texttt{tcolorbox} options are applicable here. If \texttt{/tcb/boxed title style} is used several times, the \langle options \rangle are appended.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=green!25!black,  
attach boxed title to top center=  
\{yshift=-2mm,yshifttext=-1mm\},  
boxed title style=\{colframe=green!75!black,  
colback=yellow!50!green\}]  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,  
arc=1mm,colbacktitle=red!10!white,  
fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=red!50!black,  
attach boxed title to top text left=  
\{yshift=-0.50mm\},  
boxed title style=\{skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw,  
size=small,arc=1mm,bottom=-1mm,  
interior style=\{fill=none,  
top color=red!30!white,  
bottom color=red!20!white\}\}  
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,  
colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,colbacktitle=blue!5!yellow!10!white,  
fonttitle=\bfseries,coltitle=black,attach boxed title to top center=  
\{yshift=-0.25mm-\tcboxedtitleheight/2,yshifttext=2mm-\tcboxedtitleheight/2\},  
boxed title style=\{boxrule=0.5mm,  
frame code=\{\texttt{\textbackslash path[tcb fill frame]} (\[xshift=-4mm\]frame.west)  
\quad -- (frame.north west) -- (frame.north east) -- (\[xshift=4mm\]frame.east)  
\quad -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.south west) -- cycle; \},  
interior code=\{\texttt{\textbackslash path[tcb fill interior]} (\[xshift=-2mm\]interior.west)  
\quad -- (interior.north west) -- (interior.north east)  
\quad -- (\[xshift=2mm\]interior.east) -- (interior.south east) -- (interior.south west)  
\quad -- cycle; \}\}  
\}  
\lipsum[2]  
\end{tcolorbox}


My title


My title


/tcb/hbox boxed title 

The title text content is captured with a horizontal box. Especially, there are no linebreak possible.

\newtcolorbox[mybox][1]{hbox boxed title, enhanced, attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm, yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small, colback=red}, title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

/tcb/minipage boxed title=⟨length⟩

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of ⟨length⟩. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\newtcolorbox[mybox][1]{minipage boxed title, enhanced, attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm, yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small, colback=red}, center title, title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

/tcb/minipage boxed title*=⟨length⟩

The title text content is captured with a minipage with a width of main box width plus ⟨length⟩. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\newtcolorbox[mybox][1]{minipage boxed title*=−2cm, enhanced, attach boxed title to top center= {yshift=-3mm, yshifttext=-1mm}, boxed title style={size=small, colback=red}, center title, title={#1}}

\begin{mybox}{Short title}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}

\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{mybox}
The title text content is captured with a TikZ node with given TikZ \( \langle \text{options} \rangle \). The text is centered by default.

\[
\text{\begin{mybox}{Short title}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]

\[
\text{\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]

The title text content is captured with a varwidth environment with a width of \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \). This style needs the varwidth package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\[
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\text{\begin{mybox}{Short title}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]

\[
\text{\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]

The title text content is captured with a varwidth environment with a width of main box width plus \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \). This style needs the varwidth package \cite{varwidth} to be loaded manually. By default, the resulting boxed title is somewhat smaller than the main box.

\[
% \usepackage{varwidth}
\text{\begin{mybox}{Short title}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]

\[
\text{\begin{mybox}{This title is not really very short}\textbf{This is a tcolorbox.}\end{mybox}}
\]
10.3 Watermark Option Keys

The following watermark options are applicable for all skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \footnote{P. 155}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \footnote{P. 229} does not support these watermarks, but all other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \footnote{P. 231}.

The watermark options rely on the more general overlay options described in Section 4.12 from page 80. Therefore, \texttt{watermarks} and \texttt{overlays} cannot be used mixed. But a mixture is possible with the \texttt{\texttt{\textbackslash hooks}} library, see Section 23.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text} = \langle text \rangle \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Writes some \langle text \rangle in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This \langle text \rangle is written \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom} \footnote{P. 190} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch} \footnote{P. 192}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\footnotesize
\texttt{\begin{verbatim}
\lipsum[1]
\tcblower
\lipsum[2]
\end{verbatim}}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{verbatim}
My title

\end{verbatim}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/watermark text on} = \langle part \rangle \text{ is (text)} \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

This option writes some \langle text \rangle in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark text}. But this is done only for boxes named \langle part \rangle of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \footnote{P. 401}.

Feasible values for \langle part \rangle are:

- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{first and middle}: first and middle parts of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark graphics=(file name)  (no default, initially unset)

Draws an external picture referenced by \(\text{(file name)}\) in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The picture is drawn \textit{after} the frame and interior are drawn and \textit{before} the text content is drawn. It is zoomed or stretched according the values of \texttt{/tcb/watermark zoom}\S\textsuperscript{P.190} or \texttt{/tcb/watermark stretch}\S\textsuperscript{P.192}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watermark opacity=0.15]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblower
This example uses a public domain picture from \\
\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}
\end{tcolorbox}

/\texttt{tcb/watermark graphics} on=(part) is (file name)  (no default, initially unset)

This option draws a picture referenced by \(\text{(file name)}\) in the center of the interior region of a \texttt{tcolorbox} as described for \texttt{/tcb/watermark graphics}. But this is done only for boxes named \(\text{(part)}\) of a break sequence, see \texttt{/tcb/breakable}\S\textsuperscript{P.401}.

Feasible values for \(\text{(part)}\) are:

- \texttt{broken}: all broken box parts,
- \texttt{unbroken}: unbroken boxes only,
- \texttt{first}: first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle}: middle parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{last}: last parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{unbroken and first}: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
- \texttt{middle and last}: middle and last parts of a break sequence.
Draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox. The code is executed after the frame and interior are drawn and before the text content is drawn. The result is zoomed or stretched according the values of /tcb/watermark zoom→P.190 or /tcb/watermark stretch→P.192.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark tikz={\draw[\line width=2mm] circle (1cm) node{\fontfamily{ptm}\fontseries{b}\fontsize{20mm}{20mm}\selectfont ?};}]
\lipsum[1]
\tcbloveh\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/watermark tikz on=(part) is (graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This option draws the given tikz (graphical code) in the center of the interior region of a tcolorbox as described for /tcb/watermark tikz. But this is done only for boxes named ⟨part⟩ of a break sequence, see /tcb/breakable→P.401.

Feasible values for ⟨part⟩ are:
• broken: all broken box parts,
• unbroken: unbroken boxes only,
• first: first parts of a break sequence,
• middle: middle parts of a break sequence,
• last: last parts of a break sequence,
• unbroken and first: unbroken boxes and first parts of a break sequence,
• middle and last: middle and last parts of a break sequence.

/tcb/no watermark (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the watermark if set before. This is an alias for /tcb/no overlay→P.81.
Sets the opacity value $\in [0,1]$ for a watermark.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{\texttt{tcbset\{enhanced,\textcolor{red!5!white},\textcolor{red!75!black},fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},\textcolor{black},\texttt{watermark\ watermark text=Watermark,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}}\]}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 1.00,watermark opacity=1.00]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Opacity 0.50,watermark opacity=0.50]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}
\[\text{\texttt{tcbset\{enhanced,\textcolor{red!5!white},\textcolor{red!75!black},fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},\textcolor{black},\texttt{watermark\ watermark text=Watermark,nobeforeafter,width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}}\]}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0,watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 0.5,watermark zoom=0.5]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

Sets the zoom value for a watermark. The zoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches the frame.
/tcb/watermark shrink=$(fraction)$  
(default 1, initially unset)

Identically to /tcb/watermark zoom → P.190, but the watermark never gets enlarged. Thus, the watermark keeps its original size or is shrunk.

/tcb/watermark overzoom=$(fraction)$  
(default 1, initially unset)

Sets the overzoom value for a watermark. The overzoom respects the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box until the watermark touches all four sides of the frame.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[tcbset{enhanced, colback=white, colframe=blue!50!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, 
watermark opacity=0.5, 
watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg, nobeforeafter, width=(\linewidth-2mm)/2}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Zoom 1.0, watermark zoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Overzoom 1.0, watermark overzoom=1.0]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

If a /tcb/watermark overzoom value of 1.0 is used in connection with invisible top and bottom rules which still have a thickness greater than 0pt, the space of these invisible rules may not be covered by the watermark. For example, this situation may occur during the breaking of /tcb/enhanced → P.231 boxes. To avoid this optical glitch, just set /tcb/pad at break → P.406 to any desired value.
Sets the stretch value for a watermark. The stretch value is applied to width and height in relation to the box dimensions. It does not respect the aspect ratio. The value 1.0 means to fill the whole box.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 1.00,watermark stretch=1.00] \lipsum[2] \end{tcolorbox} \hfill \begin{tcolorbox}[title=Stretch 0.50,watermark stretch=0.50] \lipsum[2] \end{tcolorbox}

My title


Sets the color for the watermark.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle={\bfseries}] 
\lipsum[1] \end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/clip watermark=true|false

Sets the watermark to be clipped to the interior area.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=white,colframe=blue!50!white,fonttitle=\bfseries, watermarked opacity=0.5,watermark stretch=1.00,arc=3mm, watermark graphics=lichtspiel.jpg}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Clip (default),clip watermark]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=No clip,clip watermark=false]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Removing the clipping should be necessary only in very rare situations. Until version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24), theoretically, the watermark could be extended over the boundaries of the box without limit. Newer versions restrict the watermark to a box scaled 4 times the actual tcolorbox. If you really need to extend further, you are strongly advised to implement this by using /tcb/overlay \(^\text{P.80}\) or /tcb/underlay \(^\text{P.217}\) directly where no restrictions apply. Note that a watermark is just a special /tcb/overlay \(^\text{P.80}\).
10.4 Clip Environments

The following clip environments are applicable for all skins which use engines of type path, pathfirst, pathmiddle, or pathlast. Especially, the skin enhanced supports all of them and standard none. The typical area of application is inside overlay code, see Section 4.12 from page 80.

\begin{tcbclipframe}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbclipframe}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the frame area path.

\makeatletter
\newtcolorbox{picturebox}[2][{}]{% 
  enhanced,frame hidden,interior hidden,fonttitle=\bfseries, 
  overlay=\begin{tcbclipframe}node at (frame) 
  \begin{includegraphics}[width=\tcb@width,height=\tcb@height]{#2};\end{tcbclipframe}% 
  \begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[white,opacity=0.75]
  (frame.south west) rectangle (frame.north east);\end{tcbclipinterior},#1} 
\makeatother

\begin{picturebox}[title=My Picture Box]{lichtspiel.jpg}
\lipsum[1]
\end{picturebox}
\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\hspace{0.05\textwidth}⟨environment content⟩\hspace{0.05\textwidth}\end{tcbinvclipframe}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the outside of the frame area path.

\begin{tcbset}
enhanced jigsaw, fonttitle=\bfseries, opacityback=0.35, colback=blue!5!white, frame style={left color=red!75!black, right color=red!10!yellow}
\end{tcbset}

\begin{tikzpicture}
% draw two balls
\path [use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
\shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
\shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tcolorbox}
title=A translucent box,
overlay={\begin{tcbinvclipframe}
\draw [red, line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm, yshift=2mm]frame.north west)
-- ([xshift=2mm, yshift=-2mm]frame.south east);
\draw [red, line width=1cm] ([xshift=-2mm, yshift=-2mm]frame.south west)
-- ([xshift=2mm, yshift=2mm]frame.north east);
\end{tcbinvclipframe}}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

A translucent box

\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[enhanced,title=My Title,
\overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.north west)--(interior.south east);
\draw[red,line width=1cm] (interior.south west)--(interior.north east);
\end{tcbclipinterior}}\]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbclipinterior}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the interior area path.

\begin{tcbcliptitle}
\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,title=My Title,colframe=blue,colback=yellow!10!white,
\overlay={\begin{tcbcliptitle}
node at (title)
\\\\\\\\\{\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{lichtspiel.jpg}\};\end{tcbcliptitle}}]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbcliptitle}

Defines a Tikz scope which clips to the title area path.
/tcb/clip title=true|false
(default true, initially false)

Sets the title to be clipped to the title area.

\tcboxset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!white,coltitle=black,\ncolbacktitle=yellow!50!white}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=\mbox{This is a title which is unbreakable and far too long},\nclip title]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/clip upper=true|false
(default true, initially false)

Sets the upper part to be clipped to the interior area.

\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2][]{\tcbox[enhanced,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt,\nright=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,clip upper,\ncolback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt,nobeforeafter,\ncenter title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}}{\includegraphics[width=\the\dimexpr(\linewidth-4mm)/2\relax]{#2}}}
\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}
The example for /tcb/clip upper \(^{P.197}\) sizes the box according to the dimensions of the picture. To do it the other way around, the watermark options provide an easy solution.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\mygraphics}[2]{
\tcbbox[enhanced,capture=minipage,boxsep=0pt,top=0pt,bottom=0pt,left=0pt, right=0pt,boxrule=0.4pt,drop fuzzy shadow,nobeforeafter, colback=black!75!white,toptitle=2pt,bottomtitle=2pt, center title,fonttitle=\small\sffamily,title=\detokenize{#2}, width=(\linewidth-4mm)/2,height=6cm,colbacktitle={black}, watermark zoom=1.0,watermark graphics={#2}]{}}
\end{verbatim}

\mygraphics{lichtspiel.jpg}\hfill
\mygraphics{Basilica_5.png}

\texttt{/tcb/clip lower=true|false}  \hspace{1cm}\texttt{(default true, initially false)}

Sets the lower part to be clipped to the interior area.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcset{enhanced,width=5cm,colframe=red!50!black,text and listing}
\begin{tcblisting}{}
\texttt{Donau-dampf-schiff-fahrts-ka-pit"ans-m"utzenfransen}
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{tcblisting}{clip lower}
\texttt{Donau-dampf-schiff-fahrts-ka-pit"ans-m"utzenfransen}
\end{tcblisting}
\end{verbatim}
10.5 Border Line Option Keys

The following borderline options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite{P.155}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \cite{P.229} does not support these border lines, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \cite{P.231}.

The borderlines are independent from the normal \texttt{tcolorbox} rules. They may be used with or without the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \cite{P.156}.

The borderlines are stackable, i.e. several different border lines can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn \textit{after} the box frame and box interior and \textit{before} overlays or watermarks.

Technically, the normal \texttt{tcolorbox} rules result from a \texttt{TiKZ} filling process. The border lines are created by a \texttt{TiKZ} drawing process. This can be used to apply different effects.

\begin{code}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Rounded corners,fonttitle=\textbf,boxsep=5pt, arc=8pt, borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{code}

\begin{code}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=Sharp corners,fonttitle=\textbf,boxsep=5pt, arc=8pt,sharp corners=downhill, borderline={0.5pt}{0pt}{red}, borderline={0.5pt}{5pt}{blue,dotted}, borderline={0.5pt}{-5pt}{green} ]
This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{code}


My title


/tcb/no borderline (no default, initially set)

Removes all borderlines if set before.

/tcb/show bounding box=\langle color\rangle (default red, initially unset)

Displays the bounding box borderline of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. Its intended use is debugging and fine tuning. It should not be part of a final document. The optional \langle color\rangle is the base color for the bounding box borderline.

/tcbset\{enhanced,nobeforeafter,width=4cm,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries}\}

/\texttt{begin}(tcolorbox)\{show bounding box,title=Normal\}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/\texttt{end}(tcolorbox)\}

/\texttt{begin}(tcolorbox)\{show bounding box=blue,title=Shadow,drop fuzzy shadow\}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/\texttt{end}(tcolorbox)\}

/\texttt{begin}(tcolorbox)\{show bounding box=green,title=Enlarged,drop fuzzy shadow,\}

enlarge by=2mm\}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

/\texttt{end}(tcolorbox)\}
The following *partial* borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their ⟨offset⟩, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

The following partial borderlines act slightly different from the complete borderlines described before. They ignore rounded corner settings, their length is not modified by their ⟨offset⟩, they ignore skin settings but adapt to breakable boxes.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline north={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline south={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline east={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
  borderline west={2pt}{-2pt}{red}]
  This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This is a `tcolorbox`. 
Adds a new borderline with the given \(\textit{width}\) to the north and south of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive \(\textit{offset}\) value moves the borderlines inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative \(\textit{offset}\) value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,top=3mm,bottom=3mm,borderline horizontal={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Adds a new borderline with the given \(\textit{width}\) to the east and west of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. A positive \(\textit{offset}\) value moves the borderlines inside the \texttt{tcolorbox} and a negative \(\textit{offset}\) value moves them outside without changing the bounding box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[blanker,left=3mm,right=3mm,borderline vertical={2pt}{0pt}{red}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
My second line.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

10.6 Shadow Option Keys

The following shadow options are applicable for most skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite[p. 155]{...}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard} \cite[p. 229]{...} does not support these shadows, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced} \cite[p. 231]{...}.

The shadows are stackable, i.e. several different shadows can be used on the same \texttt{tcolorbox}. They are drawn \textit{before} the box frame is drawn.

\texttt{/tcb/no shadow} \hspace{1cm} (no default)

Removes all shadows if set before.

10.6.1 Common Shadows and Halos

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow=\langle color\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow=\langle color\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop fuzzy shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/drop midday shadow=\langle color\rangle} \hspace{1cm} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \langle color\rangle for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop midday shadow] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop midday shadow=blue] This is a tcolorbox. \end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow=⟨color⟩ 
(style, default black!50!white)

Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the ⟨color⟩ for the shadow can be changed.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy midday shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop fuzzy midday shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/halo=⟨size⟩ with ⟨color⟩ 
(style, default 0.9mm with yellow)

Adds a new halo shadow with the given ⟨color⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨size⟩.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another halo, halo=2mm with green]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fuzzy halo=⟨size⟩ with ⟨color⟩ 
(style, default 0.9mm with yellow)

Adds a new fuzzy halo shadow with the given ⟨color⟩ which overlaps the colorbox an all sides by ⟨size⟩ plus 0.48mm.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own halo,fuzzy halo]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another halo, fuzzy halo=2mm with green]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,enhanced jigsaw,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt, 
fuzzy halo=2mm with red!50!white, 
fuzzy halo=1mm with white]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

For all following shadows, the optionally given \textit{\texttt{\textless color\textgreater}} for the shadow can be changed equivalent to the preceding examples.

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southeast=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \tcb{drop shadow} \textsuperscript{P.204}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow southeast,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow south=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to \tcb{drop midday shadow} \textsuperscript{P.204}.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow south,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow southwest=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow southwest,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow west=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow west,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow northwest=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow northwest,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop shadow north=\texttt{(color)}} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, default \texttt{black!50!white})}

Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcboxedsmall}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{tcolorbox\}\{drop shadow north,}
\texttt{\hspace{1cm} enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black\} \texttt{\textbackslash \textnormal{This is a tcolorbox.}}
\end{tcboxedsmall}
\end{tcolorbox}
/tcb/drop shadow northeast=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow northeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop shadow east=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow east, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southeast=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy shadow → P.204.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southeast, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow south=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. This shadow is identical to /tcb/drop fuzzy midday shadow → P.205.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow south, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow southwest=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow southwest, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/drop fuzzy shadow west=(color)  (style, default black!50!white)
Adds a new fuzzy shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow west, enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northwest, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow north, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow northeast, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop fuzzy shadow east, enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a tcolorbox.
10.6.2 Lifted Shadows

\texttt{/tcb/drop lifted shadow\{color\}} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop lifted shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop small lifted shadow\{color\}} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new small lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop small lifted shadow, size=fbox]
{This is a tcolorbox.}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop small lifted shadow=black]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/drop large lifted shadow\{color\}} (style, default \texttt{black!50!white})

Adds a new large lifted shadow with standard dimensions to the stack of shadows. Optionally, the \texttt{(color)} for the shadow can be changed.

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop large lifted shadow]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, drop large lifted shadow=blue]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
10.6.3 Generic Shadows

\tcbshadow={⟨xshift⟩}{⟨yshift⟩}{⟨offset⟩}{⟨options⟩} (no default)

Adds a new shadow to the stack of shadows. This shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by ⟨xshift⟩ and ⟨yshift⟩. The ⟨offset⟩ value is a distance value from the frame outline. A positive ⟨offset⟩ value shrinks the shadow and a negative ⟨offset⟩ value enlarges the shadow. The shadow is filled along a \texttt{TikZ} path with the given \texttt{TikZ} ⟨options⟩.

The shadows adapt to the rounded corners of the \texttt{tcolorbox}. An shrinked shadow will switch to sharp corners if necessary, an enlarged shadow may become more rounded depending on several factors. But \texttt{/tcb/sharp corners} \texttt{-p.54} have sharp shadows.

Shadows are not considered for the bounding box computation by default. Large shadows may be overlaped by the following content. But, the bounding box can be adapted if necessary.

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.5}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow, shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=blue, opacity=0.25}, shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{fill=red, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow, shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{2mm}{fill=black, opacity=0.25}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Halo shadow, shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\tcbset{enhanced, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow, fuzzy shadow={2mm}{-1mm}{0mm}{0.1mm} \{black!50!white\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Another shadow, fuzzy shadow={-1mm}{-2mm}{0mm}{0.2mm} \{fill=blue\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Double shadow, fuzzy shadow={-1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{0.1mm} \{blue\}, fuzzy shadow={1.5mm}{-1.5mm}{0mm}{0.1mm} \{red\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Far shadow, fuzzy shadow={5.5mm}{-3.5mm}{0mm}{0.3mm} \{black\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\par\bigskip
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Glow shadow, fuzzy shadow={0mm}{0mm}{-1.5mm}{0.15mm} \{yellow!75!red\}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][]{enhanced, fuzzy shadow={1.0mm}{-1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{blue!50!white}, fuzzy shadow={-1.0mm}{-1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{red!50!white}, fuzzy shadow={-1.0mm}{1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{green!50!white}, fuzzy shadow={1.0mm}{-1.0mm}{0.12mm}{0mm}{yellow!50!white}#1}
\begin{mybox}[title=A multi shadow box]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}

A multi shadow box

This is a tcolorbox.
If set to true, the shadow drawing algorithm tries to do a somewhat smart calculation of the arc for the shadow. The result is pleasing for typical boxes with rounded corners, but gives strange results for circular boxes.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,width=3cm,square,halign=center,valign=center}

\begin{tcolorbox}[drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (arguably better than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, drop shadow]
Smart shadow arc (worse than normal)
\end{tcolorbox}
\hfill
\begin{tcolorbox}[circular arc, smart shadow arc=false, drop shadow]
Normal shadow arc
\end{tcolorbox}
```

 adds a new lifted shadow to the stack of shadows. Actually, this option adds several shadows which appear like a shadow with a fuzzy border. This lifted shadow follows the outline of the \texttt{tcolorbox} but is shifted by \texttt{\langle xshift \rangle} and \texttt{\langle yshift \rangle} on the lower left corner and by \texttt{\langle -xshift \rangle} and \texttt{\langle yshift \rangle} on the lower right corner. Additionally, there is a \texttt{\langle bend \rangle} in the middle. The \texttt{\langle step \rangle} value describes a shrink offset used for the combination of the partial shadows. The shadow is filled along a Ti\texttt{kZ} path with the given Ti\texttt{kZ} \texttt{\langle options \rangle} but any \texttt{opacity} value will be ignored.

```
\tcbset{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
  boxrule=0.1pt,
  colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My own shadow,
  lifted shadow={1mm}{-2mm}{3mm}{0.1mm}{black!50!white}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

My own shadow

This is a tcolorbox.
10.6.4 \textit{TikZ} Shadows

Alternatively to the package shadow options described before, shadows from the «Shadows Library» of \textit{TikZ} can be used. Such shadows can be added directly to the frame path using \texttt{/tcb/frame style\textquotesingle{} P.\hspace{1em}169}.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
    frame style={drop shadow} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,height=3cm,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
    halign=center,valign=center,
    frame style={circular drop shadow} ]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
% \usetikzlibrary{shadows}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,width=2.5cm,
    square,circular arc,
    halign=center,valign=center,
    colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
    frame style={circular glow={fill=red}} ]
tcolorbox
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}
10.7 TikZ Picture Option Keys

The following general options are applicable for skins which use \texttt{tikzpicture} as \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment^^}\ref{p.155}. Therefore, the skin \texttt{standard}^^\ref{p.229} does not support these options, but most other skins, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}^^\ref{p.231}.

\texttt{/tcb/tikz=\{tikz option list\}} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially empty)

Adds the given \texttt{(tikz option list)} to the main \texttt{tikzpicture} environment used to draw the color box, see \cite{24}. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{(tikz option list)} is appended to the current option list.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbs{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
    colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Transparent box,
tikz={opacity=0.5,transparency group}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbs{enhanced,colback=red!5!white,
    colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
    fontupper=\bfseries\Huge,
    halign title=center,halign=center}
\begin{tcolorbox}[title=Rotated box,
tikz={rotate=30}]
Sold!
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/tikz reset} \hspace{1em} (initially set)

Removes all options given by \texttt{/tcb/tikz}.

\texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz=\{tikz code\}} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially empty)

The given \texttt{(tikz code)} is executed at the beginning of the \texttt{tikzpicture} environment after the TikZ option \texttt{execute at begin picture} was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{(tikz code)} is appended to the current code.

\texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz reset} \hspace{1em} (initially set)

Removes all code given by \texttt{/tcb/at begin tikz}.

\texttt{/tcb/at end tikz=\{tikz code\}} \hspace{1em} (no default, initially empty)

The given \texttt{(tikz code)} is executed at the ending of the \texttt{tikzpicture} environment before the TikZ option \texttt{execute at end picture} was applied. If this option is applied a second time, the new \texttt{(tikz code)} is appended to the current code.

\texttt{/tcb/at end tikz reset} \hspace{1em} (initially set)

Removes all code given by \texttt{/tcb/at end tikz}.
/tcb/rotate=\langle angle\rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Rotates the tcolorbox by the given \langle angle\rangle. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like shadings will really be rotated.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=Rotated box,rotate=30\]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/scale=\langle fraction\rangle  \quad \text{(no default, initially unset)}

Scales the tcolorbox by the given \langle fraction\rangle. Note that this is a TikZ coordinate transformation i.e. not all graphical elements like line widths will really be scaled.

\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=Scaled box,scale=0.5\]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}\[title=Scaled box,scale=1.25\]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/remember  \quad \text{(style, initially unset)}

Shortcut for tikz={remember picture}. This allows one to reference nodes in other TikZ pictures.

\begin{tcolorbox}\begin{tcbset}\[enhanced,remember,\text{colback=red!5!white},colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries\text{title=The four corners of a paper,overlay={\draw[red!50!white,\line width=1mm,\opacity=0.5,\shorten >=3mm](frame.north west) edge[->] (current page.north west)(frame.north east) edge[->] (current page.north east)(frame.south west) edge[->] (current page.south west)(frame.south east) edge[->] (current page.south east);}]}\]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcbset}\end{tcolorbox}

The four corners of a paper
This is a tcolorbox.
The \texttt{frame} node will be remembered by the given \texttt{name} to be referenced in other Ti\kZ pictures.

\begin{tcblisting}{mybox}[title=First Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=one]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Second Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=two]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Third Box,nobeforeafter,width=\linewidth/4,remember as=three]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}
\hfill
\begin{mybox}[title=Fourth Box,remember as=four]
This is a test.
\end{mybox}

\begin{tikzpicture}[overlay,remember picture,line width=1mm,draw=red!75!black]
\draw[->] (one.east) to[bend right] node[above] {A} (two.west);
\draw[->] (two.east) to[bend left] node[above] {B} (three.west);
\draw[->] (three.east) to[bend left=90] node[right] {C} (four.east);
\draw[->] (four.west) to[bend left=90] node[left] {D} (one.west);
\end{tikzpicture}

10.8 Underlay Option Keys

Underlays are quite similar to overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 80. Underlays are drawn after the frame and interior are drawn and before overlays and the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 162 for the general drawing scheme.

The differences between underlays and overlays are:

- Underlays are not applicable for the skins standard\textsuperscript{P.229} and standard jigsaw\textsuperscript{P.230}, whereas overlays are applicable also for these skins. The skin spartan\textsuperscript{P.275} supports underlays but no overlays.

  ! If an underlay is used with the standard\textsuperscript{P.229} skin, it is silently ignored.

- Underlays are stackable, i.e. several different underlays can be used on the same tcolorbox. Overlays are not stackable by default (but with some help of the library \texttt{LIB hooks}).

- Boxed titles are implemented with underlays (Section 10.2 on page 176), watermarks are implemented with overlays (Section 10.3 on page 187).

\begin{tcb/mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcb/mybox}

\begin{tcb/mybox}[title=My box,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcb/mybox}

\begin{tcb/mybox}[title=My box,watermark text=My Watermark]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcb/mybox}

/tcb/underlay=(\texttt{graphical code})

Adds \texttt{graphical code} to the box drawing process. This \texttt{graphical code} is drawn after the frame and interior and before the text content.

/tcb/no underlay

Removes the underlay if set before.
/tcb/underlay broken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{(graphical code)\} is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} but \textit{is not} broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable\textsuperscript{P.402}, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay unbroken (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the unbroken underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{first} part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay first (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the first underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{middle} parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay middle (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the middle underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable\textsuperscript{P.401} and is broken actually, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process for the \textit{last} part of the break sequence. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/no underlay last (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the last underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay boxed title=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a \textit{boxed title}, see Section 10.2 on page 176, then the \{graphical code\} is added to the box drawing process before the boxed title is drawn.

/tcb/no underlay boxed title (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the boxed title underlay if set before.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and first=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay first together. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay middle and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay middle and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay unbroken and last=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay unbroken and /tcb/underlay last together. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.

/tcb/underlay first and middle=(graphical code) (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/underlay first and /tcb/underlay middle together. /tcb/underlay\textsuperscript{P.217} overwrites this key.
10.9 Finish Option Keys

Finishes are quite similar to underlays described in Section 10.8 on page 217 and overlays described in Section 4.12 on page 80. Finishes are drawn after the text content is drawn; see Section 9.4 on page 162 for the general drawing scheme. Therefore, a finish will reduce the readability of the text content.

Finishes are intended for special effects like highlights or glosses or text over text.

- Finishes are only applicable for the skins `enhanced` , `empty` , `freelance` , `bicolor` , `beamer` , and `widget` .

  ![If a finish is used with the standard skin, it is silently ignored.]

- Finishes are stackable, i.e. several different finishes can be used on the same `tcolorbox` .

  `/tcb/finish=⟨graphical code⟩` (no default, initially unset)

  Adds ⟨graphical code⟩ to the box drawing process. This ⟨graphical code⟩ is drawn after the text content.

  ```latex
  \newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][][enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish=\begin{tcbclipframe}
  \path[bottom color=black,top color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
  (frame.south west) -- (frame.south east) -- (frame.north east) -- cycle;
  \path[top color=white,bottom color=black!50!white,opacity=0.1]
  (frame.south west) -- (frame.north east) -- (frame.north west) -- cycle;
  \end{tcbclipframe}],#1}
  \begin{mybox}[title=My box]
  \lipsum[2]
  \end{mybox}
  ```

  ![My box]


  ```latex
  \newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][][enhanced,colback=red!5!white, colbacktitle=red!85!black!50!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, finish=\node[draw,fill=white,fill opacity=0.85,inner sep=5mm, rounded corners] at (frame.center) {\Huge\bfseries Finish!};],#1}
  \begin{mybox}[title=My box]
  \lipsum[2]
  \end{mybox}
  ```

  ![My box]

/tcb/no finish  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the finish if set before.

/tcb/finish broken=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable *P.401 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable *P.401 but is not broken actually or if the box is set to be /tcb/unbreakable *P.402, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish unbroken  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the unbroken finish if set before.

/tcb/finish first=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable *P.401 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the first part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish first  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the first finish if set before.

/tcb/finish middle=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable *P.401 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the middle parts (if any) of the break sequence. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish middle  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the middle finish if set before.

/tcb/finish last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
If the box is set to be /tcb/breakable *P.401 and is broken actually, then the (graphical code) is added to the box drawing process for the last part of the break sequence. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/no finish last  (style, no default, initially set)
Removes the last finish if set before.

/tcb/finish unbroken and first=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish first together. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish middle and last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish middle and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish unbroken and last=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish unbroken and /tcb/finish last together. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.

/tcb/finish first and middle=(graphical code)  (no default, initially unset)
This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/finish first and /tcb/finish middle together. /tcb/finish *P.219 overwrites this key.
10.10 Hyper Option Keys

All options of this section need the package `hyperref` [17] to be loaded separately. All these options are implemented as `/tcb/finish` *P.219* and can be disabled by `/tcb/no finish` *P.220*.

If the package `hyperref` [17] is not loaded or if the standard *P.229* skin is used, all hyper option are silently ignored.

URN 2017-02-03 /tcb/hyperref=(marker) (no default, initially unset)

The whole frame of a `tcolorbox` is make an active hyperlink for a ⟨marker⟩ which was given by \label or `/tcb/label` *P.111* or `/tcb/phantomlabel` *P.111*. Such, the `tcolorbox` is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

URN 2017-02-03 /tcb/hyperref interior=(marker) (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the interior of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

URN 2017-02-03 /tcb/hyperref title=(marker) (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the title of a `tcolorbox` is made a hyperlink.

URN 2017-02-03 /tcb/hyperref node={⟨marker⟩}{⟨node⟩} (no default, initially unset)

Identical to `/tcb/hyperref`, but only the given TikZ ⟨node⟩ is made a hyperlink. This ⟨node⟩ may be frame, interior, title, or any other named node used for drawing the `tcolorbox`. The ⟨node⟩ may be defined inside `/tcb/underlay` *P.217*, `/tcb/overlay` *P.80* or `/tcb/finish` *P.219*. If the later is used, define the node before `/tcb/hyperref node` is applied.

URN 2017-02-03 /tcb/hyperlink=(marker) (no default, initially unset)

The whole frame of a `tcolorbox` is make an active hyperlink for a ⟨marker⟩ which was given by \hypertarget or `/tcb/hypertarget` *P.114*. Such, the `tcolorbox` is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).
Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperlink} \) \(^{\text{P.221}}\), but only the \textit{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperlink} \) \(^{\text{P.221}}\), but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperlink} \) \(^{\text{P.221}}\), but only the given \LaTeX{} \texttt{\{node\}} is made a hyperlink. This \texttt{\{node\}} may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{\{node\}} may be defined inside \( \text{/tcb/underlay} \) \(^{\text{P.217}}, \text{/tcb/overlay} \) \(^{\text{P.80}}\) or \( \text{/tcb/finish} \) \(^{\text{P.219}}\). If the later is used, define the node \texttt{before} \( \text{/tcb/hyperlink node} \) is applied.

The whole \texttt{frame} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is make an active hyperlink for an \texttt{\{url\}} in the same manner as using \texttt{\href} or \texttt{\url}. Such, the \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a clickable button (depending on the previewer).

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=red!50, hyperurl=https://www.ctan.org/pkg/tcolorbox]
View CTAN with a browser.
\end{tcolorbox}

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl} \) \(^{\text{P.221}}\), but only the \texttt{interior} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink (without frame and title).

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl} \), but only the \textit{title} of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is made a hyperlink.

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl} \), but only the given \LaTeX{} \texttt{\{node\}} is made a hyperlink. This \texttt{\{node\}} may be \texttt{frame}, \texttt{interior}, \texttt{title}, or any other named node used for drawing the \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{\{node\}} may be defined inside \( \text{/tcb/underlay} \), \( \text{/tcb/overlay} \) or \( \text{/tcb/finish} \). If the later is used, define the node \texttt{before} \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl node} \) is applied.

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl} \), but additional \texttt{hyperref} \(^{\text{[17]}}\) \texttt{\{options\}} are applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,colback=green!50, hyperurl*={page=3,pdfnewwindow=true}\% {tcolorbox-example.pdf}]
Open example file on Page~3.
\end{tcolorbox}

Identical to \( \text{/tcb/hyperurl} \) \texttt{\{url\}} \texttt{\{options\}} \texttt{\{node\}} \texttt{\{options\}} are applied.
10.11 Jigsaw Skin Variants

As described in Section 9.1 on page 154, a tcolorbox is drawn by up to four engines. Typically, the frame engine fills the complete box area with color and the other engines fill certain areas with other colors. Finally, only the area which you see as frame of the box will display the frame color. For most applications, this is a good approach.

For certain boxes, a more delicate procedure is needed. E.g., if the box should be translucent, an already painted area cannot be made unpainted. Therefore, more elaborate frame engines saw holes into the frame where the interior area and optionally the title area will be painted. The resulting skins are called jigsaw skins. For standard \textsuperscript{P.229}, enhanced \textsuperscript{P.231}, and bicolor \textsuperscript{P.243}, there are variants called standard jigsaw \textsuperscript{P.230}, enhanced jigsaw \textsuperscript{P.237}, and bicolor jigsaw \textsuperscript{P.250}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \path[use as bounding box] (0,0.8) rectangle +(0.1,0.1);
  \shadedraw [shading=ball] (0,0) circle (1cm);
  \shadedraw [ball color=red] (3,-2.2) circle (1cm);
\end{tikzpicture}

\tcbset{enhanced,colback=blue!5!white,
frame style={left color=red!75!black,right color=red!10!yellow},
fonttitle=bfseries }

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A normal box]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=A translucent jigsaw box,
enhanced jigsaw,opacityback=0.35]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
10.12 Draft Mode

To reduce the compilation time while drafting a document, the draft mode can be applied. Basically, it changes all skins to spartan\(^*\)\(^{P.275}\) and sets the /tcb/fit algorithm\(^*\)\(^{P.261}\) to squeeze. Especially, when fuzzy shadows are used, the speedup will be considerable high.

It is strongly recommended that the draft mode is not used for the final document. Use spartan\(^*\)\(^{P.275}\) directly, if you want to stay with it. The draft mode implementation may change in future.

Normally, switching to the draft mode should not alter the geometry of your document. Since overlays are deactivated, any code placed there (e.g. counter changes) is not executed anymore! Also, /tcb/remember as\(^*\)\(^{P.216}\) will not have any effect. You may exclude critical code with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode} / \texttt{\textbackslash tcbcontinuedraftmode} from converting to draft mode.

Any following \texttt{tcolorbox} code is put into draft mode. All skin settings are overruled with spartan\(^*\)\(^{P.275}\). Overlays, watermarks, shadows, borderlines, and rounded corners are deactivated for all \texttt{tcolorbox} layers.

The draft mode is deactivated for the following code.

If the compilation is in draft mode, the draft mode is deactivated until a following \texttt{\textbackslash tcbcontinuedraftmode} is detected.

If the compilation is not in draft mode, nothing happens and a following \texttt{\textbackslash tcbcontinuedraftmode} will not start the draft mode.

The pair \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbcontinuedraftmode} cannot be used nested.

Continues the draft mode which was suspended by a preceding \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode}. Nothing happens, if there was no draft mode before \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode}.

Code, which is place between \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinterruptdraftmode} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcbcontinuedraftmode} is shielded from draft mode.

\newtcolorbox{mybeamer}[2]{beamer,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,adjusted title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybeamer}{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the beamer class.
\end{mybeamer}
\begin{mybeamer}[draftmode]{Beamer box}
This box looks like a box provided by the beamer class.
\end{mybeamer}

Beamer box
This box looks like a box provided by the beamer class.

Beamer box
This box looks like a box provided by the beamer class.

If set to true, the draft mode is started. If set to false, the draft mode is stopped.
11 Library \texttt{skins} - Catalog of Skins

The \texttt{skins} library provides a catalog of skins to choose from which is documented in the following. The \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\lstinline!\tcbuselibrary{skins}!

See Section 10 on page 169 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

- In principle, a skin is applied by choosing a value for \texttt{/tcb/skin}, e.g. \texttt{enhanced}. Since the parts of a breakable box should look different, there are individual skins for breakable boxes, also see Section 19.8 on page 415. Skins for breakable boxes derived from a base skin are called a skin family in the following.

- Instead of setting values for \texttt{/tcb/skin}, equally named options can be used which are shortcuts and which sometimes also change some geometry or style settings. These are the intended options for normal users. Typically, one of the following options is sufficient to select a skin:

  - \texttt{/tcb/standard} \textsuperscript{P.229}
  - \texttt{/tcb/standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.230}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.237}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard} \textsuperscript{P.233}
  - \texttt{/tcb/enhanced standard jigsaw} \textsuperscript{P.237}
  - \texttt{/tcb/bicolor} \textsuperscript{P.244}
  - \texttt{/tcb/tile} \textsuperscript{P.254}
  - \texttt{/tcb/beamer} \textsuperscript{P.258}
  - \texttt{/tcb/widget} \textsuperscript{P.262}
  - \texttt{/tcb/empty} \textsuperscript{P.265}
  - \texttt{/tcb/spartan} \textsuperscript{P.275}
  - \texttt{/tcb/draft} \textsuperscript{P.276}

Additionally, there are some special applications:

  - \texttt{/tcb/marker} \textsuperscript{P.239}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blank} \textsuperscript{P.233}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{P.266}
  - \texttt{/tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{P.267}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\skinExampleSet} is used for the following examples to display skin applications. Note that \texttt{\skinExampleSet} is not part of the package, but is defined just for this documentation.

\begin{verbatim}
\NewDocumentCommand{\skinExampleSet}{m}{%
  \begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height,raster columns=3,\
    colback=LightGreen,colframe=DarkGreen,colbacktitle=LimeGreen!75!DarkGreen,\
    #1,\
    left=1mm,right=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm,middle=1mm,\
    sidebyside gap=4mm]
  \begin{tcolorbox}
   This is my content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}
   This is my content.\
   \tcblower
   More content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[sidebyside]
   My content.\
   \tcblower
   More content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
   This is my content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title]
   This is my content.\
   \tcblower
   More content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[adjusted title=My title,sidebyside]
   My content.\
   \tcblower
   More content.\end{tcolorbox}
  \end{tcbraster}
\end{verbatim}
11.1 Skin Family “standard”

Note that the option keys /tcb/frame style→P.169, /tcb/interior style→P.170, 
/tcb/segmentation style→P.172, and /tcb/title style→P.172 are not be applicable to 
the standard skin. Also, watermarks (see Subsection 10.3) are not usable with the standard 
skin.

\tcb/skin=standard

This is the standard skin from the core package. All drawing engines are set to type 
standard. The drawing is based on pgf commands and does not need the tikz package.

Environment and engines for the skin “standard”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>pgfpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

/tcb/standard

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=standard.

\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{standard\}}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content. 
My title This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content. 
My title This is my content. 

229
This is the standard jigsaw skin from the core package. It differs from the skin standard \( \rightarrow \text{P.229} \) by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “standard jigsaw”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment ( \rightarrow \text{P.155} ): pgfpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine ( \rightarrow \text{P.155} ): standardjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine ( \rightarrow \text{P.155} ): standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine ( \rightarrow \text{P.156} ): standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine ( \rightarrow \text{P.156} ): standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine ( \rightarrow \text{P.156} ): standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=standard jigsaw}.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{standard jigsaw,
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,
}\
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
11.2 Skin Family “enhanced”

If you like the standard appearance of a \texttt{tcolorbox} but you want to have some “enhanced” features, the \texttt{enhanced} skin is what you are looking for.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=enhanced} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(skin)}

This skin translates the drawing commands of the core package into \texttt{tikz} path commands. Therefore, it allows all \texttt{tikz} high level options for these paths and has more flexibility compared to the \texttt{standard} \texttt{P.229} skin. You pay for this with some prolonged compilation time. The \texttt{tikz} path options can be given with the option keys \texttt{/tcb/frame style \texttt{P.169}}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style \texttt{P.170}}, \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style \texttt{P.172}}, and \texttt{/tcb/title style \texttt{P.172}}.

\begin{table}[h]
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment\texttt{P.155}} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine\texttt{P.155}} & \texttt{path} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine\texttt{P.155}} & \texttt{path} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine\texttt{P.156}} & \texttt{path} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine\texttt{P.156}} & \texttt{path} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/title engine\texttt{P.156}} & \texttt{path} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \hspace{1cm} \texttt{(style, no value)}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced}.

\begin{table}[h]
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
This is my content. & This is my content. & \texttt{My content.} \\
\hline
More content. & \vspace{1cm} & \texttt{More content.} \\
\hline
My title & This is my content. & \texttt{My content.} \\
\hline
\texttt{My content.} & More content. & \texttt{More content.} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
With the “enhanced” skin, it is quite easy to produce fancy looking effects.

Note that this is still a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

Of course, skins can be used for listings also.

\begin{equation}
\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x} \, dx = \ln(2).
\end{equation}
For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using /tcb/enhanced \textsuperscript{P.231}. But, for breakable boxes, the break sequence is identical to the standard \textsuperscript{P.229} skin, see Section 19.8 from page 415.

This style relies on the skin enhanced \textsuperscript{P.231}. All drawing operations are hidden and all margins are set to 0pt. See /tcb/blanker \textsuperscript{P.266} for switching off the drawing engines.

\begin{tcolorbox}[blank,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}

Sometimes, a line is only a line. With \texttt{\textbackslash tcbloorer}\textsuperscript{P.12} you separate the box content into two functional units. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbline} draws only a line which looks like the segmentation line between upper and lower part. Furthermore, you can use \texttt{\textbackslash tcbline} more than just once. \texttt{\textbackslash tcbline} always uses the \texttt{path} drawing engine. Therefore, the /tcb/segmentation style\textsuperscript{P.172} can be applied.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colupper=red!50!black,coller=green!50!black]
\lipsum[1]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbline}
\lipsum[2]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbloorer}
\lipsum[3]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbline}
\lipsum[4]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\end{quote}

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbline*}

Equivalent to \texttt{\textbackslash tcbline}, but in a breakable box, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbline*} is removed if at a page/box break. Also, it is removed at the end of a box.

234
This is a flavor of enhanced \(\text{P.231}\) which is used as a first part in a break sequence for enhanced \(\text{P.231}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedfirst”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{tikzpicture}\)
- `/tcb/frame engine` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{pathfirst}\)
- `/tcb/interior titled engine` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{pathfirst}\)
- `/tcb/interior engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{pathfirst}\)
- `/tcb/segmentation engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{path}\)
- `/tcb/title engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{pathfirst}\)

\[
\text{skinExampleSet}\{\text{skin=enhancedfirst}\}
\]

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

More content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

This is a flavor of enhanced \(\text{P.231}\) which is used as a middle part in a break sequence for enhanced \(\text{P.231}\). Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{tikzpicture}\)
- `/tcb/frame engine` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{pathmiddle}\)
- `/tcb/interior titled engine` \(\text{P.155}\) \(\text{pathmiddle}\)
- `/tcb/interior engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{pathmiddle}\)
- `/tcb/segmentation engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{path}\)
- `/tcb/title engine` \(\text{P.156}\) \(\text{pathmiddle}\)

\[
\text{skinExampleSet}\{\text{skin=enhancedmiddle}\}
\]

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

More content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

235
This is a flavor of \textit{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231} which is used as a \textit{last} part in a break sequence for \textit{enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical\ environment} \textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior\ titled\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: & \texttt{path} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title\ engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{align*}
\backslash\texttt{skinExampleSet}\{\texttt{skin=enhancedlast}\}
\end{align*}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhanced. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

Environment and engines for the skin “enhanced jigsaw”

/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{+P.155}: tikzpicture
/tcb/frame engine \textsuperscript{+P.155}: pathjigsaw
/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{+P.155}: path
/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{+P.156}: path
/tcb/segmentation engine \textsuperscript{+P.156}: path
/tcb/title engine \textsuperscript{+P.156}: path

This is an abbreviation for setting skin=enhanced jigsaw.

\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{enhanced jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,\} }

For unbreakable boxes, this is identical to using /tcb/enhanced jigsaw. But, for breakable boxes, the break sequence is identical to the standard jigsaw skin, see Section 19.8 from page 415.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \texttt{enhancedfirst} \textsuperscript{P.235}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{pathfirstjigsaw} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{path} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{pathfirst} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin enhancedmiddle. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

### Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedmiddle jigsaw”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>\texttt{pathmiddlejigsaw}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>\texttt{pathmiddle}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>\texttt{pathmiddle}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>\texttt{path}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>\texttt{pathmiddle}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,}
```

This styles relies on the skin enhancedmiddle jigsaw. It is intended to be used as an optical marker like a highlighter pen.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[marker]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

This examples demonstrates the creation of several text marker environments based on enhancedmiddle → P.235.

\tcbset\{textmarker/.style={%
  skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw, breakable, parbox=false,
  boxrule=0mm, leftrule=5mm, rightrule=5mm, boxsep=0mm, arc=0mm, 
  left=3mm, right=3mm, top=1mm, bottom=1mm, toptitle=1mm, bottomtitle=1mm, oversize}}

\newtcolorbox\{yellow\}{textmarker, colback=yellow!5!white, colframe=yellow}
\newtcolorbox\{orange\}{textmarker, colback=DarkOrange!5!white, colframe=DarkOrange!75!yellow}
\newtcolorbox\{red\}{textmarker, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red}
\newtcolorbox\{blue\}{textmarker, colback=DeepSkyBlue!5!white, colframe=DeepSkyBlue}
\newtcolorbox\{green\}{textmarker, colback=Chartreuse!5!white, colframe=Chartreuse}
\newtcolorbox\{rainbow\}{textmarker, interior hidden, frame style={top color=blue, bottom color=red, middle color=green}}

\begin{yellow}
  \lipsum[1-3]
\end{yellow}

\begin{orange}
  \lipsum[4]
\end{orange}

\begin{red}
  \lipsum[5]
\end{red}

\begin{green}
  \lipsum[6]
\end{green}

\begin{blue}
  \lipsum[7]
\end{blue}

\begin{rainbow}
  \lipsum[8]
\end{rainbow}


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique,


This is the jigsaw variant of skin `enhancedlast`\textsuperscript{p.236}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “enhancedlast”} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{p.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{p.155}: \texttt{pathlastjigsaw} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{p.155}: \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{p.156}: \texttt{pathlast} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{p.156}: \texttt{path} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{p.156}: \texttt{pathlast} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=enhancedlast jigsaw, 
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
11.3 Skin Family “bicolor”

This skin is quite similar to the standard \textsuperscript{P.229} and enhanced \textsuperscript{P.231} skin. But instead of a segmentation line, the optional lower part of the box is filled with a different color or drawn with a different style.

Environment and engines for the skin “bicolor”

\begin{itemize}
  \item The most basic usage of this skin is to set the background color of the lower part by \texttt{/tcb/colbacklower} \textsuperscript{P.245} and all other options like for the standard \textsuperscript{P.229} skin.
  \begin{verbatim}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, 
    colframe=FireBrick!75!black,colback=Salmon!50!white,colbacklower=Salmon]
  The upper part.
  \tcblower
  The lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{verbatim}

  \item The more advanced usage of this skin is to apply the \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \textsuperscript{P.169} and the \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170} like for the enhanced \textsuperscript{P.231} skin. Also, the \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \textsuperscript{P.172} can be used, but it is applied to the whole lower part.
  \begin{verbatim}
  \begin{tcolorbox}[skin=bicolor,title=The title, 
    frame style={top color=FireBrick, 
      bottom color=FireBrick!15!white,draw=black}, 
    interior style={left color=Salmon,right color=Salmon!50!white}, 
    segmentation style={right color=Salmon,left color=Salmon!50!white}]
  The upper part.
  \tcblower
  The lower part.
  \end{tcolorbox}
  \end{verbatim}
\end{itemize}
This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=bicolor`.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{bicolor,
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,
}
```

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content.

More content.
The following options `/tcb/colbacklower` and `/tcb/opacitybacklower` are executed before `/tcb/segmentation style` \(^{\text{P.172}}\), i.e. `/tcb/segmentation style` \(^{\text{P.172}}\) overrules them.

\[
/tcb/colbacklower=(\text{color})
\]

(no default, initially black!15!white)

Sets the background \(\langle\text{color}\rangle\) of the lower part. It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

\[
\begin{tcblisting}
\text{git example}={The option `\textquotesingle-a\textquotesingle' automatically stages all tracked and modified files before the commit.\par}
This can be combined with the message option `\textquotesingle-m\textquotesingle' as seen in the third line.}}
\end{tcblisting}
\]

\[
\begin{tcolorbox}
\text{This is the upper part.}
\begin{tcblower}
\text{And that is the lower part.}
\end{tcblower}
\end{tcolorbox}
\]

\[
/tcb/opacitybacklower=(\text{fraction})
\]

(no default, initially 1.0)

Sets the background opacity of the lower part to the given \(\langle\text{fraction}\rangle\). It depends on the skin, if this value is used.

\[
\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor,
frame style={preaction={fill=blue!50!black},
pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=blue!50!gray},
fonttitle=\bfseries, overlaplower=0mm,
colback=blue!10, colbacklower=white, opacitybacklower=0.65,
title={Example for a semilucent lower part}]
This is the upper part.
\end{tcolorbox}
\]

\[
\begin{tcbbox}
\text{This is the upper part.}
\end{tcbbox}
\]

\[
\begin{tcbbox}
\text{And that is the lower part.}
\end{tcbbox}
\]
The backgrounds of the lower parts for the skin families “bicolor”, “tile”, and “beamer” are drawn differently than the backgrounds of the upper parts. If the distance between these backgrounds of upper and lower parts is $0\text{pt}$, some previewers show the frame color as thin line between upper and lower part. To avoid this glitch, the lower part is drawn with an overlap of $⟨\text{length}⟩$ over the upper part.

This value can be adapted for special applications. For example, semilucent lower parts better use $0\text{pt}$, see \texttt{/tcb/opacitybacklower} \texttt{→} P.245. Also see \texttt{\tcboverlaplower} for using a larger value.

Macro which contains the length value set by \texttt{/tcb/overlaplower}. May be used for fine positioning at the segmentation between upper and lower part and should be seen \textit{read-only}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[bicolor, sharp corners, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!10, colbacklower=red!10, top=5mm, bottom=2mm, middle=3.5mm, overlaplower=1.5mm, underlay={
  \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto, anchor=north east,fill=white] at (interior.north east) {\textitshape\small upper};
  \node[minimum width=1cm,minimum height=0.5cm,outer sep=auto, anchor=north east,fill=white] at ([yshift=\tcboverlaplower]segmentation.east) {\textitshape\small lower};
}]
This is the upper part.
\tcblower
And that is the lower part.
\end{tcolorbox}
This is a flavor of \textcolor{bicolor}{\textsuperscript{P.243}} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \textcolor{bicolor}{\textsuperscript{P.243}}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{tabular}{|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst”} \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\textsuperscript{P.155}: tikzpicture \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\textsuperscript{P.155}: pathfirst \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\textsuperscript{P.155}: special \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\textsuperscript{P.156}: special \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\textsuperscript{P.156}: special \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine}\textsuperscript{P.156}: pathfirst \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\begin{tcbexampleSet}{skin=bicolorfirst, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
This is my content. & This is my content. & My content. \\
More content. & More content. & More content. \\
\hline
My title & My title & My title \\
This is my content. & This is my content. & My content. \\
More content. & More content. & More content. \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcbexampleSet}
This is a flavor of \textit{bicolor}\textsuperscript{P.243} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \textit{bicolor}\textsuperscript{P.243}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Environment and engines for the skin \textit{“bicolormiddle”} & \\
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.155} & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.156} & \texttt{pathmiddle} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }}
\end{Verbatim}
This is a flavor of `bicolor` which is used as a last part in a break sequence for `bicolor`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast”

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, }
```

This is my content.

- This is my content.
- More content.

My content.

- My content.
- More content.

My title

- This is my content.
- More content.

My title

- This is my content.
- More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin \textit{bicolor}\textsuperscript{P.243}. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{tcb/graphical\ environment\ \textsuperscript{P.155}: tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{tcb/frame\ engine\ \textsuperscript{P.155}: pathjigsaw}
\item \texttt{tcb/interior\ titled\ engine\ \textsuperscript{P.155}: special}
\item \texttt{tcb/interior\ engine\ \textsuperscript{P.156}: special}
\item \texttt{tcb/segmentation\ engine\ \textsuperscript{P.156}: special}
\item \texttt{tcb/title\ engine\ \textsuperscript{P.156}: path}
\end{itemize}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=enhanced\ jigsaw}.

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{bicolor\ jigsaw,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,  
opacitybacklower=0.5,  
}
\end{verbatim}
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolorfirst` $^{\text{P.247}}$. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorfirst jigsaw”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/graphical environment</code> $^{\text{P.155}}$: tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/frame engine</code> $^{\text{P.155}}$: pathfirstjigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior titled engine</code> $^{\text{P.155}}$: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/interior engine</code> $^{\text{P.156}}$: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/segmentation engine</code> $^{\text{P.156}}$: special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/title engine</code> $^{\text{P.156}}$: pathfirst</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw,  
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen,  
opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5,  
opacitybacklower=0.5,}
```

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. More content. My content. More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolormiddle`\[^{P.248}\]. It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolormiddle jigsaw”

- `/tcb/graphical environment`\[^{P.155}\]: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`\[^{P.155}\]: `pathmiddlejigsaw`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`\[^{P.155}\]: `special`
- `/tcb/interior engine`\[^{P.156}\]: `special`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`\[^{P.156}\]: `special`
- `/tcb/title engine`\[^{P.156}\]: `pathmiddle`

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw, 
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
  opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
  opacitybacklower=0.5,}
```

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content. 

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.

My title  
This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.
This is the jigsaw variant of skin `bicolorlast` \[^{P.249}\] . It differs by its frame engine, see Section 10.11 on page 223.

### Environment and engines for the skin “bicolorlast jigsaw”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment [^{P.155}]</td>
<td><code>tikzpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine [^{P.155}]</td>
<td><code>pathlastjigsaw</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine [^{P.155}]</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine [^{P.156}]</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine [^{P.156}]</td>
<td><code>special</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine [^{P.156}]</td>
<td><code>pathlast</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=bicolorlast jigsaw, 
    colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
    opacityframe=0.5,opacityback=0.5,opacitybacktitle=0.5, 
    opacitybacklower=0.5, 
}
```

This is my content.

More content.

My content.  

More content.  

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.
11.4 Skin Family “tile”

This skin is a variant of skin bicolor→P.243. Especially, the optional lower part of the box is colored by /tcb/colbacklower→P.245. The main difference to bicolor→P.243 is that tile has no frame.

Environment and engines for the skin “tile”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine Type</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td>tikzpicture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td>empty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td>special</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td>path</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This key applies skin=tile and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.
This is a flavor of \texttt{tile}\textsuperscript{P.254} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \texttt{tile}\textsuperscript{P.254}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “tilefirst”**

\begin{itemize}
\item [/tcb/graphical environment]/P.155: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item [/tcb/frame engine]/P.155: \texttt{empty}
\item [/tcb/interior titled engine]/P.155: \texttt{special}
\item [/tcb/interior engine]/P.156: \texttt{special}
\item [/tcb/segmentation engine]/P.156: \texttt{special}
\item [/tcb/title engine]/P.156: \texttt{pathfirst}
\end{itemize}

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilefirst, 
  colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
  boxrule=0pt, 
}
```

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

More content. My title

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My title

My title

This is my content. More content. My title

More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{tile} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{tile}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “tilemiddle”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{*P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine \textsuperscript{*P.155}: \texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{*P.155}: \texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{*P.156}: \texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine \textsuperscript{*P.156}: \texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine \textsuperscript{*P.156}: \texttt{pathmiddle}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\begin{verbatim}
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilemiddle, 
colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, 
boxrule=0pt, 
}
\end{verbatim}

This is my content. 
This is my content. 
This is my content. 

My title 
This is my content. 
This is my content. 

More content. 
More content. 
My content. 
More content.
This is a flavor of tile\textsuperscript{P.254} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for tile\textsuperscript{P.254}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “tilelast”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Engine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
<td>/tcb/frame engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{empty}</td>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}</td>
<td>/tcb/interior engine\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{special}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{special}</td>
<td>/tcb/title engine\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{pathlast}</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```latex
\skinExampleSet{skin=tilelast, colbacklower=LimeGreen!75!LightGreen, boxrule=0pt,}
```

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

This is my content. My title

This is my content. My title

This is my content. More content. My title

More content. My title

More content. My content. More content.
11.5 Skin Family “beamer”

This skin resembles boxes known from the `beamer` class and therefore is called “beamer”. It uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit.

**Environment and engines for the skin “beamer”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment`: `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine`: `path`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/interior engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine`: `special`
- `/tcb/title engine`: `path`

This key applies `skin=beamer` and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}
[beamer, colback=Salmon!50!white, colframe=FireBrick!75!black, adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{beamer} skin]
This box looks like a box provided by the \texttt{beamer} class.
\end{tcolorbox}
```

A colored box with the “beamer” skin

This box looks like a box provided by the `beamer` class.
This is a flavor of `beamer` which is used as a *first* part in a break sequence for `beamer`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “beamerfirst”**

```latex
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerfirst}
```

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

More content.

My content. More content.
This is a flavor of `beamer` which is used as a last part in a break sequence for `beamer`. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “beamerlast”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment` : `tikzpicture`
- `/tcb/frame engine` : `pathlast`
- `/tcb/interior titled engine` : `special`
- `/tcb/interior engine` : `special`
- `/tcb/segmentation engine` : `special`
- `/tcb/title engine` : `pathlast`

```latex
\skinExampleSet{beamer,title filled=false,skin=beamerlast}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.  
More content.

My title
This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.  
More content.

My title
This is my content.

My content.  
More content.
11.6 Skin Family “widget”

This skin uses the normal colors from the core package but shades them a little bit. The appearance of the skin can be controlled by \texttt{/tcb/frame style} \cite{P.169}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \cite{P.170}, and \texttt{/tcb/segmentation style} \cite{P.172}, if needed.

Environment and engines for the skin “widget”

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{path}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \cite{P.155}: \texttt{path}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \cite{P.156}: \texttt{path}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \cite{P.156}: \texttt{special}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} \cite{P.156}: \texttt{special}
\end{itemize}

This key applies \texttt{skin=widget} and in addition changes the geometry and some style options.

\begin{tcolorbox}[widget,colback=Salmon!50!white,colframe=FireBrick!75!black,adjusted title=A colored box with the \enquote{widget} skin]
This is my content.
\end{tcolorbox}

A colored box with the “widget” skin

This is my content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} which is used as a \textit{first} part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetfirst}”

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{pathfirst}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{pathfirst}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{pathfirst}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{special}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet}\{widget, skin=widgetfirst\}
\end{Verbatim}

This is my content.  
This is my content.  
My content.  
More content.  

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet}\{widget, skin=widgetmiddle\}
\end{Verbatim}

This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetmiddle}”

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\footnote{P.155}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{pathmiddle}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\footnote{P.156}: \texttt{special}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet}\{widget, skin=widgetmiddle\}
\end{Verbatim}
This is a flavor of \texttt{widget} which is used as a last part in a break sequence for \texttt{widget}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

Environment and engines for the skin “\texttt{widgetlast}”

\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
/tcb/graphical environment: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
/tcb/frame engine: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
/tcb/interior titled engine: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
/tcb/interior engine: & \texttt{pathlast} \\
/tcb/segmentation engine: & \texttt{special} \\
/tcb/title engine: & \texttt{special} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}

\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{widget,skin=widgetlast\}}

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

More content. My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title

This is my content. This is my content. My content. More content.

My title
### 11.7 Skin Family “empty”

**/tcb/skin=empty** (skin)

This skin sets all engines to `empty`, i.e. nothing is drawn at all. Therefore, this skin is a good starting point to create a complete new style by yourself.

#### Environment and engines for the skin “empty”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Engine</th>
<th>Style</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment</td>
<td><code>tikzpicture</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine</td>
<td><code>empty</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine</td>
<td><code>empty</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine</td>
<td><code>empty</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine</td>
<td><code>empty</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine</td>
<td><code>empty</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the text colors stay unchanged when a skin is applied. Since the standard title color is white, the title of a box with skin `empty` becomes invisible, if not set to another color by `/tcb/coltitle` **P.34**.

**/tcb/empty** (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting `skin=empty`.

```latex
\skinExampleSet{empty,
  coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
}
```

This is my content.  
More content.  

My title  
This is my content.  

My title  
This is my content.  

My content.  
More content.  

My title  
My content.  

My title  
My content.  

More content.
This style relies on the skin `empty`\textsuperscript{P.265}. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to `0pt`. In contrast to `/tcb/blank`\textsuperscript{P.233}, the graphical paths are not constructed with exception of the geometry nodes.

```
\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,watermark text=A blank box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
```


```
\% \tcbuselibrary{fitting}
\newtcbboxfit{\mybox}[1]{blanker,width=4cm,height=7cm,top=4pt,
watermark text=#1}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
\mybox{A}{\lipsum[1]} & \mybox{B}{\lipsum[2]} & \mybox{C}{\lipsum[3]} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
```

A

| --- |

B

C
This style extends /tcb/blankest →P.266. All engines are set to empty and all margins are set to 0pt. In contrast to /tcb/blanker →P.266, also title, shadow, underlay, overlay, finish and borderline are removed.
This is a flavor of \texttt{empty} \textsuperscript{P.265} which is used as a first part in a break sequence for \texttt{empty} \textsuperscript{P.265}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

### Environment and engines for the skin “emptyfirst”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment/Engine</th>
<th>Example ENGINE Documentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/graphical environment \textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/frame engine \textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior titled engine \textsuperscript{P.155}</td>
<td>\texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/interior engine \textsuperscript{P.156}</td>
<td>\texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/segmentation engine \textsuperscript{P.156}</td>
<td>\texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/tcb/title engine \textsuperscript{P.156}</td>
<td>\texttt{empty}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
\skinExampleSet{skin=emptyfirst,  
  coltitle=Navy,  
  borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},  
}
```

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content.  

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My title

My content.

More content.
This is a flavor of \texttt{empty} \cite{P.265} which is used as a \textit{middle} part in a break sequence for \texttt{empty} \cite{P.265}. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Environment and engines for the skin \textquote{emptymiddle} & \\
\hline
\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \cite{P.155}: & \texttt{tikzpicture} \\
\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \cite{P.155}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \cite{P.155}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \cite{P.156}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \cite{P.156}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \cite{P.156}: & \texttt{empty} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\skinExampleSet{skin=emptymiddle,}
\hspace{1cm}coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white},
\hspace{1cm}}
\end{Verbatim}
This is a flavor of empty $^\text{P.265}$ which is used as a last part in a break sequence for empty $^\text{P.265}$. Nevertheless, this skin can be applied independently.

**Environment and engines for the skin “emptylast”**

- `/tcb/graphical environment $^\text{P.155}$: tikzpicture
- `/tcb/frame engine $^\text{P.155}$: empty
- `/tcb/interior titled engine $^\text{P.155}$: empty
- `/tcb/interior engine $^\text{P.156}$: empty
- `/tcb/segmentation engine $^\text{P.156}$: empty
- `/tcb/title engine $^\text{P.156}$: empty

\skinExampleSet{skin=emptylast, coltitle=Navy,borderline={2pt}{0pt}{black!10!white}, }

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

This is my content.

This is my content.

More content.

My title

This is my content.

This is my content.

My content. More content.

My title

This is my content.

My content. More content.

More content.
This example demonstrates a breakable customized box. Here, we define an environment `freebox`. The first application of `freebox` produces an unbroken `tcolorbox`. The box is drawn by the code given by `/tcb/frame code` and `/tcb/interior code`. The second application of `freebox` is broken into several parts which are drawn by the codes given by `/tcb/skin first` is subskin of `/tcb/skin middle` is subskin of `/tcb/skin last` is subskin of.

\begin{tcolorbox}
// Preamble:
%\usepackage{tikz,lipsum}
%\tcbuselibrary{skins,breakable}
\tikzset{coltria/.style={fill=red!15!white}}
\newtcolorbox{freebox}{empty, breakable,height fixed for=first and middle, leftrule=5mm,left=2mm, frame style={fill,top color=red!75!black,bottom color=red!75!black,middle color=red}, colback=yellow!50!white, watermark color=red!50!yellow!75!white, watermark text on=unbroken is unbroken box, watermark text on=first is first part, watermark text on=middle is middle part, watermark text on=last is last part, }
\begin{tcolorbox}
% code for unbroken boxes:
frame code={\path[\tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)--(frame.north east)--(frame.south east)--cycle; },
interior code={\path[\tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)--(interior.north east)--(interior.south east)--cycle; },
% code for the first part of a break sequence:
\begin{tcolorbox}
skin first is subskin of={emptyfirst}{% frame code={\path[\tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)--(frame.north east)--(frame.south east)--cycle; },\path[\tcb\coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.north west) -- +(120:2mm) -- +(60:2mm) -- cycle; },
interior code={\path[\tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)--(interior.north east)--(interior.south east)--cycle; },
% code for the middle part of a break sequence:
\begin{tcolorbox}
skin middle is subskin of={emptymiddle}{% frame code={\path[\tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)--(frame.north east)--cycle; },\path[\tcb\coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.north west) -- +(240:2mm) -- +300:2mm -- cycle; },
interior code={\path[\tcb fill interior] (interior.south west)--(interior.north west)--(interior.north east)--(interior.south east)--cycle; },
% code for the last part of a break sequence:
\begin{tcolorbox}
skin last is subskin of={emptylast}{% frame code={\path[\tcb fill frame] (frame.south west)--(frame.north west)--(frame.north east)--cycle; },\path[\tcb\coltria] ([xshift=2.5mm,yshift=1mm]frame.north west) -- +(240:2mm) -- +300:2mm -- cycle; }\end{tcolorbox}\end{tcolorbox}


11.8 Skin “spartan”

\texttt{/tcb/skin=spartan} (skin)

This skin is quite . . . spartan. It supports no rounded corners, no overlays, no shadows, no borderlines, and no finishes. The only exception are underlays. One cannot do very fancy things with this skin, but it compiles very fast. Therefore, the \texttt{spartan} skin is used for the draft mode, see Section 10.12 on page 225. Nevertheless, it can be used as a normal skin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Environment and engines for the skin “spartan”</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} \textsuperscript{*P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/frame engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{spartan}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} \textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{spartan}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/interior engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{spartan}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{spartan}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{/tcb/title engine} \textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{spartan}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\texttt{/tcb/spartan} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=spartan}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node {This is my content.};
\node {This is my content.};
\node at (1,0) {This is my content.};
\node at (1,-1) {This is my content.};
\node at (2,0) {My content.};
\node at (2,-1) {My content.};
\node at (3,0) {More content.};
\node at (3,-1) {More content.};
\end{tikzpicture}
11.9 Skin “draft”

This skin is intended to be used while drafting new geometric settings for a \texttt{tcolorbox}.

### Environment and engines for the skin “draft”

- \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment}\^\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{tikzpicture}
- \texttt{/tcb/frame engine}\^\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine}\^\textsuperscript{P.155}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/interior engine}\^\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{special}
- \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine}\^\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{path}
- \texttt{/tcb/title engine}\^\textsuperscript{P.156}: \texttt{path}

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=draft}.

\begin{Verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash skinExampleSet\{draft\}}
\end{Verbatim}

This is my content.

More content.

My title

My content. More content.

11.10 Skin Family “freelance”

This skin family “freelance” is deprecated with tcolorbox 3.00. It is not longer needed, because \texttt{/tcb/frame code} → P.158, \texttt{/tcb/interior code} → P.159, \texttt{/tcb/interior titled code} → P.158, and \texttt{/tcb/title code} → P.160 can be applied to every skin now. In this sense, everything has become \textit{freelance} now.

For users of \texttt{/tcb/freelance}: Old code should continue to work. There may be exceptions for breakable freelance boxes under certain circumstances. For new code, use \texttt{/tcb/empty} → P.265 or \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} → P.231 where you would have used \texttt{/tcb/freelance} before.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelance} (skin)

This skin gives full freedom for the appearance of the tcolorbox. All drawing engines are set to type \textit{freelance}; they use the \texttt{tikz} package and compute the \texttt{/tcb/geometry nodes} → P.157.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Environment and engines for the skin “freelance”}
\end{center}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{/tcb/graphical environment} → P.155: \texttt{tikzpicture}
\item \texttt{/tcb/frame engine} → P.155: \textit{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior titled engine} → P.155: \textit{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/interior engine} → P.156: \textit{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/segmentation engine} → P.156: \textit{freelance}
\item \texttt{/tcb/title engine} → P.156: \textit{freelance}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{/tcb/freelance} (style, no value)

This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{skin=freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancefirst} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 415.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancemiddle} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 415.

\texttt{/tcb/skin=freelancelast} (skin)

This skin equals \textit{freelance} with exception of the break sequence, see Section 19.8 on page 415.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelance=(options)} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelance}.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancefirst=(options)} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancefirst} which is used as first part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin first is subskin of} → P.161 for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancemiddle=(options)} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancemiddle} which is used as middle part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin middle is subskin of} → P.161 for a substitute of this key.

\texttt{/tcb/extend freelancelast=(options)} (no default, initially empty)

The \texttt{(options)} are added to the skin definition of \textit{freelancelast} which is used as last part of the break sequence of \textit{freelance}. See \texttt{/tcb/skin last is subskin of} → P.161 for a substitute of this key.
12 Inclusion of Boxed Image Files

The \texttt{skins} library adds some commands to conveniently include boxed image files. For the following macros and options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 169 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

12.1 Macros

\texttt{\tcbincludegraphics[(options)]{(file name)}}

In principle, this macro includes an image file denoted by \texttt{(file name)} using the standard \texttt{\includegraphics} and puts it into a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{(options)} are \texttt{tcolorbox} keys to set up the colored box. Use \texttt{/tcb/graphics options} to specify options for the underlying \texttt{\includegraphics}. Some \texttt{tcolorbox} option keys are automatically set, namely \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} and options to center the image inside the box.

The sizing of the included image is done depending on the following:

\begin{itemize}
  \item If a \texttt{/tcb/width} is specified, but no fixed \texttt{/tcb/height}, the image is sized to fill the inner width of the box. The height of the box adapts to the image.
  \item If a fixed \texttt{/tcb/height} is specified, the image is sized to fill the fixed inner area of the box.
  \item If the \texttt{/tcb/capture} mode \texttt{/tcb/hbox} is specified, the image is sized according to given \texttt{\includegraphics} options only. The box adapts to the image.
\end{itemize}

% \tcbuselibrary{raster}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,raster force size=false,size=fbox,  colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,  fonttitle=\bfseries,center title,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Normal\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=Fixed height,height=3cm\]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics\[title=hbox mode,hbox,graphics options={width=3cm}\]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
The auxiliary macro \texttt{\imagemain} may be used inside \texttt{\tcbincludegraphics} \footnote{P.279} to display the name of the file. \texttt{\imagemain} is already partially detokenized and is allowed to contain special characters like the underscore. Note that an appropriate font is required to display such characters.

\begin{tcbarray}[size=fbox, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!20!black, fonttitle=\bfseries\ttfamily,center title,drop fuzzy shadow,]{
\tcbincludegraphics[title=\imagemain]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[finish={
  \node[fill=white,fill opacity=0.5,text opacity=1]
  at (frame.center) {\bfseries\ttfamily\imagemain};}
  ]{blueshade.png}
\end{tcbarray}
This is a generalized version of `\tcbincludgeographics` which allows to include a complete PDF file denoted by `<file name>`. Every page is boxed into an own `tcolorbox` customized by the given `<options>`. It is reasonable to put such a series of boxes inside a `tcbxaster` for alignment. Use `/tcb/graphics pages` to use a selection of pages instead of using the whole file. The auxiliary macro `\imagepage` may be used inside `\tcbincludpdf` to display the current page number.

```latex
\begin{tcraster}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
Option & Value \hline
\hline
\colframe & blue \hline
\colbacktitle & white \hline
\left & 0pt \hline
\right & 0pt \hline
\top & 0pt \hline
\bottom & 0pt \hline
\boxsep & 0pt \hline
\boxrule & 0.6pt \hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcraster}
\tcbincludpdf{tcolorbox-example.pdf}
```
12.2 Option Keys

/tcb/graphics options=(options) (no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} \textsuperscript{P.279} and \texttt{tcbincludepdf} \textsuperscript{P.281} to specify \texttt{\includegraphics} \texttt{⟨options⟩}.

% \tcbset{library{raster}}
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3,size=fbox,raster equal height,  
colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics{goldshade.png}
\newcommand{\myangle}{angle=20}%
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options=\myangle]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 8cm 4cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}

/tcb/graphics directory=(directory) (no default, initially empty)

Used for \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} \textsuperscript{P.279} and \texttt{tcbincludepdf} \textsuperscript{P.281} to specify a file system \texttt{⟨directory⟩} where the image files are located.

\begin{tcbset}{  
graphics directory={.},  
graphics directory={examples},  
graphics directory={../../pictures},
}

The \texttt{\graphicspath} macro from the \texttt{graphics} package is superior to this option.

/tcb/graphics directory may be used especially for \texttt{tcbincludepdf} \textsuperscript{P.281}.

/tcb/graphics pages=(selection) (no default, initially 1,...,\texttt{\pdfpages})

Used for \texttt{tcbincludepdf} \textsuperscript{P.281} to specify a \texttt{⟨selection⟩} of pages to be included. The largest page number is accessible by \texttt{\pdfpages}. The \texttt{⟨selection⟩} has to be given using the \texttt{\foreach} syntax of \texttt{TiKZ}.

\begin{tcbset}{
  graphics pages={1,3,7},
  graphics pages={1,...,10},
  graphics pages={1,3,...,18},
  graphics pages={100,...,\pdfpages},
}
Used for \texttt{tcbincludegraphics}\(^\text{P.279}\) and \texttt{tcbincludetext}\(^\text{P.281}\) to guarantee a certain \texttt{orientation} of the included image. After all other options for the image are processed, the result is possibly rotated to be in landscape or portrait mode.

Feasible values for \texttt{orientation} are:

- **as-is**: no rotation of the processed image.
- **landscape**: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- **landscape**: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final width is not smaller than the final height.
- **portrait**: the processed image is possibly rotated by 90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.
- **portrait**: the processed image is possibly rotated by -90 degrees to ensure that the final height is not smaller than the final width.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=6,size=fbox,raster equal height, colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!20!black,drop fuzzy shadow]
\tcbincludegraphics
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=landscape]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics orientation=portrait]{Basilica_5.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}]{goldshade.png}
\tcbincludegraphics[graphics options={viewport=0cm 0cm 2cm 3cm,clip}, graphis orientation=landscape]{goldshade.png}
\end{tcbraster}
The \texttt{skins} library adds some auxiliary options to the vast option set of \LaTeX{} \cite{TiZ}. These options can be used in any \texttt{tikzpicture}. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{tcbuselibrary}[skins]

See Section 10 on page 169 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

Up to version 5.1.1 (2022/06/24) of \texttt{tcolorbox}, \LaTeX{} image and picture fill extensions were documented here. These extensions are now separate \LaTeX{} libraries and part of the \texttt{tikzfill} package where they are documented now.

\section{Straightening of the Arcs}

This patch is considered as an experimental feature. It changes some of the original \LaTeX{} code. This change may break with future updates of \LaTeX{}.

The \LaTeX{} package provides a nice \texttt{rounded corners} option to replace all corners by little arcs. \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular} is a patch which straightens the arcs. To say it more prosaic, the little arcs are replaced by little straight lines.

\begin{tcbpatcharcangular}

This macro reverts \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular}, i.e., the patch from \texttt{tcbpatcharcangular} is replaced by the original code.
13.2 Extracting Node Dimensions

The following auxiliary macros are defined by the \texttt{skins} library. They allow to determine the width and height of an arbitrary Ti\textit{k}Z node. To be more specific, they determine the east-to-west and the north-to-south dimensions which may be not the maximal dimensions for a non-rectangular node. Note that the following dimensions are measured exactly including the line width of the border line. If a new rectangle or node with the same dimensions and a border is to be drawn, this border width has to be substracted.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=yellow] (A) {This is my\ example node};
\tcbsetmacrotowidthofnode\mywidth{A}
\tcbsetmacrotoheightofnode\myheight{A}
\path\fill=blue!25!white
\node[draw=blue,fill=blue!25!white,% standard width 0.4pt
minimum width=\mywidth-0.4pt,% minus width of border
minimum height=\myheight-0.4pt,% minus height of border
] at ([xshift=5cm]A) {Copy 2};
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{itemize}
\item This is my example node
\item Copy
\item Copy 2
\end{itemize}

13.3 Hyper Nodes

The following auxiliary macro is defined by the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{itemize}
\item \tcbhypernode\{macro\}\{node\}
\end{itemize}

Applies a hyperlink creating \texttt{macro} from the package \texttt{hyperref} \cite{hyperref} to an existing \texttt{tikz} \texttt{node}. \tcbhypernode can only be used inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment. The last argument of the \texttt{macro} is to be omitted and should stand for an object (text) which is to be made a hyperlink. For example, use \texttt{\hyperref[name]} instead of \texttt{\hyperref[name]{text}}.

\begin{itemize}
\item \% \texttt{\usepackage{hyperref}}
\item \begin{tikzpicture}
\node[align=center,draw=red,fill=red!5] (mybutton) \{Click me to jump to Section\-\ref*{sec:tikzimagefilling}\};
\tcbhypernode\{\hyperref[sec:tikzimagefilling]\}\{mybutton\}
\end{tikzpicture}
\item Click me to jump to Section 13
\end{itemize}
The \texttt{skins} library adds some supporting options for the \texttt{beamer} package [25]. For the following options, the \texttt{skins} library has to be loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{skins}
\end{verbatim}

See Section 10 on page 169 for the documentation of all other options of the \texttt{skins} library.

\begin{verbatim}
N 2015-01-09
U 2019-03-01
\end{verbatim}
\texttt{/tcb/only=<\texttt{(overlay specification)}\texttt{>}{\texttt{(options)}}} \hspace*{1cm} (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the given \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(options)} in dependency of a \texttt{beamer} \texttt{(overlay specification)}. Note that this needs the \texttt{beamer} class [25]. The \texttt{(options)} will only be used on the specified \texttt{beamer} frames.

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[many]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcolorbox}
\[title=My title,fonttitle=\textbf{\textsc{bfseries}},\]
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
\item One
\item Two
\item \textcolor{red}{Three}
\item Four
\end{itemize}
\texttt{\tcblower}
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\end{verbatim}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}[fragile]
\begin{tcblisting}{beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow, only=<1>{lowerbox=invisible},only=<2>{}}
This is an \textbf{example listing}
\end{tcblisting}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
/tcb/alert=<\overlay specification> (style, no default, initially unset)

Sets the /tcb/beamer alerted style in dependency of a beamer \overlay specification. /tcb/beamer alerted can be redefined for customization.

/tcb/beamer alerted (style, no options, initially fuzzy halo)

This style is not intended to be used directly, but in concealed way by applying /tcb/alert. The style can be redefined.

\tcbset{
  beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},
}

The following examples use tcbitemize from raster for convenient use of a list of boxes which are uncovered one by one.
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
enhanced,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
beamer hidden/.style={invisible,interior hidden,colframe=blue!20!gray!15},
beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray},
]
\tcbitem
\[title=One,alert=<1>\]
First Statement
\tcbitem
\[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>\]
Second Statement
\tcbitem
\[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>\]
Test
\tcbitem
\[title=Four,hide=<-3>,alert=<4>\]
\begin{equation*}
\int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
\tcbitem
\[title=Five,hide=<-4>,alert=<5>\]
\includegraphics[width=1cm]{goldshade.png}
\tcbitem
\[title=Six,hide=<-5>,alert=<6>\]
Test
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\documentclass{beamer}
\usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows,
  beamer,colback=blue!5,colframe=blue!20!gray,coltitle=yellow,
  beamer alerted/.style={colframe=red!50!gray,fuzzy halo},
]
\tcbitem[title=One,alert=<1>]
First Statement
\tcbitem[title=Two,hide=<-1>,alert=<2>]
Second Statement
\tcbitem[title=Three,hide=<-2>,alert=<3>]
\end{tcbitemize}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\begin{equation*}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt = \ln(x).
\end{equation*}
15 Library vignette

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{vignette}

This also loads the skins library, see Section 10 on page 169, and the fadings library of tikz [24].

15.1 Vignette Drawing

\tcbvignette{(options)}

In this context, a vignette is a four part rectangular frame. It is constructed as several Ti\textit{k}Z paths and, therefore, can only be used inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment or inside tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12} options.

The \texttt{(options)} control position, size and style settings of the vignette. Theses options have the common key path \texttt{/tcb/vig/} and are described in the following.

The next examples show direct \texttt{tcbvignette} usage without a tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}.\texttt{tcbvignette} can be used directly inside appropriate options keys for tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. Note that options like \texttt{/tcb/underlay} \textsuperscript{P.217} need \texttt{/tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{P.231} or similar settings.
Mostly, convenient short cuts like `/tcb/underlay vignette` can be used to add a 
`vignette` to a `tcolorbox`. Here, `/tcbvignette` is used internally.

\begin{tcolorbox}[
enhanced,
size=small,
sharp corners, 
\title=My title, center title, \fonttitle=bfseries, 
\underlay\vignette
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (3,2);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\end{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcolorbox}

15.2 Generic Geometry Settings

\begin{enumerate}
\item `/tcb/vig/xmin=(length)` (no default, initially 0pt)
  Sets the lower horizontal limit of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmin` and `/tcb/vig/ymin`.
\item `/tcb/vig/xmax=(length)` (no default, initially 1cm)
  Sets the upper horizontal limit of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmax` and `/tcb/vig/ymin`.
\item `/tcb/vig/ymin=(length)` (no default, initially 0pt)
  Sets the lower vertical limit of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmin` and `/tcb/vig/ymin`.
\item `/tcb/vig/ymax=(length)` (no default, initially 1cm)
  Sets the upper vertical limit of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmax` and `/tcb/vig/ymax`.
\end{enumerate}

\begin{enumerate}
\item `/tcb/vig/lower left corner=(coordinates)` (style, initially 0,0)
  Sets the lower left corner of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmin` and `/tcb/vig/ymin`.
\item `/tcb/vig/upper right corner=(coordinates)` (style, initially 1,1)
  Sets the upper right corner of a `/tcbvignette`. This style sets `/tcb/vig/xmax` and `/tcb/vig/ymax`.
\end{enumerate}

\begin{enumerate}
\item `/tcb/vig/inside node=(name)` (style, initially unset)
  Places the `/tcbvignette` inside the node with the given `(name)`. The outer limits of the `vignette` are adapted to the node geometry.
\end{enumerate}
\texttt{/tcb/vig/outside node=\langle name\rangle} (style, initially unset)

Places the $\verb!\tcbvignette!$ \textsuperscript{P.292} outside the node with the given \langle name\rangle. The inner limits of the vignette are adapted to the node geometry.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{outside node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/over node=\langle name\rangle} (style, initially unset)

Places the $\verb!\tcbvignette!$ \textsuperscript{P.292} over the node with the given \langle name\rangle. The outer limits of the vignette are adapted to the node geometry, but are shifted to the outside by \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset}.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node[minimum width=2cm,minimum height=1cm] (A) {Node A};
\tcbvignette{over node offset=1mm,over node=A}
\draw[very thick] (A.south west) rectangle (A.north east);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset=\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 0.1mm)

Determines the shift value for \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node offset} has to be set before \texttt{/tcb/vig/over node} is used.

\texttt{/tcb/vig/north size=\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the north vignette part.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{north size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/south size=\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the south vignette part.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{south size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/east size=\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the east vignette part.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{east size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/vig/west size=\langle length\rangle} (no default, initially 2mm)

Sets the thickness of the west vignette part.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{west size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}
/tcb/vig/vertical size={(length)} (style, initially 2mm)

Sets /tcb/vig/north size→P.294 and /tcb/vig/south size→P.294, to the given ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{vertical size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/horizontal size={(length)} (style, initially 2mm)

Sets /tcb/vig/east size→P.294 and /tcb/vig/west size→P.294, to the given ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{horizontal size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/size={(length)} (style, initially 2mm)

Sets /tcb/vig/north size→P.294, /tcb/vig/south size→P.294, /tcb/vig/east size→P.294, and /tcb/vig/west size→P.294 to the given ⟨length⟩.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{size=4mm}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/north size→P.294, /tcb/vig/south size→P.294, etc. have to be set before /tcb/vig/outside node→P.294 is used.

15.3 Generic Color and Style Settings

/tcb/vig/north style={(style)} (no default, initially red!50!white)

Sets TikZ ⟨style⟩ options for the north vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{north style=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/south style={(style)} (no default, initially red!50!black)

Sets TikZ ⟨style⟩ options for the south vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{south style={draw=blue,fill=yellow}}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/east style={(style)} (no default, initially red!75!black)

Sets TikZ ⟨style⟩ options for the east vignette part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \tcbvignette{east style={left color=yellow!75!black, right color=blue!75!black}}
\end{tikzpicture}
/tcb/vig/west style={⟨style⟩}  
(no default, initially \textcolor{red}{75}\%white)

Sets TikZ \langle style \rangle options for the west \textit{vignette} part.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{west style={preaction={fill=black!20},
\hspace{1em}pattern=checkerboard,
\hspace{1em}pattern color=black!30}}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/scope={⟨style⟩}  
(no default, initially empty)

The four \textit{vignette} parts are drawn inside a TikZ \texttt{scope} environment which takes the given \langle style \rangle as option.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{scope={transparency group,opacity=0.25}}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/raised color=⟨color⟩  
(no default)

Creates a raised frame impression by setting the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style} \texttt{→ P.295}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{raised color=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/lowered color=⟨color⟩  
(no default)

Creates a lowered frame impression by setting the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style} \texttt{→ P.295}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} to darkened and lightened variations of the given \langle color \rangle.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{lowered color=green!75!black}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/color from=⟨inner⟩ to ⟨outer⟩  
(no default)

Sets the four style options \texttt{/tcb/vig/north style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/south style} \texttt{→ P.295}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/east style} \texttt{→ P.295}, and \texttt{/tcb/vig/west style} such that the color shades from the \langle inner \rangle color to the \langle outer \rangle color.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette{color from=red to blue!50}
\end{tikzpicture}

/tcb/vig/base color=⟨color⟩  
(no default)

Sets the base color for \texttt{/tcb/vig/raised color}, \texttt{/tcb/vig/lowered color}, \texttt{/tcb/finish fading vignette} \texttt{→ P.303}. Typically, this value has not to be set directly.
Especially, if shadings or fadings are used, the drawn *vignette* graphs are displayed sometimes not as perfect as expected. Glitches and imperfections are very dependent on the previewer software. The `/tcb/vig/draw method` intends to give a choice of alternative drawing methods.

- **direct**: The *vignette* parts are drawn/filled by using a single Ti\LaTeX{} graph. This is the preferred (and default) method for solid color graphs.
- **clipped**: The *vignette* parts are drawn somewhat oversized and are clipped to the intended region. In combination with shadings and fadings this seems to give a better/different optical result (depends on the previewer).

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
\tcbvignette[color from=red to yellow]
\end{tikzpicture}
```

This option is a stopgap and may be changed or preferably removed in future.

### 15.4 Generic Fading Settings

The *fadings* library of TikZ [24] is loaded automatically by the \texttt{vignette} library. Amongst others, the fadings \texttt{west}, \texttt{east}, \texttt{north}, and \texttt{south} are defined inside the *fadings* library.

The \texttt{vignette} library adds some more fadings called \texttt{semi west}, \texttt{semi east}, \texttt{semi north}, and \texttt{semi south}. These fadings are much \textit{weaker} than the normal fadings.

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\fill [path fading=semi west,blue] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

Comparison of the Fadings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>west</th>
<th>east</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>north</td>
<td>south</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi west</td>
<td>semi east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi north</td>
<td>semi south</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade in=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{semi fade out=blue}
\end{tikzpicture}
It is possible to assign different fadings for each side of the vignette, if needed. Therefore, the fadings have to be applied individually with the four style options 
/tcb/vig/north style \textsuperscript{P.295}, /tcb/vig/south style \textsuperscript{P.295}, /tcb/vig/east style \textsuperscript{P.295}, and /tcb/vig/west style \textsuperscript{P.296}.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=south},
  east style ={blue,path fading=semi west},
  south style={blue,path fading=semi north},
  west style ={blue,path fading=east}
}
\end{tikzpicture}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\fill [black!20] (-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\path [pattern=checkerboard,pattern color=black!30]
(-0.5,-0.5) rectangle (1.5,1.5);
\tcbvignette{
  north style={blue,path fading=west},
  east style ={blue,path fading=south},
  south style={red,path fading=east},
  west style ={red,path fading=north}
}
\end{tikzpicture}
15.5 Vignette as Underlay

\tcb/underlay vignette={⟨options⟩} (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette \textsuperscript{P.292} with the given ⟨options⟩ as /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.217} to a \tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. The dimensions of the vignette are matched to the dimensions of the \tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. For example, /tcb/leftrule \textsuperscript{P.41} is used as /tcb/vig/west size \textsuperscript{P.294}. Also, /tcb/colframe \textsuperscript{P.33} is used as /tcb/vig/raised color \textsuperscript{P.296}. For a /tcb/breakable \textsuperscript{P.401} \tcolorbox, the vignette is also been broken. Alternatively, \tcbvignette \textsuperscript{P.292} could be used directly inside an /tcb/underlay \textsuperscript{P.217} with appropriate settings.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,  
boxrule=2mm,tilterule=0mm,  
title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,arc=0pt,  
colback=blue!10,colframe=blue,boxrule=2mm,  
underlay vignette={size=1.5mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colframe=red,interior hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
colupper=white,center upper,fontupper=\bfseries,  
underlay vignette]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,sharp corners,  
colback=red!50!yellow,frame hidden,boxrule=2mm,  
underlay vignette={color from=red!50!yellow to white,  
draw method=clipped,size=2.1mm}]  
This is a tcolorbox.  
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red]{Test}  
\tcbox[enhanced,sharp corners,colback=red!10,colframe=red,  
underlay vignette]{Test}
This is a special style derived from `/tcb/underlay vignette`\(^{P.300}\), where the frame color is shaded to create a soft raised frame impression.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners, 
    colback=green!10, 
    colframe=green!50!black, 
    size=small,boxrule=2mm,tilterule=0mm, 
    title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\textbf, 
    underlay raised shading vignette] 
    This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}

This style gives a similar effect as `/tcb/underlay raised shading vignette`, but a path fading is used here. Different optical impression are very previewer-dependent.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners, 
    colback=green!10, 
    colframe=green!50!black, 
    size=small,boxrule=2mm,tilterule=0mm, 
    title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\textbf, 
    underlay raised fading vignette] 
    This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}

This is a special style derived from `/tcb/underlay vignette`\(^{P.300}\), where the frame color is shaded into the interior color.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[enhanced,sharp corners,frame hidden, 
    colback=green!10, 
    colframe=green!50!black, 
    size=small,boxrule=2mm,tilterule=0mm, 
    underlay shade in vignette] 
    This is a tcolorbox. 
\end{tcolorbox}
15.6 Vignette as Finish

\tcb/finish vignette=\{\langle options \rangle\} (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette\textsuperscript{P.292} with the given \langle options \rangle as \tcb/finish\textsuperscript{P.219} to a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. The default style settings create a raised frame impression by drawing black and white color parts with reduced opacity.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish vignette={size=1mm}]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm,
  finish vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}

\texttt{My title}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}

\tcb/finish raised fading vignette=\{\langle options \rangle\} (style, no default)

This puts a \tcbvignette\textsuperscript{P.292} with the given \langle options \rangle as \tcb/finish\textsuperscript{P.219} to a \texttt{tcolorbox}\textsuperscript{P.12}. The default style settings create a soft raised frame impression by drawing fading black and white color parts.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,
  colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,
  boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,
  title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  finish raised fading vignette={size=1mm}]
  This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\tcbincludegraphics[blankest,width=3cm,
  finish raised fading vignette={size=3mm}]{pink_marble.png}

\texttt{My title}

\texttt{This is a tcolorbox.}
This puts a \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/vignette} with the given \texttt{\textbackslash options} as \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/finish} to a \texttt{tcolorbox}. The default style settings fade the box into white from inside to outside. Note that \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/vig/over\ node} is used here. \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/vig/over\ node\ offset} can be adapted to overlap the box more or less. The fade color can be set using \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/vig/base\ color}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,size=small,colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,boxrule=0.5mm,titlerule=0mm,title=My title,center title,fonttitle=\bfseries,\textbackslash tcb/finish\ vignette=\texttt{size=2mm}]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!50!black,size=small,title=Example]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbincludegraphics}[blankest,\textbackslash tcb/finish\ vignette=\texttt{base\ color=blue!50!black,\textbackslash tcb/finish\ vignette=\texttt{size=3mm,\textbackslash tcb/finish\ vignette=\texttt{over\ node\ offset=0.2mm}]{pink_marble.png}
\end{tcolorbox}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\cbusellibrary{raster}
```

### 16.1 Concept of Rasters

A *raster* is used to align several colored boxes in a regular way. It can be seen as a far related counterpart to the *matrix* construct of TikZ, but it differs in many aspects.

In principle, *tcolorbox*es are arranged in rows and columns when put inside a `\tcbraster` environment. The boxes are fluently added to the raster like adding text to a paragraph. Especially, line/row breaks are done automatically and one cannot end a line/row ahead of schedule. Further, a *raster* is not restricted to a single page but may break into an arbitrary series of pages.
Nine Boxes.


A raster arranges enclosed boxes in a regular way, mainly into rows and columns. The \texttt{⟨options⟩} are used to control the raster parameters and to set the properties for the enclosed boxes.

- The \textit{raster} is only allowed to contain a series of \texttt{tcolorbox} environments or derived constructs. With some small restrictions, boxes created with \texttt{tcboxfit} can also be added. Boxes created with \texttt{tcbox} are not reasonable here, but may be used to a certain degree.
- Do not add anything else between the boxes inside the raster with exception of whitespace. Especially, do not use \texttt{\\} or \texttt{\par} to end a row; row breaks are done automatically.
- The boxes inside a raster are numbered automatically. \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} may be used inside a box to access this number. The \LaTeX{} counter \texttt{tcbrastercolumn} holds the current column, the counter \texttt{tcbrasterrow} holds the current row, and the counter \texttt{tcbrasternum} holds the current box number.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \thetcbrasternum}]
\begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}This is a box\with a second line\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
This is a special case of a `tcbraster` with the given \( \textit{options} \).

- Here, the enclosed boxes are created using `\tcbitem`.
- There has to be at least one `\tcbitem`.
- One cannot use anything else than `\tcbitem` to add something to the \textit{raster}.

This leads to a very compact syntax.

\begin{tcbitemize}
\[ \text{raster columns=2, raster equal height=rows, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \texttt{\textbackslash etcbrasternum}}] \]
\( \tcbitem \) First box
\( \tcbitem \) Second box
\( \tcbitem \) This is a box with a second line
\( \tcbitem [colback=yellow, colbacktitle=yellow!50!black] \) Another box
\( \tcbitem \) A box again
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\begin{array}{|c|}
\hline
Box # 1 \\
First box \\
\hline
Box # 2 \\
Second box \\
\hline
Box # 3 \\
This is a box with a second line \\
\hline
Box # 4 \\
Another box \\
\hline
Box # 5 \\
A box again \\
\hline
\end{array}
\end{tcbitemize}

\texttt{tcbitemize} has more restrictions than \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307}. Especially, the \texttt{/tcb/capture} \textsuperscript{P.106} mode has to be \texttt{minipage}. For example, \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{P.455} cannot be used safely. If \texttt{/tcb/fit} \textsuperscript{P.455} should be used, turn over to \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[(options)]
\end{tcbitemize}

\texttt{tcbitem}[(options)]

Used inside \texttt{tcbitemize} to create a new \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} with the given \( \textit{options} \).
This is a convenience environment which combines a `tcolorbox` with an embedded `tcbraster`. The \langle box options \rangle are given to the outer `tcolorbox`, while the \langle raster options \rangle are given to the embedded `tcbraster`. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxedraster} \[raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \text{\tcbrasternum}}\] \{colback=yellow!10, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Boxed Raster\} \begin{tcolorbox}First box\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Second box\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}This is a box with a second line\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Another box\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}A box again\end{tcolorbox} \end{tcboxedraster}

Boxed Raster

\begin{tcbraster} \[raster columns=2, raster equal height, raster every box/.style={size=small, colframe=red!50!black, colback=red!10!white, valign=center, halign=center}\] \begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcboxedraster}{blankest} \begin{tcolorbox}Three\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Four\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Five\end{tcolorbox} \begin{tcolorbox}Six\end{tcolorbox} \end{tcboxedraster} \begin{tcolorbox}Seven\end{tcolorbox} \end{tcbraster}
This is a convenience environment which combines a \texttt{tcolorbox} with an embedded \texttt{tcbitemize}. The \textit{box options} are given to the outer \texttt{tcolorbox}, while the \textit{raster options} are given to the embedded \texttt{tcbitemize}. This environment is especially useful for rasters inside rasters.

\begin{tcboxeditemize}
\rasteroptions{raster columns=3, raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,colbacktitle=red!50!white, title={Box \# \texttt{\thetcbrasternum}}}
\boxoptions{colback=yellow!10,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Boxed Itemize}
	cbitem First box
	cbitem Second box
	cbitem This is a box with a second line
	cbitem Another box
	cbitem A box again
\end{tcboxeditemize}

\begin{tabular}{|c|c|c|}
\hline
Box \# 1 & Box \# 2 & Box \# 3 \\
First box & Second box & This is a box with a second line \\
Box \# 4 & Box \# 5 & \\
Another box & A box again & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
16.3 Option Keys of the Library

\textbf{/tcb/raster columns=(number)} (no default, initially 2)

Sets the \textit{(number)} of columns for a \textit{raster}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,\] \texttt{\begin{tcbraster}} \item One \item Two \item Three \item Four \end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4,\] \texttt{\begin{tcbraster}} \item One \item Two \item Three \item Four \end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbitemize}

\textbf{/tcb/raster rows=(number)} (no default, initially 2)

Sets the \textit{(number)} of rows for a \textit{raster}. Note that this is only relevant in connection with setting \textit{/tcb/raster height} \textsuperscript{P.313} to a value greater than 0pt. Then, it defines the number of rows per given height.

\textbf{/tcb/raster width=(length)} (no default, initially \texttt{\linewid}}

Sets the total raster width to the given \textit{(length)}. \textit{/tcb/raster left skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} and \textit{/tcb/raster right skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} are part of the total width. Note that both skip values are not changed by this option.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width=\linewid/2,\] \texttt{\begin{tcbraster}} \item One \item Two \item Three \item Four \end{tcbraster}
\end{tcbitemize}
Sets the total \texttt{tcb/raster width} \textsuperscript{P.311} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts \texttt{tcb/raster left skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} and \texttt{tcb/raster right skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} to place the raster on the left hand side with a visual width of the given \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush left=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2,\newline size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]\begin{tabular}{cc}
\texttt{One} & \texttt{Two} \\
\texttt{Three} & \texttt{Four} \end{tabular}\end{tcbitemize}

Note that the results of \texttt{tcb/raster width} \textsuperscript{P.311} and \texttt{tcb/raster width flush left} look identical, but differ on technical side since the later always fills the available \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}.

Sets the total \texttt{tcb/raster width} \textsuperscript{P.311} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts \texttt{tcb/raster left skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} and \texttt{tcb/raster right skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} to center the raster with a visual width of the given \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width center=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2,\newline size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]\begin{tabular}{cc}
\texttt{One} & \texttt{Two} \\
\texttt{Three} & \texttt{Four} \end{tabular}\end{tcbitemize}

Sets the total \texttt{tcb/raster width} \textsuperscript{P.311} to \texttt{\textbackslash linewidth} and adapts \texttt{tcb/raster left skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} and \texttt{tcb/raster right skip} \textsuperscript{P.314} to place the raster on the right hand side with a visual width of the given \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster width flush right=\texttt{\textbackslash linewidth}/2,\newline size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]\begin{tabular}{cc}
\texttt{One} & \texttt{Two} \\
\texttt{Three} & \texttt{Four} \end{tabular}\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster height=(length) (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the raster height per /tcb/raster rows→P.311 to the given ⟨length⟩. This forces an appropriate height for the enclosed boxes. /tcb/raster before skip and /tcb/raster after skip are not part of this calculation. If the ⟨length⟩ is set to 0pt, this feature is deactivated.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster height=4cm, raster rows=2, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem[enhanced, finish={\draw[blue,very thick,<->] (frame.south) -- node[right,pos=.75]{4cm} +(0,4); }]
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\tcitem Five
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\tcitem Five
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster before skip=(glue) (no default, initially 2mm)
Space of the given ⟨glue⟩ is inserted vertically before the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster after skip=(glue) (no default, initially 2mm)
Space of the given ⟨glue⟩ is inserted vertically after the raster. This space is discardable.

/tcb/raster equal skip=(length) (style, no default)
Shortcut to set /tcb/raster before skip, /tcb/raster after skip, /tcb/raster column skip→P.314, and /tcb/raster row skip→P.314 to the same ⟨length⟩ value.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal skip=4mm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}
\tcitem One
\tcitem Two
\tcitem Three
\tcitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

313
Space of the given \langle length \rangle is inserted horizontally left of the \textit{raster}.\[
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster left skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\]

Space of the given \langle length \rangle is inserted horizontally right of the \textit{raster}.
\[
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster right skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\]

Space of the given \langle length \rangle is inserted horizontally between the columns.
\[
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster column skip=2cm, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\]

Space of the given \langle length \rangle is inserted vertically between the rows.
\[
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster row skip=0pt, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}
\]
/tcb/raster halign=(alignment)  (no default, initially left)

Defines the horizontal alignment for the boxes of the rows of a raster, if these rows are not completely filled (mainly: the last one).

Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:

- left: align to the left side,
- center: align to the center,
- right: align to the right side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem One
  \tcitem Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

/tcb/raster valign=(alignment)  (no default, initially center)

Defines the vertical alignment for the boxes of a row, if the boxes do not have equal height.

This sets the /tcb/box align option.

Feasible values for ⟨alignment⟩ are:

- top: align to the top side,
- center: align to the center,
- bottom: align to the bottom side.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=top, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=center, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster valign=bottom, raster columns=3, size=small,colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white]
  \tcitem \Huge One
  \tcitem \Large Two
  \tcitem Three
\end{tcbitemize}
Puts the enclosed boxes into a common /tcb/equal height group \( \rightarrow \) P.67. The \( \langle \text{id} \rangle \) of the equal height group is chosen automatically, but it may be set manually by /tcb/raster equal height group. Also see /tcb/minimum for current equal height group \( \rightarrow \) P.68.

Feasible values for \( \langle \text{type} \rangle \) are:
- **none**: no equal height setting,
- **rows**: all boxes in a row are set to equal height,
- **all**: all boxes in the raster are set to equal height.

Note that you have to compile twice to see changes.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,raster equal height group=raster-manual-id]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}

Overwrites the automatically chosen id with the given \( \langle \text{id} \rangle \). If this is used to share a common height between the raster and another raster or box, the /tcb/raster equal height option should be set to **all**.

\begin{tcolorbox}
A single box
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height, raster equal height group=raster-manual-id]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=raster-manual-id]
\item One
\item \Huge Two
\end{tcbitemize}

A single box
Enforces the raster size computations onto the enclosed boxes. If set to \texttt{false}, individual settings can be used (for the better or worse).

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster force size=false, raster halign=center, size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
\item One
\item Two
\item[add to width=-3cm] Three
\item[add to width=-3cm] Four
\item[add to width=-3cm] Five
\item[add to width=3cm] Six
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
raster odd column/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
raster even column/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{tcbitemize}[size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white,
raster odd row/.style={colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white}]
\item One
\item Two
\item Three
\item Four
\end{tcbitemize}

Sets all raster settings back to their default values. Note that \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.120} does not execute this option. Style settings like \texttt{/tcb/raster odd column} etc. are not touched by \texttt{/tcb/raster reset}.

\subsection{Adding Styles for Specific Boxes}

The following styles can be defined to address certain boxes inside a \textit{raster}. Note that such style definitions are not removed by \texttt{/tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{P.120} or \texttt{/tcb/raster reset}. The style definitions are used in the order given below.

\texttt{/tcb/raster every box} (style)

This style is used for every box.

\texttt{/tcb/raster odd column} (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd column.

\texttt{/tcb/raster even column} (style)

This style is used for every box in an even column.

\texttt{/tcb/raster column n} (style)

This style is used for every box in the \texttt{n}-th column. \texttt{n} has to be replaced by a number.

\texttt{/tcb/raster odd row} (style)

This style is used for every box in an odd row.
This style is used for every box in an even row.

This style is used for every box in the \textit{m}-th row. \textit{m} has to be replaced by a number.

This style is used for every box with an odd number.

This style is used for every box with an even number.

This style is used for the box in the \textit{m}-th row and \textit{n}-th column. \textit{m} and \textit{n} have to be replaced by numbers.

This style is used for the box with number \textit{n}. \textit{n} has to be replaced by a number.
16.5 Combining Columns or Rows

/\texttt{tcb/raster multicolumn}=(number) \hfill \begin{minipage}{0.5\textwidth}
(no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox \rightarrow P.12} inside a \texttt{tcbraster \rightarrow P.307} or inside \texttt{\tcbitem \rightarrow P.308} inside \texttt{tcbitemize \rightarrow P.308}. It merges the given \texttt{\langle number \rangle} of boxes into one single box on the same line. The resulting box gets the \texttt{\thetcbrasternum} of the first box. If there are not enough boxes available on the current line, this option is ignored and a warning is given.

\begin{tcbitemize}
  \raster equal height=rows,raster columns=3,
  \title=\thetcbrasternum,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=1]
    multicolumn=1
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
    multicolumn=2
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=3]
    multicolumn=3
  \tcbitem
  \tcbitem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multicolumn=2]
    multicolumn=2
\end{tcbitemize}
/tcb/raster multirow=(number) (no default, initially unset)

This option has to be set inside the option list of a \texttt{tcolorbox} \(^{P.12}\) inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \(^{P.307}\) or inside \texttt{\ttcbitem} \(^{P.308}\) inside \texttt{tcbitemize} \(^{P.308}\). This option not really merges boxes, but simply sizes the current box to fit the space of \(\langle\text{number}\rangle\) rows.

/tcb/raster multirow needs /tcb/raster height \(^{P.313}\) to be set. How to achieve a similar result for boxes without fixed /tcb/raster height \(^{P.313}\) is shown afterwards.

\begin{tcbitemize}{raster rows=3,raster columns=3,raster height=6cm, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}}
\tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white,raster multirow=2\]
\tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \begin{tcbitemize}{raster rows=2,raster columns=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight}
\tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \tcbitem \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}
For rasters without fixed /tcb/raster height \textsuperscript{P.313}, /tcb/raster multirow \textsuperscript{P.320} cannot be used. Note that \texttt{tcbtextheight} \textsuperscript{P.168} also cannot be used like in the previous example.

But, with combination of /tcb/raster equal height \textsuperscript{P.316} and /tcb/space to \textsuperscript{P.65}, a similar effect can be created:

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
  \tcblem
  \tcblem
  \tcblem[colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!10!white]
  \lipsum[2]
  \tcblem[raster multicolumn=2,blankest,space to=\myspace]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=2]
    \tcblem
    \tcblem[height=\myspace]
    \tcblem[height=\myspace]
  \end{tcbitemize}
\end{tcbitemize}

16.6 Rasters inside Rasters

A raster inside a raster cannot be used directly, because a raster can only contain a \texttt{tcolorbox} or something derived from a \texttt{tcolorbox}. So, a raster can be put inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} inside a raster.

Some examples for such constructions can be found at \texttt{tcboxedraster} \textsuperscript{P.309}, \texttt{/tcb/raster multicolumn} \textsuperscript{P.319}, \texttt{/tcb/raster multirow} \textsuperscript{P.320}.

16.6.1 Raster Setup

The intermediating \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} can be made invisible by using \texttt{/tcb/blankest} \textsuperscript{P.267}.

\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcolorbox}[blankest]
\begin{tcbraster}[raster columns=1]
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcolorbox+raster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

One
\hspace{1cm}
Two
\hspace{1cm}raster+tcolorbox+raster

\begin{tcbraster}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\begin{tcboxedraster}[raster columns=1]{blankest}
\begin{tcolorbox}One\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}Two\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcboxedraster}
\begin{tcolorbox}raster+tcboxedraster\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbraster}

One
\hspace{1cm}
Two
\hspace{1cm}raster+tcboxedraster

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height=rows, raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem{blankest}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
\end{tcbitemize}

One
\hspace{1cm}
Two
\hspace{1cm}tcbitemize+tcbitem+tcbitemize
16.6.2 Placing Spaces

If the heights of boxes inside staggered rasters should be matched, the space has to be distributed accordingly.

- For fixed height boxes/rasters using `/tcb/raster height` → P.313, the height of boxes is available by `\tcbtextheight` → P.168. This can be used to size deeper layered boxes/rasters.

- For boxes/rasters layed out using `/tcb/raster equal height` → P.316, space can be distributed by `/tcb/space to` → P.65. It can take several compilations until all spaces are distributed correctly.

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster rows=2,raster height=6cm,
raster every box/.style={colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white}]
\tcbitem[blankest]
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
\tcbitem One
\tcbitem Two
\end{tcbitemize}
\tcbitem This is a fixed height box.
\tcbitem Three
\tcbitem Four
\end{tcbitemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item One
\item Two
\item This is a fixed height box.
\item Three
\item Four
\end{itemize}
\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=4,raster rows=4,raster height=0.8\linewidth,  
  raster every box/.style={size=small,beamer,  
    colframe=blue!75!yellow,colback=red!75!yellow!20,  
    center title,title=Box}]
  \tcstimem One
  \tcstimem Two
  \tcstimem Three
  \tcstimem Four
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
    \tcstimem Twelve
    \tcstimem Eleven
  \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcstimem[raster multirow=2,blankest]
  \begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=1,raster rows=2,raster height=\tcbtextheight]
    \tcstimem Five
    \tcstimem Six
  \end{tcbitemize}
  \tcstimem Ten
  \tcstimem Nine
  \tcstimem Eight
  \tcstimem Seven
\end{tcbitemize}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
<th>Box</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One</td>
<td>Two</td>
<td>Three</td>
<td>Four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twelve</td>
<td>Eleven</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This is an example with fixed height boxes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five</td>
<td>Six</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ten</td>
<td>Nine</td>
<td>Eight</td>
<td>Seven</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
One

This box will adapt its height.

This is a flexible height box.


One

This box will adapt its height.
One

This box will adapt its height.


This box will adapt its height.
17 Libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted}

17.1 Loading the Libraries

In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} libraries, the libraries \texttt{listings}, \texttt{listingsutf8}, and \texttt{minted} are concurrent in the sense that they all do the same thing, i.e. displaying listings with or without typesetting the listing in \LaTeX parallel. The difference is the underlying \LaTeX package which does the core job for displaying a listing. So, typically, you need just one of these libraries. If you do not have a clue which one of them you should use and you are using \texttt{pdflatex}, you should take \texttt{listingsutf8}. If you are using \texttt{xelatex} or \texttt{lualatex}, you should take \texttt{listings} as \texttt{xelatex} and \texttt{lualatex} are not compatible with \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The order in which the libraries are included influences the default settings and the \texttt{/tcb/reset} behavior. The settings of a later loaded library overwrite the settings of a previous loaded library. A library is never loaded twice.

17.1.1 Loading \texttt{listings}

This library uses the package \texttt{listings} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listings}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the package \texttt{listings}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}

17.1.2 Loading \texttt{listingsutf8}

This library is not needed (and troublesome) when using Xe\LaTeX or Lua\LaTeX. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if pdf\LaTeX is not used.

To extend \texttt{listings} for UTF-8 encoded sources, you can use the support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} by loading the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8}
\tcbset{listing utf8=latin1}% optional; 'latin1' is the default.
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{listings} and the packages \texttt{listings} and \texttt{listingsutf8}.

The \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} is set to \texttt{listings} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbset{listing engine=listings}
\end{verbatim}
17.1.3 Loading \texttt{minted}

This library uses the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14} to typeset listings. It is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{tcbuselibrary}{minted}
\end{tcbuselibrary}

This also loads the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14}.

The \texttt{minted} package uses the external tool \texttt{Pygments} \cite{16} to apply syntax highlighting. It has to be installed and set up, before the library can be used, see \cite{14} and \cite{16}. The \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} library \texttt{minted} does not work, if the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14} does not work.

The /tcb/listing engine \textsuperscript{P.342} is set to \texttt{minted} by the library. To reactivate this setting, if overwritten by other libraries, use

\begin{tcbset}{listing engine=minted}
\end{tcbset}

17.2 Common Macros of the Libraries

\begin{tcblisting}{⟨options⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{tcblisting}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. Controlled by the given \texttt{⟨options⟩}, the environment content is typeset normally and/or as a listing. Furthermore, the \texttt{⟨options⟩} control appearance and functions of the \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. By default, the listing is interpreted as a \LaTeX\ listing.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

This is source code in another language (XML)

```xml
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<project name="Package tcolorbox" default="documentation" basedir=".">
  <description>
    Apache Ant build file (http://ant.apache.org/)
  </description>
</project>
```

This box is as wide as needed (listing only)

```latex
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
```

\begin{tikzpicture}
  \fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tikzpicture}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
Saves the environment content to a file which is named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \textsuperscript{P.342}. Later, this file can be loaded by \texttt{tcbinputlisting} or \texttt{tcbuselistingtext} or \texttt{tcbuselistinglisting}.

\texttt{\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\begin{tcboutputlisting}
\textbf{This \texttt{text}} is written to a standardized file for later usage.
\end{tcboutputlisting}
\end{tcboutputlisting}}

\begin{tcbinputlisting}(\texttt{options})
Creates a colored boxed based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12}. The text content is read from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \textsuperscript{P.342}. Apart from that, the function is equal to that of \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.328}.

\texttt{\begin{tcbinputlisting}(\texttt{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only})
\begin{tcbinputlisting}(\texttt{colback=green!5,colframe=green!75!black,listing only})

\begin{tcbinputlisting}
\begin{tcbinputlisting}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tcbinputlisting}
\end{tcbinputlisting}

\begin{tcbuselistingtext}
Loads text from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \textsuperscript{P.342}.

\texttt{\begin{tcbuselistingtext}
\end{tcbuselistingtext}}

\begin{tcbuselistinglisting}
Typesets text as listing from a file named by the key value of \texttt{/tcb/listing file} \textsuperscript{P.342}.

\texttt{\begin{tcbuselistinglisting}
\begin{tcbuselistinglisting}
\fill[red] (0,0) rectangle (1,1);
\end{tcbuselistinglisting}
\end{tcbuselistinglisting}}

\begin{tcbusetemplisting}
Typesets text as listing from a temporary file which was written by \texttt{tcbwritetemp} \textsuperscript{P.145}.
17.3 Producing \texttt{tcblisting} Environments

If a new sort of \texttt{tcblisting} environments should be created with one optional argument only, one is highly recommended to use \texttt{\DeclareTCBListing} or \texttt{\NewTCBListing} instead of \texttt{\newtcblisting} to avoid content scanning problems.

\texttt{\newtcblisting[(init options)]{(name)}[(number)][(default)]{(options)}}

Creates a new environment \texttt{(name)} based on \texttt{tcblisting}. Basically, \texttt{\newtcblisting} operates like \texttt{\newenvironment}. This means, the new environment \texttt{(name)} optionally takes \texttt{(number)} arguments, where \texttt{(default)} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{(options)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcblisting}. Note that \texttt{/tcb/savedelimiter} is set to the given \texttt{(name)} automatically. The \texttt{(init options)} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}{%
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black}
\begin{mybox}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[1]{%
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#1}}
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[2][]{%
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}{listing only}
{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}[listing only][]{%
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}{listing only}
{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\newtcblisting{mybox}{listing side text}[]{%
colback=red!5!white, 
colframe=red!75!black, 
fonttitle=\bfseries, 
title={#2},#1}
\begin{mybox}{listing side text}
{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX{} box.
\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
Definition in the preamble:
\newtcblisting[auto counter]{mycbox}[1]{% colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, title=Listing \thetcbcounter: #1}

\begin{mycbox}{Listing Box}
This is my LaTeX box.
\end{mycbox}

\renewtcblisting[⟨init options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨default⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \newtcblisting \textsuperscript{P.331}, but based on \renewenvironment instead of \newenvironment. An existing environment is redefined.
\NewTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Creates a new environment (⟨name⟩) based on tcblisting\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.328}}. Basically, \NewTCBListing operates like \NewDocumentEnvironment. This means, the new environment (⟨name⟩) is constructed with the given argument (⟨specification⟩). An error is issued if (⟨name⟩) has already been defined. The (⟨options⟩) are given to the underlying tcblisting\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.328}}. Note that /tcb/savedelimiter\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{P.32}} is set to the given (⟨name⟩) automatically. The (init options) allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\NewTCBListing{mybox}{ s O{} m }{%
  colback=red!5!white,
  colframe=red!75!black,
  fonttitle=\bfseries,
  IfBooleanTF={#1}\
    {listing side text}
    {text side listing},
  title={#3},#2
}\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}
\bigskip
\begin{mybox}{Listing Box}
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{mybox}

\RenewTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBListing, but based on \RenewDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. An existing environment is redefined.

\ProvideTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBListing, but based on \ProvideDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The environment (⟨name⟩) is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBListing[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨specification⟩}{⟨options⟩}

Operates like \NewTCBListing, but based on \DeclareDocumentEnvironment instead of \NewDocumentEnvironment. The new environment is always created, irrespective of an already existing environment with the same name.
With date of 2018-05-12, the \texttt{xparse} \cite{15} package changed the argument collection process
(now part of the \LaTeX{} kernel). Spaces are ignored which leads to a serious change for
listing environments ending with an optional argument like \texttt{O{}}. The former behavior of
respecting spaces can be preserved by adding a «!». Note that the following code uses
\texttt{!O{}} now.

- For older \texttt{xparse} versions, the following code is correct when using \texttt{O{}}.
- For \texttt{xparse} of 2018-05-12, only the first two examples of the following code using
  \texttt{O{}} are really «good» – all others do not work.
- For \texttt{xparse} of 2018-05-12 and later, the following code is correct when using \texttt{!O{}}.

### Caveats of using an environment ending with an optional argument

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareTCLBListing{mybox}{ !O{} }{listing only,#1}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}[colframe=red]\good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
good
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} \good\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}\bad!\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
[\good]
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox} [\good]\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}\bad!\end{mybox}
\end{verbatim}
17.4 Producing `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}}` Commands

`\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting}}\{(\textit{init options})\}{{\langle\textit{name}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{number}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{default}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{options}\rangle}}`)

Creates a new macro `\langle\textit{name}\rangle` based on `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}}` \textsuperscript{P.330}. Basically, `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting}}` operates like `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash newcommand}}`. The new macro `\langle\textit{name}\rangle` optionally takes `\langle\textit{number}\rangle` arguments, where `\langle\textit{default}\rangle` is the default value for the optional first argument. The `\langle\textit{options}\rangle` are given to the underlying `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting}}` \textsuperscript{P.330}. The `\langle\textit{init options}\rangle` allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][%  
listing file={#2},  
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
listing only,breakable,#1]

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
{\jobname.tcbtemp}

Listing (2) of \texttt{tcolorbox.tcbtemp}

This is the included file content:
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][%  
listing file={#2},  
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
listing only,breakable,#1]

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
{\jobname.tcbtemp}

Listing (3) of \texttt{tcolorbox.tcbtemp}

This is the included file content:
\newtcbinputlisting[use counter from=mycbox]{\mylisting}[2][%  
listing engine=minted,minted language=latex,minted style=colorful,  
listing file={#2},  
title=Listing (\thetcbcounter) of \texttt{#2},  
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,  
listing only,breakable,#1]

\mylisting[before upper=\textit{This is the included file content:}]
{\jobname.tcbtemp}

`\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash renewtcbinputlisting}}\{(\textit{init options})\}{{\langle\textit{name}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{number}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{default}\rangle}}{{\langle\textit{options}\rangle}}`)

Operates like `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash newtcbinputlisting}}`, but based on `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash renewcommand}}` instead of `\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash newcommand}}`. An existing macro is redefined.
\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}}\{\texttt{\langle init~options\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle specification\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}

Creates a new command \texttt{\langle name\rangle} based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinlisting}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\rightarrow}P.330}. Basically, \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing} operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. This means, the new command \texttt{\langle name\rangle} is constructed with the given argument \texttt{\langle specification\rangle}. An error is issued if \texttt{\langle name\rangle} has already been defined. The \texttt{\langle options\rangle} are given to the underlying \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinlisting}\textsuperscript{\texttt{\rightarrow}P.330}.

The \texttt{\langle init~options\rangle} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

% counter from previous example
\texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}[use counter from=pabox]{\texttt{\langle mylisting\rangle}}{O{} O{\textcolor{red}{m}}}{% listing file={#3},title=Listing-\texttt{\the\tcbcounter}, colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black, fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},listing only,#1}

\texttt{\langle mylisting\rangle}[before upper=\texttt{\textit{This is the included file content:}}]
\texttt{\textcolor{blue}{\{jobname.tcbtemp}}

\textbf{Listing 17.1}
This is the included file content:
% counter from previous example
\texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}[use counter from=pabox]{\texttt{\langle mylisting\rangle}}{O{} O{\textcolor{red}{m}}}{% listing file={#3},title=Listing-\texttt{\the\tcbcounter}, colback=#2!5!white,colframe=#2!50!black,colbacktitle=#2!75!black, fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries},listing only,#1}

\texttt{\langle mylisting\rangle}[before upper=\texttt{\textit{This is the included file content:}}]
\texttt{\textcolor{blue}{\{jobname.tcbtemp}}

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash RenewTCBInputListing}}\{\texttt{\langle init~options\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle specification\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash RenewDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. An existing command is redefined.

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash ProvideTCBInputListing}}\{\texttt{\langle init~options\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle specification\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash ProvideDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. The command \texttt{\langle name\rangle} is only created if it is not already defined.

\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash DeclareTCBInputListing}}\{\texttt{\langle init~options\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle name\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle specification\rangle}\}\{\texttt{\langle options\rangle}\}

Operates like \texttt{\textbackslash NewTCBInputListing}, but based on \texttt{\textbackslash DeclareDocumentCommand} instead of \texttt{\textbackslash NewDocumentCommand}. The new command is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
17.5 Option Keys of the listings Library

/tcb/listing options={key list} (no default, initially style=tcblatex)

Sets the options from the package listings [7] which are used during typesetting of the listing. For \LaTeX listings, there is a predefined listings style named tcblatex which can be used.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!25,left=6mm,
listing options={style=tcblatex,numbers=left,numberstyle=\tiny\color{red!75!black}}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form. Additionally, we use line numbers here.

/tcb/no listing options (no value, initially unset)

Abbreviation for listing options={}. This removes all options for the listings package. This includes the tcblisting → P.328 standard style tcblatex and the encoding presets. Use this option, if you want to set the listings options outside of tcblisting → P.328, e.g. globally in the preamble.

\begin{tcblisting}{no listing options}
All \textit{listings} options removed.
\end{tcblisting}

All \textit{listings} options removed.

All listings options removed.

/tcb/listing style=(style) (no default, initially tcblatex)

Abbreviation for listing options={style=...}. This key sets a (style) for the listings package, see [7]. For \LaTeX, there is a predefined style named tcblatex.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
listing style=tcblatex}
Here, we use the predefined style.
\end{tcblisting}

Here, we use the predefined style.

Here, we use the predefined style.
/tcb/listing inputencoding=(encoding) (no default, initially `\inputencodingname`)

Sets the input encoding value for the predefined listing style `tcblatex` and `tcbdocumentation` from the library `\documentclass`. The initial value is derived from the package `inputenc` if used.

/tcb/listing remove caption=true|false (default `true`, initially `true`)

If set to `true`, some part of the caption building code of the `listings` package is silenced to prevent some unwanted interaction with the `hyperref` package resulting in additional vertical space. If set to `false`, the `listings` package code is kept unchanged. Note that listings outside `tcblisting` → P.328 and `\tcbinputlisting` → P.330 are always processed normally. Typically, a user is not expected to use this key at all.

/tcb/every listing line=(text) (no default, initially unset/empty)

Inserts some \textit{⟨text⟩} to the begin of every line of a listing. Note that this a hack of the `listings` package code. This may become unusable or superfluous in the future.

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

/tcb/every listing line*=⟨text⟩ (no default, initially unset/empty)

Identical to `/tcb/every listing line` plus additional enlargement of `/tcb/rightupper` → P.47 by the width of \textit{⟨text⟩}. Therefore, this option has to be used after the geometry settings are done. This option is intended to be used in conjunction with `/tcb/hbox` → P.106.

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

\begin{commandshell}
ls -al
\end{commandshell}

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 342.

For an combined example of using \lstinline inside a \tcolorbox → P.12, see \DeclareTotalTCBox → P.22.
17.6 Option Keys of the \texttt{listingsutf8} Library

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is not needed (and troublesome) when using XeLa\TeX{} or LuaLa\TeX{}. Therefore, loading this library is automatically replaced by loading \texttt{listings} only, if pdfLa\TeX{} is \textit{not} used.

The \texttt{listingsutf8} library is an extension of the \texttt{listings} library, so all options from Section 17.5 on page 337 are applicable.

\texttt{/tcb/listing utf8=(one-byte-encoding)} \hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially \texttt{latin1})

Abbreviation for using \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\texttt{P.338}}} together with UTF-8 support from the package \texttt{listingsutf8} \textsuperscript{[11]}. This option is available only for the library variant \texttt{listingsutf8}. The \texttt{(one-byte-encoding)} is one of the applicable encodings from \textsuperscript{[11]}, e.g. \texttt{latin1} which is the default.

Be aware that this means restriction to this specific \texttt{(one-byte-encoding)}: e.g. \texttt{latin1} comprises umlauts and other accented characters, but not the Euro sign. If you want to use the \texttt{listings} package \textit{and} «real» UTF-8 source code, then do \texttt{not} use \texttt{listingsutf8} but \texttt{listings} with \texttt{/tcb/listing inputencoding} \textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\texttt{P.338}}=\texttt{utf8}} \textit{and} with specific manual hacks for specific UTF-8-encoded characters.

See further options in Section 17.8 on page 342.
17.7 Option Keys of the \minted Library

\mintedlanguage{programming language} \hspace*{1em} \hl{(no default, initially \latex)}

Sets a \langle programming language \rangle known to Pygments [16].

\begin{tcblisting}{listing engine=minted,minted style=trac, minted language=java, colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
public class HelloWorld {
    \hspace*{1em} // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{tcblisting}

public class HelloWorld {
    \hspace*{1em} // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}

\mintedoptions{\hl{(key list)}} \hspace*{1em} \hl{(no default, initially see /tcb/default minted options → P.341)}

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing. Also see /tcb/minted options app → P.475 and /tcb/minted options pre → P.475.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcblisting{myjava}{listing engine=minted, minted style=colorful, minted language=java, minted options={fontsize=\small,breaklines,autogobble,linenos,numbersep=3mm}, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,listing only, left=5mm,enhanced, overlay={\begin{tcbclipinterior}\fill[red!20!blue!20!white] (frame.south west) rectangle ([xshift=5mm]frame.north west);\end{tcbclipinterior}}}

\begin{myjava}
public class HelloWorld {
    \hspace*{1em} // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{myjava}

\begin{tcblisting}
public class HelloWorld {
    \hspace*{1em} // A 'Hello World' in Java
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello World!");
    }
}
\end{tcblisting}

1 public class HelloWorld {
2    \hspace*{1em} // A 'Hello World' in Java
3    public static void main(String[] args) {
4        System.out.println("Hello World!");
5    }
6 }
/tcb/default minted options=(key list) (no default, initially tabsize=2, fontsize=\small, breaklines, autogobble)

Sets the options from the package minted [14] which are used during typesetting of the listing, if /tcb/minted options→P.340 are not used. The intended use is inside the preamble to change the default behavior. Note that setting /tcb/default minted options also resets /tcb/minted options→P.340. Since minted [14] v2.6 set stripnl=false, adding stripnl could be helpful to remove leading and trailing blank lines.

% inside the preamble
\tcbset{%
default minted options={tabsize=4,fontsize=\normalsize},
}

/tcb/minted style=(style) (no default, initially unset)

Sets a (style) known to Pygments [16]. This is independent from /tcb/minted options→P.340. Note that styles are always applied globally; all following examples will be set in the given (style) until a new style is set. Also note that setting \usemintedstyle{(style)} only once per document is more economic, if all styles in a document are the same. For examples of different styles, see /tcb/minted language→P.340 and /tcb/minted options→P.340.

See further options in Section 17.8 on the following page.
17.8 Common Option Keys of all Libraries

For the \textit{options} \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.328} respectively \texttt{tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{P.330} the following \texttt{pgf} keys can be applied. The key tree path /tcb/ is not to be used inside these macros.

\texttt{/tcb/listing engine\{engine\}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)

Sets the \textit{engine} which typesets the listings. Feasible values are

- \texttt{listings}, if library \texttt{listings} or \texttt{listingsutf8} is loaded.
- \texttt{minted}, if library \texttt{minted} is loaded.

\texttt{/tcb/listing file\{file name\}} \hspace{1cm} (no default, initially \texttt{\jobname.listing})

Sets the \textit{file name} of the file which is used to save listings.

\texttt{/tcb/listing and text} \hspace{1cm} (no value, initially set)

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and text}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

This is a \TeX\ example.

\texttt{/tcb/text and listing} \hspace{1cm} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as compiled text in the upper part and as listing in the lower part.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \TeX\ example.

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\texttt{/tcb/listing only} \hspace{1cm} (no value)

Typesets the environment content as listing.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/text only

Typesets the environment content as compiled text.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX example.

/tcb/comment=(text)

Records a comment with \langle text \rangle as content. The comment is displayed e.g. in conjunction with /tcb/listing and comment → P.346 and /tcb/comment and listing → P.346.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{comment={This comment is really only a comment},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.

/tcb/comment only

Typesets the environment content with the comment text.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{comment only,
  comment={This is a comment.},
  colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black}
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a comment.

/tcb/image comment=\langle (options) \rangle\langle filename \rangle

(style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by \langle filename \rangle as comment for the listing. The image is included by the standard \includegraphics macro with given \langle options \rangle.

```latex
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment,
  image comment=\langle width=2.5cm\rangle example-image-a.pdf,center lower}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

This is a \LaTeX example.
/tcb/tcbimage comment={\texttt{filename}}\ (style, no default, initially unset)

Uses an image denoted by \texttt{filename} as \textit{comment} for the listing. The image is included by the \texttt{tcbincludegraphics} \textsuperscript{P.279} macro. The inclusion can be customized by \texttt{/tcb/comment style} \textsuperscript{P.346}.

The library \texttt{skins} is needed to apply this option.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side comment, righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false, tcbimage comment={example-image-a.pdf}, comment style={size=fbox,colframe=blue,colback=blue!50,sharp corners, drop fuzzy shadow}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
The libraries \texttt{skins} and \texttt{raster} are needed to apply this option.

% \texttt{tcbslibrary(skins,raster)}
\begin{tcblisting}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment,
     righthand width=3cm,lower separated=false,middle=1mm,
     pdf comment={tcolorbox-example.pdf},
     comment style={raster columns=3,graphics pages={1,2,3},
                     colframe=blue,drop fuzzy shadow}]
\begin{equation}
\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.
\end{equation}
\end{tcblisting}
Sets the PDF file name extension for `/tcb/pdf comment` to `<extension>`. Note that `<extension>` always overwrites any actual extension given inside `/tcb/pdf comment`.

Sets the `<options>` for `/tcb/tcbimage comment` and `/tcb/pdf comment`. These are `tcolorbox` options to customize the colored box drawn around the image(s), also image options encapsulated by `/tcb/graphics options`, and `tcbraster` options for `/tcb/pdf comment`.

Typesets the environment content as listing in the upper part and a given comment in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing and comment,
  comment={This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.\par
  It can even use the environment content «This is a LaTeX example.»}}
This is a LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is my comment. It may contain line breaks.
It can even use the environment content «This is a LaTeX example.»
```

Typesets a given comment in the upper part and the environment content as listing in the lower part.

```
\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment and listing,
  comment={This is my comment.}}
This is a LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}
```

```
This is my comment.

This is a LaTeX example.
```
/tcb/listing side text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and as compiled text in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and text → P.342 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.135.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing side text}
This is a \LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX example.  
This is a \LaTeX example.

Note that sidebyside=false has to be added, if the setting of /tcb/listing side text is to be annihilated.

/tcb/text side listing

Typesets the environment content side by side as compiled text in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/text and listing → P.342 and /tcb/sidebyside → P.135.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text side listing}
This is a \LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX example.  
This is a \LaTeX example.

/tcb/listing outside text

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a tcolorbox → P.12 and as compiled text outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the tcolorbox → P.12 and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 135.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside text}
This is a \LaTeX example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX example.  
This is a \LaTeX example.
/tcb/text outside listing

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} \(^\text{P.12}\) and as compiled text outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} \(^\text{P.12}\) and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 135.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text outside listing}
This is a $\LaTeX$ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a $\LaTeX$ example.

/tcb/listing side comment

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in the left (upper) part and a given comment in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/listing and comment \(^\text{P.346}\) and /tcb/sidebyside \(^\text{P.135}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listingside comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a $\LaTeX$ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a $\LaTeX$ example.

/A

/tcb/comment side listing

Typesets the environment content side by side with a given comment in the left (upper) part and as listing in the right (lower) part. This is a shortcut for setting /tcb/comment and listing \(^\text{P.346}\) and /tcb/sidebyside \(^\text{P.135}\).

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment side listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a $\LaTeX$ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a $\LaTeX$ example.

/A

348
Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and a given comment outside the box in the right part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 135.

\begin{tcblisting}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing outside comment, righthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}]
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content side by side as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and a given comment outside the box in the left part of the page. Nevertheless, the outside text is treated as lower part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The space partitioning is done with the side by side options from Section 6 on page 135.

\begin{tcblisting}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment outside listing, lefthand width=1.5cm,image comment={width=1.5cm}{example-image-a.pdf}]
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox} and as compiled text outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}.

\begin{tcblisting}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above text]
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/listing above text}, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/after}.

\begin{tcblisting}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above* text]
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
/tcb/text above listing

Typesets the environment content as listing in a `tcolorbox` and as compiled text outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/middle`.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,text above listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/text above* listing

Widely equal to `/tcb/text above listing`, but the outside text is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and text is controlled by `/tcb/before`.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

`A`

/tcb/listing above comment

Typesets the environment content as listing in a `tcolorbox` and a given comment outside and below the box. The outside text is treated as lower part of the `tcolorbox` and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by `/tcb/middle`.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,listing above comment,center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.

/tcb/listing above* comment

Widely equal to `/tcb/listing above comment`, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by `/tcb/after`.

A
/tcb/comment above listing

Typesets the environment content as listing in a \texttt{tcolorbox}'\textsuperscript{P.12} and a given comment outside and above the box. The outside text is treated as \textit{lower} part of the \texttt{tcolorbox}'\textsuperscript{P.12} and can be formatted with all lower part options. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/middle}'\textsuperscript{P.49}.

\begin{tcblisting}{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,comment above listing, center lower,image comment={width=3cm}{example-image-a.pdf}}
This is a $\LaTeX$ example.
\end{tcblisting}

Widely equal to \texttt{/tcb/comment above listing}, but the outside comment is not formatted with the lower part options. Also, it is not put into a minipage and it may span several pages. The distance between box and comment is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/before}'\textsuperscript{P.87}.
### 17.9 Option Keys for Processing and Full Document Examples

A complete \LaTeX\ document including `\documentclass`, `\begin{document}` and `\end{document}` cannot be processed directly by `tcolorbox`. It always has to be compiled separately. There are two methods supported by the package to process and display such a full document example:

- Prepare and compile the example document independent from your main document. The source file and the resulting PDF file can be included into the main document afterwards. This is the most economic way since the example document can be left untouched after the example is complete.

- The other possibility is to compile the example on the fly while the main document is compiled. This way has some charm, because the example can be edited inside the main document. But be aware that the compilation of the example is issued on every run of the main document. Also, there are fewer degrees of freedom how the example is compiled.

For both methods, the resulting example PDF file can be included as a `/tcb/pdf comment`.

The following example shows how to apply the first method. There already is a file `tcolorbox-example.tex` and a PDF file `tcolorbox-example.pdf`. Both of them are input partly by the following:

```latex
% \tcbuselibrary{breakable,skins,raster}
\tcbinputlisting{
  enhanced,jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=2mm,height fixed for=first and middle,
  lower separated=false,
  leftlower=0pt,rightlower=0pt,middle=0pt,
  colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white,
  listing and comment,
  listing file={tcolorbox-example},
  listing options={
    style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\color{red!70!black},firstline=20,lastline=85},
  after upper={\par\bigskip\texttt{\ldots}\par},
  pdf comment,
  comment style={drop lifted shadow,graphics pages={1,...,4}},
}
```

```latex
% arara: pdflatex: { }
% arara: pdflatex: { synctex: yes }
% \documentclass{article}
% usepackage{tikz,lipsum,lmodern}
% usepackage[most]{tcolorbox}
%\begin{document}
%\section{Colored boxes}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black]
  My box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black,title=My title]
  My box with my title.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{document}
```
Upper part of my box.
\tcblower
Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!5!white,colframe=yellow!50!black, colbacktitle=yellow!75!black,title=My title]
I can do this also with a title.
\tcblower
Lower part of my box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,lowerbox=invisible, savelowerto=\jobname_ex.tex]
Now, we play hide and seek. Where is the lower part?
\tcblower
I'm invisible until you find me.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!75!black,title=Here I am]
\input{\jobname_ex.tex}
\end{tcolorbox}

Funny settings.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,frame style image=blueshade.png, opacityback=0.75,opacitybacktitle=0.25, colback=blue!5!white,colframe=blue!75!black, title=My title]
This box is filled with an external image.\par
Title and interior are made partly transparent to show the image.
\end{tcolorbox}

...
3.2 Theorem (Summation of Numbers): For all natural numbers $n$ it holds:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$
/tcb/no process

Removes all processing commands if set before.

/tcb/process code=⟨code⟩

(no default, initially empty)

Adds ⟨code⟩ which is executed during \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputlisting} \textsuperscript{p.330} and \texttt{\textbackslash tcblisting} \textsuperscript{p.328}. At the time of executing the given ⟨code⟩, the listing is already written to \texttt{/tcb/listing} \textsuperscript{p.342}, but the colored box is not constructed yet. Its intended use is to process the listing somehow before displaying. The processing result can be used inside a \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/comment} \textsuperscript{p.343}. Several /tcb/process code options can be given which are processed in the given order. Typically, ⟨code⟩ is added by using the following styles /tcb/run system command, /tcb/run pdflatex, etc.

To use the further options, the compiler has to be called with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk. Anyway, it’s more economic to compile examples independent from the main document and to include them as shown in the previous pages.

/tcb/run system command=⟨system command⟩

(style, no default, initially unset)

Runs a ⟨system command⟩, if the document is compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission. The current listing file can be accessed as \texttt{\jobname@area\jobname@base\jobname@ext}. This ⟨system command⟩ is added to /tcb/process code.

/tcb/compilable listing

(style, no default)

Sets \texttt{/tcb/listing} \textsuperscript{p.342} to \texttt{\jobname-listing-⟨counter⟩}.

The default \texttt{/tcb/listing} \textsuperscript{p.342} setting cannot be used to compile a listing, since the base name equals the \texttt{\jobname} and the included PDF files should be unique. Therefore, to use \texttt{/tcb/run pdflatex} etc., the \texttt{/tcb/listing} \textsuperscript{p.342} has to be set to a unique value. One may use /tcb/compilable listing for this purpose.

/tcb/run pdflatex=⟨arguments⟩

(style, no default, initially unset)

Issues a pdflatex compilation of the listing with the given ⟨arguments⟩.

- The main document has to be compiled with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission.
- The \texttt{/tcb/listing} \textsuperscript{p.342} has to be unique for the listing.
- If the listing has to be compiled twice, add \texttt{run pdflatex} two times to the option list.

\begin{tcblisting}{enhanced jigsaw,lower separated=false, leftlower=0pt,rightlower=0pt, colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10!white, listing options={style=tcblatex,texcsstyle=\color{red!70!black}}, listing and comment, pdf comment,freeze pdf, compilable listing, run pdflatex}
\begin{document}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
\begin{block}{Hello World}
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
\item One
\item Two
\end{itemize}
\end{block}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
\end{tcblisting}
\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt \visible<4->{= \ln(x).}
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\begin{frame}{Beamer example}
\begin{block}{Hello World}
\begin{itemize}[<+->]
\item One
\item Two
\end{itemize}
\end{block}
\begin{alertblock}{Integral}
\begin{equation}
\int_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt \visible<4->{= \ln(x).}
\end{equation}
\end{alertblock}
\end{frame}
\end{document}
PSTricks with pdflatex

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{pstricks,multido}
\begin{document}
\psset{unit=3}\%
\multido{\nHue=0.01+0.01}{100}{% 
\definecolor{MyColor}{hsb}{\nHue,1,1} 
\pscircle[linewidth=0.01,linecolor=MyColor]{\nHue}} 
\end{document}
For most applications, you will like to add `/tcb/freeze pdf` as option, since the included pdf file is only refreshed, if the source for this file has changed.

```
/tcb/freeze file=(file) (no default, initially unset)

Observes some ⟨file⟩, usually the final file produced by `/tcb/process code`→P.355, `/tcb/run system command`→P.355, `/tcb/run pdflatex`→P.355, etc. If the MD5 checksum of the current `/tcb/listing file`→P.342 is unchanged and ⟨file⟩ exists, the processing is skipped and the ⟨file⟩ is kept (frozen). Typically, the style `/tcb/freeze pdf` can be used for convenience.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze none (no default, initially set)
Freeze no file and always execute the given process commands.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze extension=(text) (style, no default)
Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file`→P.342 stripped with its extension plus ⟨text⟩ as new extension.

```
...  
listing file=myfile.tex,  
freeze extension=modified.pdf,  
% -> myfile-modified.pdf is observed  
...  
```

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze pdf (no value)
Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file`→P.342 stripped with its extension plus .pdf as new extension.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze png (no value)
Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file`→P.342 stripped with its extension plus .png as new extension. See the examples for `/tcb/run pdflatex`→P.355 and `/tcb/run ps2pdf`→P.357.

N 2016-07-14 /tcb/freeze jpg (no value)
Calls `/tcb/freeze file` with the current `/tcb/listing file`→P.342 stripped with its extension plus .jpg as new extension.
17.10 Creation of L\TeX Tutorials

The following source code gives a guideline for the creation of \LaTeX tutorials. In the next section, a framework for \LaTeX exercises is described. All examples shall be numbered optionally.

Firstly, some additional \texttt{tcb} keys are defined for the appearance. For the examples, three environments \texttt{texexp}, \texttt{texexptitled}, and \texttt{texexptitledspec} are defined with automatic numbering.

- \texttt{texexp} is used for untitled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitled} is used for titled examples,
- \texttt{texexptitledspec} is used for titled examples with special treatment.

\textbf{Definition in the preamble:}

\begin{tcblisting}{texexp}
This is a \LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\end{tcblisting}

This is a \LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

This is a \LaTeX example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

\begin{texexptitled}{First example with a title line}{firstExample}
Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.
\end{texexptitled}

\textbf{Example 17.1: First example with a title line}

Here, we use Example \ref{firstExample} with a title line.

Here, we use Example 17.1 with a title line.
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

\begin{texexp}{text and listing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code and in compiled form.

\begin{texexp}{listing only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text as source code only.

\begin{texexp}{text only}
This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text in compiled form only.
\end{texexp}

This is a \LaTeX\ example which displays the text in compiled form only.

\begin{texexptitled}{An Example with a Heading}{heading1}
This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line which can be referred to.
\end{texexptitled}
Here, we see Example \ref{heading1}.

Example 17.2: An Example with a Heading

This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line which can be referred to.

This is a \LaTeX\ example with a numbered heading line which can be referred to.

Here, we see Example 17.2.
The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Here, we see Example \ref{heading2}.

**Example 17.3: Another Example with a Heading**

The keys can be used in combination. Here, an example with a heading line and source code only is given.

Here, we see Example 17.3.

**Example 17.4: A floating Example with a Heading**

This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

This is another \LaTeX\ example with numbered heading line. But now, the box is a floating object.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example \ref{heading3} on page \pageref{heading3}.

The floating box of the last example is seen as Example 17.4 on page 361.

**Example 17.5: Special application**

Some \LaTeX\ source code.

For special cases, the environment `\textexptitledspec` with style `example` can be used directly. As one can see, the upper and the lower part of the box can be used uncoupled also.

The following series of examples demonstrate the application of `tcolorbox`\(^{P.12}\) options for diversification.
Example 17.6: How to use options (1):
The basic example

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball, ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.7: How to use options (2):
The text output is centered and the segmentation line has vanished.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball, ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.8: How to use options (3):
Here, the \texttt{tikzpicture} is totally hidden. The \texttt{bicolor} skin highlights the output.

\begin{verbatim}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{verbatim}

![Diagram](image1.png)

Example 17.9: How to use options (4):
The \texttt{bicolor} skin also works with side by side mode

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{verbatim}

![Diagram](image2.png)
Example 17.10: How to use options (5):
Putting our picture outside is just a matter of one word.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

Example 17.11: How to use options (6):
The picture may also be put above the listing box.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
Example 17.12: How to use options (7): Our style is easily transformed into a beamerish one.

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path [fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path [fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path [shading=ball,ball color=\c]
 (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
17.11 Creation of \LaTeX{} Exercises

In the following, a guideline is given for the creation of \LaTeX{} exercises with solutions. These solutions are saved to disk for application at a place of choice. Therefore, all used exercises are logged to a file `jobname.records` for automatic processing. The solution contents themselves are saved to a subdirectory named `solutions`. Also see Section 8 on page 148.

- Before the first exercise is given, \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstartrecording} has to be called to start recording.
- The solution is given as content of a \texttt{tcboutputlisting} environment. Note, that you can use this content also inside the exercise with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbuselistingtext} in compiled form.
- After the last exercise is given (and before using the solutions), \texttt{\textbackslash tcbstoprecording} has to be called to stop recording.
- The solutions are loaded by \texttt{\textbackslash tcbinputrecords}.

Inside the exercise text, there may be text parts which are needed as \LaTeX{} source code and as compiled text as well. These parts can be saved by \texttt{\textbackslash tcbwritetemp} and used in compiled form by \texttt{\textbackslash tcbusetemp} or as source code by \texttt{\textbackslash tcbusetemplisting}.

At first, we generate some a common style for the exercises and the solutions. Further, since exercises and solutions should be numbered, we force to use a label \texttt{⟨marker⟩}. Automatically, the label \texttt{exe:⟨marker⟩} is used to mark the exercise and the label \texttt{sol:⟨marker⟩} is used to mark the solution.

With these preparations, the kernel environment \texttt{texercise} for our exercises is created quickly:

---

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset\{texercisestyle/.style={arc=0.5mm, colframe=blue!25!yellow!90!white, colback=blue!25!yellow!5!white, coltitle=blue!25!yellow!40!black, fontupper=\small, fontlower=\small, listing options={style=tclatex,texcsstyle=\textcolor{red!40!black}}\},}}

\texttt{Definition in the preamble:}

\texttt{\textbackslash newtcolorbox[auto counter,number within=section,list inside=exam]{texercise}[2][]{\% texercisestyle, listing file={solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex}, label={exe:#2}, record={\string\processsol{solutions/texercise\thetcbcounter.tex}\{#2\}}, title={Exercise \thetcbcounter Solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}}, list text={Exercise with solution on page \pageref{sol:#2}},#1}}

---

366
The following examples demonstrate the application.

\begin{exercise}{tabular_example}
\textit{Create the following table:}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}
\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{exercise}

Exercise 17.1

Create the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Das alte Italien</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Republik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Create a new macro `\verb+\headingline+` which produces the following output:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\headingline{Very important heading}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Exercise 17.2

Create a new macro \verb+\headingline+ which produces the following output:
\headingline{Very important heading}

Very important heading

Create a new macro `\verb+\minitable+` which produces the following output:
\begin{tcbwritetemp}
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}
\end{tcbwritetemp}

Exercise 17.3

Create a new macro \verb+\minitable+ which produces the following output:
\minitable{My heading}{In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.}

My heading

In this tiny tabular, there is only a heading and some text below which has a width of ten centimeters.
Create a new macro `\synop` which typesets a synoptic text according to the following example. Base your macro on a tabular which takes the total line width.

\begin{tabular}{l|l}
\textbf{English} & \textbf{German} \\
\hline
That's one small step for a man, one giant leap for mankind. & Das ist ein kleiner Schritt für einen Mann, ein riesiger Sprung für die Menschheit. \\
\end{tabular}

Now, we give a list of all exercises with:

17.12 List of Exercises

17.1 Exercise with solution on page 370 ........................................... 367
17.2 Exercise with solution on page 370 ........................................... 368
17.3 Exercise with solution on page 370 ........................................... 368
17.4 Exercise with solution on page 371 ........................................... 369
17.13 Solutions for the given \LaTeX EXerises

For all solutions, a macro \texttt{\processsol} was written to the file \texttt{\jobname.records}. Now, we need a definition for this macro to use the solutions.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{hyperref} % for phantomlabel
\newtcbinputlisting{\processsol}{2}{%
  texercisestyle,  
  listing only,  
  listing file={#1},  
  phantomlabel={sol:#2},%
  title={Solution for Exercise \ref{exe:#2} on page \pageref{exe:#2}},
}
\end{verbatim}

The loading of all solutions is done by:

\texttt{\tcbinputrecords}

With this, we get:

\textbf{Solution for Exercise 17.1 on page 367}

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tabular}{|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|p{3cm}|}\hline
\multicolumn{4}{|c|}{\bfseries\itshape Das alte Italien}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{2}{|c|}{\bfseries Antike} & \multicolumn{2}{c|}{\bfseries Mittelalter}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{\itshape Republik} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Kaiserreich} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Franken} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape Teilstaaten}\\
\hline
In den Zeiten der r"{o}mischen Republik standen dem Staat jeweils zwei Konsuln vor, deren Machtbefugnisse identisch waren. & Das r"{o}mische Kaiserreich wurde von einem Alleinherrscher, dem Kaiser, regiert. & In der V"{o}lkerwanderungszeit "{u}bernahmen die Goten und sp"{a}ter die Franken die Vorherrschaft. & Im sp"{a}teren Mittelalter regierten F"{u}rsten einen Fleckenteppich von Einzelstaaten.\\
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Solution for Exercise 17.2 on page 368}

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\headingline}[1]{%  
  \begin{center}\Large\bfseries #1\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Solution for Exercise 17.3 on page 368}

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand{\minitable}[2]{%  \begin{center}\begin{tabular}{p{10cm}}\hline
  \multicolumn{1}{c}{\bfseries#1}\\
  #2\\
  \hline
  \end{tabular}\end{center}}
\end{verbatim}

370
\newcommand{\synop}[3]{\%
\begin{tabular}{@{}p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2|%
p{\linewidth-\tabcolsep*2-\arrayrulewidth}/2}@{}}\hline
\multicolumn{2}{c}{\bfseries #1}\\\hline
\multicolumn{1}{c|}{\itshape English} & \multicolumn{1}{c}{\itshape German}\\\hline
#2 & #3 \\
\end{tabular}}%

\synop{Solution for Exercise 17.4 on page 369}{
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
English & German \\
\hline
#2 & #3 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}%}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```latex
\tcbuselibrary{theorems}
```

This also loads the package `amsmath`.

Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

## 18.1 Macros of the Library

```latex
\NewTcbTheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}
\newtcbtheorem[(init options)]{⟨name⟩}{⟨display name⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}
```

Creates new environments `⟨name⟩` and `⟨name⟩*` based on `tcolorbox` to frame a (mathematical) theorem. The `⟨display name⟩` is used in the title line with a number, e.g. «Theorem 5.1». The `⟨options⟩` are given to the underlying `tcolorbox` to control the appearance. The `⟨init options⟩` allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 on page 125.

If `⟨name⟩` is chosen as `footheorem`, the new environments are described by

```latex
\begin{footheorem}[(keys)]{⟨short⟩}{⟨title⟩}{⟨marker⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{footheorem}
```

Here, `⟨title⟩` is the title text for the theorem and is also set as `/tcb/nameref` identifier. Optionally, the `⟨short⟩` title used instead as `/tcb/nameref` identifier and in lists of theorems. `⟨keys⟩` supplement the `⟨options⟩` and may be used only in rare cases. The theorem is automatically labeled with `⟨prefix⟩⟨separator⟩⟨marker⟩` where `⟨separator⟩` is predefined as “:”, see `/tcb/label separator`.

```latex
\begin{footheorem*}[(keys)]{⟨title⟩}
⟨environment content⟩
\end{footheorem*}
```

This represents an unnumbered variant. Again, `⟨title⟩` is the title text for the theorem and `⟨keys⟩` supplement the `⟨options⟩`. This variant is not labeled and not listed in lists of theorems.

\NewTcbTheorem and \newtcbtheorem are identical and both rely on \NewTColorBox based on \NewDocumentCommand.
My Theorem 18.1: This is my title

This is the text of the theorem. The counter is automatically assigned and, in this example, prefixed with the section number. This theorem is numbered with 18.1, it is given on page 373, and it is titled «This is my title».

My Theorem 18.2: This my very long theorem title with too much words

Here we have a long and a short title. This theorem is numbered with 18.2, it is given on page 373, and it is titled «Concise title».

My Theorem 18.3: This is my title

The label parameter can be left empty without \LaTeX error. Or you may use an own label to reference Theorem \ref{myownlabel}.

My Theorem 18.4

The title can also be left empty without problem. Note that the «:» vanished magically.
\begin{mytheo*}{Unnumbered Theorem}
This theorem is not numbered.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem: Unnumbered Theorem
This theorem is not numbered.

\begin{mytheo*}{}
This theorem has no number and no title.
\end{mytheo*}

My Theorem
This theorem has no number and no title.

To switch off the \texttt{nameref} feature permanently, add \texttt{nameref/.style={}} inside the \langle\texttt{options}\rangle list.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{RenewTcbTheorem}\langle\texttt{init options}\rangle\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{display name}\}\{\texttt{options}\}\{\texttt{prefix}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{NewTcbTheorem}$^{\text{P.372}}$, but based on \texttt{RenewDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentEnvironment}. Existing environments are redefined.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{ProvideTcbTheorem}\langle\texttt{init options}\rangle\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{display name}\}\{\texttt{options}\}\{\texttt{prefix}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{NewTcbTheorem}$^{\text{P.372}}$, but based on \texttt{ProvideDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are only created if they are not already defined.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{DeclareTcbTheorem}\langle\texttt{init options}\rangle\{\texttt{name}\}\{\texttt{display name}\}\{\texttt{options}\}\{\texttt{prefix}\}
\end{quote}

Operates like \texttt{NewTcbTheorem}$^{\text{P.372}}$, but based on \texttt{DeclareDocumentEnvironment} instead of \texttt{NewDocumentEnvironment}. New environments are always created and possibly redefine existing ones.
\texttt{tcbmath}\{(\textit{options})\}\{(\textit{mathematical box content})\}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox} \footnote{P.12} which is fitted to the width of the given \textit{(mathematical box content)}. This box is intended to be applied as part of a larger formula and may be used as replacement for the \texttt{boxed} macro of \texttt{amsmath}.

\begin{equation}
\begin{tcbset}
\text{fonttitle=\scriptsize}
\tcbmath\{colback=LightBlue!25!white,colframe=blue\}{ a^2 = 16 }
\quad \Rightarrow \quad \tcbmath\{colback=Salmon!25!white,colframe=red,title=Implication\}
\quad \{ a = 4 \text{ \&
\& \quad a = -4. \}
\end{tcbset}
\end{equation}

\[ a^2 = 16 \quad \Rightarrow \quad a = 4 \lor a = -4. \] \tag{3}

\texttt{tcbhighmath}\{(\textit{options})\}\{(\textit{mathematical box content})\}

This is a special case of the \texttt{tcbmath} macro which uses the style \texttt{/tcb/highlight math} \footnote{P.385}. It is intended to provide context sensitive highlighting of formula parts. The color settings via \texttt{/tcb/highlight math style} \footnote{P.385} may be different inside theorems or other colored areas and outside.

\begin{tcbset}
\text{myformula/.style={colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black,}
\quad \every box/.style={highlight math style={colback=LightBlue!50!white,colframe=Navy}}\}
\end{tcbset}

\begin{align}
\begin{tcbhighmath}\{\text{myformula}\}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{\,d}x &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. 
\end{tcbhighmath}
\end{align}

\[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \] \tag{4}
\[ \int x^2 \text{\,d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \] \tag{5}

\begin{tcbhighmath}\{\text{myformula}\}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \text{\,d}x &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. 
\end{tcbhighmath}

\[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \] \tag{6}
\[ \int x^2 \text{\,d}x = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c. \] \tag{7}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcblhighmath} *P.375 can be used in symbiosis with the \texttt{empheq} package which allows to specify own boxing commands to mark multiline formulas.

\[
\begin{empheq}[box=\tcbhighmath]{align}
  a &= \sin(z) \\
  E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x\, dx
\end{empheq}
\]

Besides \texttt{\textbackslash tcblhighmath} *P.375, one can easily define an independent new box based on \texttt{\textbackslash tcbox} *P.14 which acts like \texttt{\textbackslash tcblhighmath} *P.375.

\[
\begin{empheq}[box=\otherbox]{align}
  a &= \sin(z) \\
  E &= mc^2 + \int_a^b x\, dx
\end{empheq}
\]

\[
\begin{equation}
\text{\texttt{\textbackslash tcblhighmath}}(E) = \otherbox{mc^2}
\end{equation}
\]
18.2 Option Keys of the Library

\( /tcb/separator\ sign = \langle sign \rangle \)  (no default, initially :)

The given \( \langle sign \rangle \) is used inside the title text of a theorem as separator between display name combined with number and the specific title text. It is omitted, if there is no specific title text.

\[
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
  \textcolor{red!50!black}{\bfseries}
  \begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
  My theorem text.
  \end{sometheorem}
\]

Theorem 18.5 ▶ My example

My theorem text.

\( /tcb/separator\ sign\ colon \)  (style, no value, initially set)

Sets \( /tcb/separator\ sign \) to the default colon : sign.

\( /tcb/separator\ sign\ dash \)  (style, no value)

Sets \( /tcb/separator\ sign \) to an en-dash sign.

\[
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
  \textcolor{red!50!black}{\bfseries}
  \begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
  My theorem text.
  \end{sometheorem}
\]

Theorem 18.6 – My example

My theorem text.

\( /tcb/separator\ sign\ none \)  (style, no value)

Sets \( /tcb/separator\ sign \) to empty.

\[
% \usepackage{amssymb}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
  \textcolor{red!50!black}{\bfseries}
  \begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
  My theorem text.
  \end{sometheorem}
\]

Theorem 18.7 My example

My theorem text.
The given \langle left \rangle and \langle right \rangle delimiter signs are used to frame the descriptive title text of a theorem.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}\}
My theorem text. 
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.8: «My example»
My theorem text.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{description delimiters parenthesis}{
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}\}
My theorem text. 
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.9: (My example)
My theorem text.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{description delimiters none}{
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}\}
My theorem text. 
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.10: My example
My theorem text.
/tcb/description font=(text) (default empty, initially empty)
Sets ⟨text⟩ (e.g. font settings) before the descriptive title text deviating from /tcb/fonttitle→P.35. The ⟨text⟩ is removed, if description font is used without value.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem} %
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 description delimiters={\lqq}{\rqq},
 description font=\mdseries\itshape}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.11: „My example“
My theorem text.

/tcb/description formatter=(macro) (default empty, initially empty)
Sets ⟨macro⟩ as formatter for the descriptive title text. The ⟨macro⟩ has to take one mandatory argument (the description text).
Note that /tcb/description delimiters→P.378, /tcb/description color→P.378, and /tcb/description font are ignored, if this option is used.
If description formatter is used without value, the formatter is reset to its standard behavior.

\newtcbbox\formbox\{enhanced,frame empty,size=minimal,boxsep=2pt,arc=1pt,
on line,interior style image=goldshade.png\}
\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem} %
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
 description formatter=\formbox}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.12: My example
My theorem text.

/tcb/terminator sign=(sign) (no default, initially empty)
The given ⟨sign⟩ is used as terminator at the end of the title text of a theorem.

\newtcbtheorem[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem} %
{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
terminator sign=\{.\}}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.13: My example.
My theorem text.
Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign colon} \textsuperscript{P.379} to the colon : sign.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, separator sign dash,terminator sign colon}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.14 – My example:
My theorem text.

Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign dash} \textsuperscript{P.379} to an en-dash sign.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, terminator sign dash}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

Theorem 18.15: My example –
My theorem text.

Sets \texttt{/tcb/terminator sign none} \textsuperscript{P.379} to the default empty text.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{sometheorem}{Theorem}{colback=white,colframe=red!50!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, label separator=*}{theo}
\begin{sometheorem}{My example}{myex}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

See Example \ref{theo*myex}.

Theorem 18.16: My example
My theorem text.

See Example 18.16.
The given \texttt{(style)} is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \texttt{\newtcbtheorem} \textsuperscript{P.372}. This \texttt{(style)} uses one argument which is automatically set to the full label marker of the environment, i.e., a text consisting of \texttt{(prefix)} (defined by \texttt{\newtcbtheorem} \textsuperscript{P.372}), \texttt{/tcb/label separator} \textsuperscript{P.380}, and \texttt{(marker)} (defined by an actual theorem environment).

\begin{thebibliography}{9}
\bibitem{} Theorem 18.17: My example
\begin{quote}
My theorem text.
\end{quote}
\end{thebibliography}

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.

A second usage of \texttt{/tcb/theorem full label supplement} overwrites the first setting.

The given \texttt{(style)} is used in connection with labels created with environments which are defined themselves by \texttt{\newtcbtheorem} \textsuperscript{P.372}. This \texttt{(style)} uses one argument which is automatically set to the label \texttt{(marker)} defined by an actual theorem environment.

A second usage of \texttt{/tcb/theorem label supplement} overwrites the first setting, but \texttt{/tcb/theorem full label supplement} and \texttt{/tcb/theorem label supplement} can be used independently.

\begin{thebibliography}{9}
\bibitem{} Theorem 18.18: My example
\begin{quote}
My theorem text.
\end{quote}
\end{thebibliography}

This automated hyper target can be linked to with a hyper link.
Sets the hanging indent of the theorem title to auto or the given ⟨length⟩. For auto, the hanging indent matches the display name, number and separator sign of the theorem. If ⟨length⟩ is negative, the theorem title is indented positively without hanging indent.

\begin{sometheorem}{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA1}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA2}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=0pt]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA3}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}

\begin{sometheorem}[theorem hanging indent=-5mm]{This is a very long and complicated title for a quite short and nearly empty theorem}{myexA4}
My theorem text.
\end{sometheorem}
Theorem 18.23: My example
My theorem text.

18.24 Theorem: My example
My theorem text.

Theorem: My example
My theorem text.

18.25: My example
My theorem text.

18.26: My example
My theorem text.
This key can be used directly in a `tcolorbox` for a more flexible approach to create a theorem type box. The `display name` is used together with the increased `counter` value and the `title` for the title line of the box. Additionally, a \texttt{\label} with the given `marker` is created.

```latex
\newcounter{texercise}
\begin{tcolorbox}[colback=green!10,colframe=green!50!black,arc=4mm,
  theorem={Test}{texercise}{Direct usage}{myMarker}]
\end{tcolorbox}
```

Here, we see the test \ref{myMarker}.

Test 1: Direct usage

Here, we see the test 1.

For a common appearance inside the document, the key \texttt{theorem} should not be used directly as in the example above, but as part of a new environment created by hand or using \texttt{\newtcbtheorem} → P.372.
A style which is used for \tcblhighmath and which is predefined as\notitle,nophantom,colframe=red,colback=yellow!25!white. It can be changed with the usual\pgf techniques or with /tcb/highlight math style.

\begin{align*}
\tcblhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2, \\
\tcblset{highlight math/.append style={left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm,bottom=0mm}}
\tcblhighmath{1} + 1 &= 2.
\end{align*}

\tcb/highlight math style=⟨style definition⟩ (style, no default)
Changes the definition for /tcb/highlight math to notitle,nophantom plus the given ⟨style definition⟩. See \tcblhighmath for another example.

% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\tcblset{highlight math style={enhanced,%<-- needed for the 'remember' options
colframe=red,colback=red!10!white,boxsep=0pt}}
\begin{align*}
\tcblhighmath[remember as=fx]{f(x)} &= \int\limits_{1}^{x} \frac{1}{t^2}~dt \\
&= \left[-\frac{1}{t}\right]_{1}^{x} \\
&= -\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{1} \\
&= 1 - \frac{1}{x}.
\end{align*}
/tcb/math upper (style, no value)
Sets the upper part to mathematical mode with font \textstyle.

/tcb/math lower (style, no value)
Sets the lower part to mathematical mode with font \textstyle.

/tcb/math (style, no value)
Sets the upper part \textit{and} lower part to mathematical mode with font \textstyle.

\begin{tcolorbox}[math,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}

The following styles are only tested to work with the original \texttt{amsmath} environments. If e.g. the \texttt{equation} environment is redefined as \texttt{gather}, then /tcb/\texttt{ams equation} should \textbf{not} be used. Obviously, you are encouraged to use /tcb/\texttt{ams gather} \textsuperscript{P.388} in this case.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation upper} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation lower} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation} environment to the start and end of the upper \textit{and} lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation\* upper} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation\*} environment to the start and end of the upper part.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation\* lower} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation\*} environment to the start and end of the lower part.

U 2014-10-30 /tcb/\texttt{ams equation\*} (style, no value)
Adds an \texttt{amsmath equation\*} environment to the start and end of the upper \textit{and} lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams equation*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty.
\end{tcolorbox}
Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the upper part.

Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the lower part.

Adds an `amsmath align` environment to the start and end of the upper and lower part.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align, colback=yellow!10!white, colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams align*, colback=yellow!10!white, colframe=red!50!black]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\sum\limits_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} = \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx = \frac{1}{3} x^3 + c.
\end{tcolorbox}
Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following \texttt{align} or \texttt{gather} environment for the upper part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following \texttt{align} or \texttt{gather} environment for the lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

Neutralizes the \abovedisplayskip of a following \texttt{align} or \texttt{gather} environment for the upper part and lower part. Note that the text content has to start with such a formula.

\begin{tcolorbox}[ams nodisplayskip,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black]
\begin{align}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}
\end{tcolorbox}

And now for something completely different.

New colored mathematical environments are easily created using \texttt{newtcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.15}:

\begin{newtcolorbox}[mymath]{ams gather*,colback=yellow!10!white,colframe=red!50!black}
\begin{align}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty. \\
\int x^2 \, dx &= \frac13 x^3 + c.
\end{align}
\end{newtcolorbox}

All described options like \texttt{tcb/ams gather upper} \textsuperscript{P.388}, \texttt{tcb/ams gather lower} \textsuperscript{P.388}, \texttt{tcb/ams gather} \textsuperscript{P.388} are (partially) setting (overwriting) the keys \texttt{tcb/before upper} \textsuperscript{P.71}, \texttt{tcb/after upper} \textsuperscript{P.72}, \texttt{tcb/before lower} \textsuperscript{P.73}, \texttt{tcb/after lower} \textsuperscript{P.74}. Therefore, e.g. \texttt{tcbset{ams gather,before upper={\text{Pythagoras:}}}} produces an invalid result. For this case, you are invited to use \texttt{tcbset{ams gather,before upper app={\text{Pythagoras:}}}}, see \texttt{tcb/before upper app} \textsuperscript{P.465}. 
/tcbtheorem style=(name) (no default, initially standard)

Applies a predefined style (name) to the theorem environment. Some of the feasible (name) values resemble style names from the packages theorem and ntheorem to give convenient access to known patterns.

The styles alter \(\text{/tcb/separator sign} \quad P.377\), \(\text{/tcb/description delimiters} \quad P.378\), \(\text{/tcb/terminator sign} \quad P.379\), and more. Therefore, one should apply such keys after a theorem style.

For the following examples, we use:

\begin{tcbtheorem}[use counter from=mytheo]{theorem}{Theorem}{
  \%fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape,fontupper=\itshape,
  colframe=green!50!black,colback=green!10!white,
  colbacktitle=green!20!white,coltitle=blue!75!black}{theo}
\end{tcbtheorem}

The predefined styles are:

- **standard**: This is the initial value.

\begin{tcbtheorem}[theorem style=standard]{standard}{
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{tcbtheorem}

**Theorem 18.27**: standard

This is my theorem.

\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

- **change standard**

\begin{tcbtheorem}[theorem style=change standard]{change standard}{
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{tcbtheorem}

**18.28 Theorem**: change standard

This is my theorem.

\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

- **plain**

\begin{tcbtheorem}[theorem style=plain]{plain}{
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*} \end{tcbtheorem}

**Theorem 18.29 (plain)**: This is my theorem.

\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
• break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=break]{break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}

Theorem 18.30 (break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• plain apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=plain apart]{plain apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}

Theorem 18.31 (plain apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change]{change}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}

18.32 Theorem (change):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change break

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change break]{change break}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}

18.33 Theorem (change break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

• change apart

\begin{theorem}[theorem style=change apart]{change apart}{}
This is my theorem. \begin{equation*} a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \end{equation*}
\end{theorem}

18.34 Theorem (change apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
18.35 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.36 Theorem (margin): This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.37 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.38 Theorem (margin break):
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.39 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]

18.40 Theorem (margin apart)
This is my theorem.
\[ a^2 + b^2 = c^2. \]
18.3 Examples for Definitions and Theorems

In the following, the application of \texttt{\newtcbtheorem} to highlight mathematical definitions, theorems, or the like is demonstrated.

At first, additional \texttt{tcb} keys are created for the appearance of the colored boxes. It is assumed that theorems and corollaries should be identically colored. All following environments are numbered with a common counter, but this can be changed easily. Here, the counter output is supplemented by the subsection number. Further, the \texttt{cleveref} package \cite{6} is used for clever references.

\begin{quote}
\textit{Definition in the preamble:}
\end{quote}

\begin{verbatim}
\usepackage{cleveref}
\tcbset{
defstyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, arc=0mm, colback=blue!5!white, colframe=blue!75!black},
 \theostyle/.style={fonttitle=\bfseries\upshape, fontupper=\slshape, colback=red!10!white, colframe=red!75!black},
}
\NewTcbTheorem[number within=subsection,crefname={definition}{definitions}]
  \% {Definition}{Definition}{defstyle}{def}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={theorem}{theorems}]
  \% {Theorem}{Theorem}{theostyle}{theo}
\NewTcbTheorem[use counter from=Definition,crefname={corollary}{corollaries}]
  \% {Corollary}{Corollary}{theostyle}{cor}
\end{verbatim}

By \texttt{\newtcbtheorem}, commonly numbered theorem environments are created now. \texttt{defstyle} and \texttt{theostyle} are used for the appearance.

Now, everything is prepared for the following examples.

The following theorem is numbered as \Cref{theo:diffbarstetig} and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{Theorem}{Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist}{diffbarstetig}
\begin{quote}
Eine Funktion $f:I\to\mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0\in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{quote}
\end{Theorem}

The following theorem is numbered as Theorem 18.3.1 and referenced with the marker \texttt{theo:diffbarstetig}.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Theorem 18.3.1:} Differenzierbarkeit bedingt Stetigkeit, wobei diese Benennung zu Testzwecken ungewöhnlich lang ist
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
Eine Funktion $f:I\to\mathbb{R}$ ist in $x_0\in I$ stetig, wenn $f$ in $x_0$ differenzierbar ist.
\end{quote}
The following definition is numbered as \Cref{def:diffbarkeit} and referenced with the marker \texttt{def:diffbarkeit}.\bigskip

\begin{Definition}{Differenzierbarkeit}{diffbarkeit}
Eine Funktion $f:~I\to\mathbb{R}$ auf einem Intervall $I$ hei\ss{}t in $x_0\in I$ differenzierbar oder linear approximierbar, wenn der Grenzwert
\begin{equation*}
\lim_{x\to x_0}\frac{f(x)-f(x_0)}{x-x_0} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x_0+h)-f(x_0)}{h}
\end{equation*}
existiert. Bei Existenz heißt dieser Grenzwert Ableitung oder Differentialquotient von $f$ in $x_0$ und man schreibt f"{u}r ihn
\begin{equation*}
\begin{split}
f'(x_0) & \quad \text{oder} \quad \frac{df}{dx}(x_0).
\end{split}
\end{equation*}
\end{Definition}

The following corollary is numbered as \Cref{cor:nullstellen} and referenced with the marker \texttt{cor:nullstellen}.\bigskip

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0\in]a,b[$.\bigskip

\begin{Corollary}{Nullstellenexistenz}{nullstellen}
Ist $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ stetig und haben $f(a)$ und $f(b)$ entgegengesetzte Vorzeichen, also $f(a)f(b)<0$, so besitzt $f$ eine Nullstelle $x_0\in]a,b[$.\bigskip

394
Theorem 18.3.4: Hinreichende Bedingung für Wendepunkte

\[ f \text{ sei eine auf einem Intervall } [a, b] \text{ dreimal stetig differenzierbare Funktion. Ist } f''(x_0) = 0 \text{ in } x_0 \in ]a, b[ \text{ und } f'''(x_0) \neq 0, \text{ so ist } (x_0, f(x_0)) \text{ ein Wendepunkt von } f. \]

Theorem 18.3.5 (Mittelwertsatz für \( n \) Variable)

Es sei \( n \in \mathbb{N}, D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \) eine offene Menge und \( f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R}) \). Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke \([x_0, x] \subset D\) einen Punkt \( \xi \in [x_0, x] \), so dass gilt

\[ f(x) - f(x_0) = \text{grad } f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0) \]

Here, \texttt{cleveref} support is used to reference Theorem 18.3.5 on Page 395. This theorem can also be referenced by \texttt{Vref} resulting in Theorem 18.3.5.
Here, using \Vref resulting in \Vref{theo:meanvaluetheorem} is more interesting\ldots

Here, using \Vref resulting in Theorem 18.3.5 on the preceding page is more interesting...

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n2}
\begin{equation*}
f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

18.3.6 Theorem (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable)

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0,x]$, so dass gilt

\[ f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0) \]

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n3}
\begin{equation*}
f(x)-f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

Theorem 18.3.7: Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable

Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0,x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0,x]$, so dass gilt

\[ f(x) - f(x_0) = \operatorname{grad} f(\xi)^\top(x-x_0) \]
Let’s try a more conservative approach:

\begin{YetAnotherTheorem}{Mittelwertsatz f"{u}r $n$ Variable}{mittelwertsatz_n4}
\[ \text{Es sei } n\in\mathbb{N}, \ D\subseteq\mathbb{R}^n\text{ eine offene Menge und } f\in C^1(D,\mathbb{R})\text{. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke } [x_0, x]\subset D\text{ einen Punkt } \xi\in [x_0, x], \text{ so dass gilt}\]
\begin{equation*}
 f(x) - f(x_0) = \text{grad } f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)
\end{equation*}
\end{YetAnotherTheorem}

**Theorem 18.3.9 (Mittelwertsatz für $n$ Variable):** Es sei $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ eine offene Menge und $f \in C^1(D, \mathbb{R})$. Dann gibt es auf jeder Strecke $[x_0, x] \subset D$ einen Punkt $\xi \in [x_0, x]$, so dass gilt

$$f(x) - f(x_0) = \text{grad } f(\xi)^\top (x - x_0)$$
18.4 Using other theorem environments with \tcolorbox

Instead of creating theorem environments with the methods described before, environments from other packages can be boxed with a \tcolorbox.

Environments may be created e.g. by methods from the \texttt{theorem} package or the \texttt{amsthm} package. \texttt{tcolorboxenvironment} \footnote{P. 22} can be used to put a box around these environments.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,colframe=cyan,interior hidden,breakable,before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt]
\begin{lem}
\lipsum[2]
\end{lem}
\lipsum[3]
\begin{proof}
\lipsum*[4]
\end{proof}


\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,breakable,left=5mm,before skip=10pt,after skip=10pt,borderline west={1mm}{0pt}{red}]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{breakable}

This also loads the package pdfcol.

19.1 Technical Overview

The library \texttt{breakable} supports the automatic breaking of a \texttt{tcolorbox}. This feature is enabled by \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401} and disabled by \texttt{/tcb/unbreakable} \textsuperscript{P.402}.

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401}, then the following algorithm is executed:

1. The box content is read to a box register similar but not identical to the unbreakable case.
2. If the total box fits into the current page, it is shipped out visibly unbroken and the algorithm stops.

   \begin{itemize}
   \item \textbf{Unbroken Box}
   \item The box.
   \end{itemize}

3. Otherwise, it is checked if at least \texttt{/tcb/lines before break} \textsuperscript{P.402} of the upper box can be placed on the current page. If not, a page break is inserted and the algorithm goes back to Step 2.
4. Now, the \textit{break sequence} starts. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{first part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out.

   \begin{itemize}
   \item \textbf{Broken Box}
   \item The box.
   \end{itemize}

5. If the remaining content of the total box fits into the current page, the algorithm continues with Step 7, else with Step 6.
6. The upper box part or the lower box part is split such that it fits into the current page. The fitting part is named \textit{middle part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. Then, the algorithm goes back to Step 5.

   \begin{itemize}
   \item The box.
   \end{itemize}

7. The remaining part is named \textit{last part} of the \textit{break sequence} and shipped out. The algorithm stops.

   \begin{itemize}
   \item The box.
   \end{itemize}

The algorithm takes care that the optional segmentation line never appears at the end of a box. The optional lower box part is also checked to have at least \texttt{/tcb/lines before break} \textsuperscript{P.402}. 

In principle, all boxes of the *break sequence* share the same geometric parameters. The differences are:

- The given \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.87} values are used only before the first and after the last part of the *break sequence*.

- A special behavior between the parts of the *break sequence* can be given by \texttt{/tcb/toprule at break} \textsuperscript{P.406}, \texttt{/tcb/bottomrule at break} \textsuperscript{P.406}, \texttt{/tcb/enlarge top at break} \textsuperscript{P.95}, and \texttt{/tcb/enlarge bottom at break} \textsuperscript{P.95}.

- The \texttt{/tcb/skin} \textsuperscript{P.154} decides how the *first*, *middle*, and *last* part look like. Actually, every part type has its own skin given by the options \texttt{/tcb/skin first} \textsuperscript{P.154}, \texttt{/tcb/skin middle} \textsuperscript{P.154}, and \texttt{/tcb/skin last} \textsuperscript{P.154}. Typically, these options are set automatically by the main skin, see Subsection 19.8 from page 415.

### 19.2 Limitations and Known Bugs

- The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part of normal breakable \texttt{tcolorbox}es is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm) apiece. If such a part gets longer, the output will get buggy without warning. For very oversized boxes which are longer than 65536pt, use the \texttt{unlimited} value for \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401}. With the \texttt{unlimited} setting, the applied algorithm has (virtually) no height limit for boxes, but very likely the compiler memory will have to be increased for boxes longer than 300 pages (depending on compiler settings and box content). But it is recommended to use \texttt{unlimited} for critical large boxes only.

- You can nest an unbreakable \texttt{tcolorbox} inside another \texttt{tcolorbox}, even inside a breakable one. But you cannot nest a breakable box inside a breakable box. The \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401} key for a nested box is ignored automatically\textsuperscript{3}, i.e. inner boxes are always unbreakable.

  After all, in the unlikely case you really want to have the nested box to be breakable, use \texttt{/tcb/enforce breakable} \textsuperscript{P.402} for the nested box\textsuperscript{4}. But, a breakable box inside a breakable box will usually give a mess.

- Depending on the \LaTeX engine, if your text content contains some text color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. See the documentation for \texttt{/tcb/use color stack} \textsuperscript{P.404} for more information.

- The \texttt{perpage} option of the \texttt{footmisc} package is deliberately deactivated inside a breakable box since all footnotes are placed at the end of the box (possibly far away from the reference point).

- Making a box \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401} which actually is not broken creates a box which acts almost like an unbreakable box. Visual differences are kept as indiscernible as possible, but can appear with certain \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.87} settings, especially, if there is an automatic page break before the box.

- Lua\TeX version 0.95 changes the behavior of the basic \texttt{\vsplit} (a bug?!?) resulting in badly broken boxes. Thanks to Jeremy Engel, the \texttt{breakable} library contains a patch for this which also loads the the \texttt{ifluatex} package.

\textsuperscript{3}Until \texttt{tcolorbox} 3.04, the \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401} key was not ignored for nested boxes.

\textsuperscript{4}\texttt{/tcb/enforce breakable} \textsuperscript{P.402} acts like \texttt{/tcb/breakable} \textsuperscript{P.401} until \texttt{tcolorbox} 3.04.
19.3 Main Option Keys

/\texttt{tcb/breakable=\texttt{true|false|unlimited}}

(default \texttt{true}, initially \texttt{false})

Allows the \texttt{tcolorbox} to be breakable. If the box is larger than the available space at the current page, the box is automatically broken and continued to the next page. All sorts of \texttt{tcolorbox} can be made breakable. It depends on the skin how the breaking looks like. If you do not know better, use /\texttt{tcb/enhanced} \textsuperscript{\textit{P.231}} for breaking a box. The parts of the \textit{break sequence} are numbered by the counter \texttt{tcbbreakpart}.

- \texttt{false}: Sets the \texttt{tcolorbox} to be unbreakable.
- \texttt{true}: Breaks the \texttt{tcolorbox} from one page to another. The maximal total height of the upper and of the lower part is about 65536pt (ca. 2300cm or ca. 90 pages) apiece.
- \texttt{unlimited}: Experimental code for unlimited total height of breakable boxes. For boxes longer than 300 pages (or even shorter ones) the compiler memory will have to be increased.

% \usepackage{lipsum} % preamble
\tcbset{enhanced jigsaw,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,
watermark color=yellow!25!white,watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
fonttitle=bfseries}

\begin{tcolorbox}[]
[breakable,title=My breakable box]
\lipsum[1-6]
\end{tcolorbox}

My breakable box


Quisque ullamcorper placerat ipsum. Cras nibh. Morbi vel justo vitae lacus tincidunt


\[tcb/unbreakable\] (no value, initially set)

Sets the tcolorbox to be unbreakable.

\[tcb/enforce breakable\] (no value)

A tcolorbox inside a tcolorbox is automatically set to be unbreakable. Using \[tcb/breakable\]→P.401 on such an inner box has no effect. If one really wants the inner box to be breakable, use \[tcb/enforce breakable\]. This will usually give a mess of shattered boxes. You are advised to not use this option.

Note that \[tcb/enforce breakable\] has the functionality that \[tcb/breakable\]→P.401 had until package version 3.04 and exists for backward compatibility.

\[tcb/title after break=\langle text\rangle\] (no default, initially empty)

The \[tcb/title \]→P.23 is used only for the first part of a break sequence. Use title after break to create a heading line with \langle text\rangle as content for all following parts. Also see \[tcb/extras title after break\]→P.409 for formatting the title text.

\[tcb/notitle after break\] (no value, initially set)

Removes the title line or following parts in a break sequence if set before.

\[tcb/adjusted title after break=\langle text\rangle\] (style, no default, initially unset)

Works like \[tcb/adjusted title \]→P.23 but applied to \[tcb/title after break\].

\[tcb/lines before break=\langle number\rangle\] (no default, initially 2)

Assures that the given \langle number\rangle of lines of the upper box part or the lower box part are placed before a break happens.
 Defines break points at the given \langle length \rangle values. The first \langle length \rangle defines the (maximal) height of the first partial box, the second \langle length \rangle defines the (maximal) height of the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle length \rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any.

- Setting a \langle length \rangle to \texttt{Opt} means that the naturally available space is used for breaking.
- Setting a \langle length \rangle to a negative value means that the sum of this negative value and the naturally available space is used for breaking (boxes will shrink in height). Note that before version 4.10 negative values were treated like \texttt{Opt}.

% \usepackage{multicol,lipsum}
\begin{multicols}{3}\footnotesize
Breakable boxes inside a |multicols| environment need special attendance. They are broken by default at |\textheight|.
\begin{tcbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=small,vfill before first,
colframe=red,colback=yellow!10!white,before title=\raggedright,
title={Broken box inside a |multicols| environment},fonttitle=\bfseries,
enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
pad at break=1mm,break at=3cm/6.3cm ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcbox}
\refKey{/tcb/height fixed for} may also be considered for |multicols| environments.
\end{multicols}

/tcb/enlargepage\langle length \rangle/\langle length \rangle/\ldots/\langle length \rangle (no default, initially \texttt{Opt})

Inserts a \enlargethispage{\langle length \rangle} to the pages of the break sequence, i.e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first \langle length \rangle is applied to the first partial box, the second \langle length \rangle is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle length \rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

\begin{tcbox}[breakable,enlargepage=0mm/\baselineskip/2\baselineskip/0mm,...
The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

/tcb/enlargepage=\langle length \rangle/\langle length \rangle/\ldots/\langle length \rangle (no default, initially \texttt{Opt})

Inserts a \enlargethispage{\langle length \rangle} to the pages of the break sequence, i.e. allows one to enlarge (or shrink) partial boxes. The first \langle length \rangle is applied to the first partial box, the second \langle length \rangle is applied to the second partial box, and so on. The last \langle length \rangle value is applied to all following partial boxes if any. Note that floating boxes will not be enlarged.

The example code enlarged the second partial box by one line, the third partial box by two lines, and all following parts are not enlarged.

If an automated page break occurs before the first partial box, the page enlargement is applied to the page before the first partial box and again to the page of the first partial box. Insert a manual break to prevent this. In general, \enlargepage should be used at the final stage of a document for fine-tuning only.
/tcb/enlargepage flexible=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)

This allows an automated page enlargement for up to (length). The algorithm can use this to avoid breaking a box, if there is enough room after enlargement. Also, the last partial box of a break sequence may be enlarged to avoid further breaking.

Note that this potential enlargement is additive to settings of /tcb/enlargepage→P.403. But /tcb/enlargepage flexible overwrites settings of /tcb/pad before break*→P.406 or /tcb/pad at break*→P.406.

% The following setting hinders orphan lines for the last partial box
\tcbset{enlargepage flexible=\baselineskip}

/tcb/compress page=(option)  (default all, initially \baselineskip)

This option controls the space management on the page which contains the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence. Feasible (option) values are:

- all (default value): All shrinkable glue on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence. Thus, all vertical spaces on the page will potentially be reduced to their minimal values.
- \baselineskip (initial value): Shrinkable glue up to one \baselineskip on the page is potentially used for the unbroken box or the first part of a break sequence.
- none: The break algorithm respects the target size of the given glue values on the page. This was the initial value before version 3.34.

Note that the box content is not influenced by this option.

/tcb/shrink break goal=(length)  (no default, initially 0pt)

This is an emergency parameter if the break algorithm produces unpleasant breaks. It shrinks the goal height of the current box part by (length) which may result in smaller boxes. Never use negative values. Usually, this option will never be needed at all.

/tcb/use color stack=true|false  (default true, initially false)

Depending on the \LaTeX engine and loaded packages, if your text contains some color changing commands, your color may not survive the break to the next box. For some engines, there is support for additional color stacks which allow colors to survive breaks. Such an color stack can be activated by /tcb/use color stack with help of the pdfcol package. This can be done globally or per box.

Note that activating /tcb/use color stack inserts a color command with a \texttt{whatsit} at the begin of the upper part and of the lower part of a \texttt{tcolorbox}→P.12. This may add additional vertical space, e.g. if your box text starts with a list like \texttt{enumerate}!

- pdf\TeX: color stacks supported.
- Lua\TeX: color stacks supported, but you should consider loading the lua\texttt{color} package \emph{instead} which avoids the spacing problem.
- Xe\TeX: color stacks not supported (yet?). From hearsay, with the fonts\texttt{pec} package, you may use \texttt{\addfontfeatures{Color=mycolor}} to add a font color which survives the break.

If pdfcol cannot initialize an additional color stack for the used engine, /tcb/use color stack is silently ignored.
The result of the following example depends on the used \LaTeX{} engine and loaded packages. The right-hand side is blue, if compiled using pdf\TeX{}, Lua\TeX{} without luacolor, and Xe\TeX{}. Lua\TeX{} with luacolor gives the next but one result.

\begin{multicols}{2}
\footnotesize
Breakable box without color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable, % use only breakable in the real world! vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par
\color{red} \textit{\lipsum[2]} \par
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.
\end{multicols}

Breakable box with color stack.
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, use color stack, size=small, colframe=gray, colback=yellow!10!white, colupper=blue, enforce breakable, % use only breakable in the real world! vfill before first, pad at break=1mm, break at=33mm ]
Some blue text. \par
\color{red} \textit{\lipsum[2]} \par
More blue text.
\end{tcolorbox}
Text after box.

We do again with /\texttt{tcb/use color stack}/. Again, the result depends on the used \LaTeX{} engine. The right-hand side stays blue for Xe\TeX{} and and is red and blue for pdf\TeX{} and Lua\TeX{}.
19.4 Option Keys for the Break Appearance

/tcb/toprule at break={length} (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the top rule to {length} if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.401. In this case, it is applied to middle and last parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/toprule → P.41 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/bottomrule at break={length} (no default, initially 0.5mm)

Sets the line width of the bottom rule to {length} if the box is /tcb/breakable → P.401. In this case, it is applied to first and middle parts in a break sequence. Note that /tcb/bottomrule → P.41 overwrites this value if used afterwards.

/tcb/topsep at break={length} (no default, initially 0mm)

Additional vertical space of {length} which is added at the top of middle and last parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/bottomsep at break={length} (no default, initially 0mm)

Additional vertical space of {length} which is added at the bottom of first and middle parts in a break sequence. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts end with a rule.

/tcb/pad before break={length} (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the text content and before the break point to {length}. This style sets /tcb/toprule at break to 0pt and changes /tcb/topsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if these parts start with a rule or a title.

/tcb/pad before break*={length} (style, no default)

Sets /tcb/pad before break to {length} and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P.404 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

/tcb/pad after break={length} (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)

Sets the total amount of vertical space after the break point and before the text content to {length}. This style sets /tcb/bottomrule at break to 0pt and changes /tcb/bottomsep at break as required. In general, it is not advisable to change this value if the first and middle parts in a break sequence end with a rule.

/tcb/pad at break={length} (style, no default, initially 3.5mm)

Abbreviation for setting {length} to /tcb/pad before break and /tcb/pad after break.

/tcb/pad at break*={length} (style, no default)

Sets /tcb/pad at break to {length} and /tcb/enlargepage flexible → P.404 to an appropriate value such that empty closing frames are avoided.

\% \usepackage{lipsum} \% preamble
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,pad at break*=0mm,
title={For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm}]
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

For this box, the pad space at the break point is set to 0mm

Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Ut purus elit, vestibulum ut, placerat ac, adipiscing vitae, felis. Curabitur dictum gravida mauris. Nam arcu libero, nonummy eget, consectetuer id, vulputate a, magna. Donec vehicula augue eu neque. Pellentesque habitant morbi tristique senectus et netus et malesuada fames ac turpis
fringilla ultrices. Phasellus eu tellus sit amet tortor gravida placerat. Integer sapien est,
iaculis in, pretium quis, viverra ac, nunc. Praesent eget sem vel leo ultrices bibendum.
Aenean faucibus. Morbi dolor nulla, malesuada eu, pulvinar at, mollis ac, nulla. Curabitur
auctor semper nulla. Donec varius orci eget risus. Duis nibh mi, congue eu, accumsan
eleifend, sagittis quis, diam. Duis eget orci sit amet orci dignissim rutrum.
Nam dui ligula, fringilla a, euismod sodales, sollicitudin vel, wisi. Morbi auctor lorem
non justo. Nam lacus libero, pretium at, lobortis vitae, ultricies et, tellus. Donec aliquet,
tortor sed accumsan bibendum, erat ligula aliquet magna, vitae ornare odio metus a mi.
Morbi ac orci et nisl hendrerit mollis. Suspendisse ut massa. Cras nec ante. Pellentesque
a nulla. Cum sociis natoque penatibus et magnis dis parturient montes, nascetur ridiculus
mus. Aliquam tincidunt urna. Nulla ullamcorper vestibulum turpis. Pellentesque cursus
luctus mauris.

/tcb/pad at break*P.406 or /tcb/pad at break*P.406 should be used as very last op-
tion in an option list, because they adapt other settings.

Also see /tcb/enlarge top at break by*P.95 and /tcb/enlarge bottom at break
by*P.95.

/tcb/height fixed for=(part)
(no default, initially none)
When certain amount of space is available for a partial box of a break sequence, the partial
box typically is smaller than this space (depending on the box content). For given (part)(s),
the height can be set to all available space.
• none: Every partial tcolorbox is set with its natural height.
• first: The first partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
• middle: All middle partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.
• last: The last partial box is set to a height which matches the available space.
• first and middle: The first and all middle partial boxes are set to a height which
matches the available space.
• middle and last: All middle partial boxes and the last partial box are set to a height
which matches the available space.
• all: All partial boxes are set to a height which matches the available space.

If the box keeps unbroken, this option is not applied. See /tcb/height*P.59 for
setting a fixed height for unbroken boxes. See /tcb/height fill*P.62 for giving
unbroken boxes maximum height.

/tcb/vfill before first=true|false
(default true, initially false)
Inserts a \vfill at the begin of the first partial box to move this partial box to the end of
the current page. This may be used as an alternative to /tcb/height fixed for=first
to get justified columns or pages. The \vfill is not inserted, if the box gets not actually
broken.

/tcb/segmentation at break=true|false
(default true, initially true)
If a breakable box contains an upper part and a lower part and the break happens at the
segmentation between both parts, then
• the segmentation line (or similar) is drawn as first element of the partial box containing
the lower part, if /tcb/segmentation at break is set to be true.
• the segmentation line (or similar) is not drawn at all, if /tcb/segmentation at break
is set to be false. This may be preferable for skins like bicolor*P.243, tile*P.254,
or beamer*P.258.

407
19.5 Extra Options for Partial Boxes

\begin{enumerate}
\item \texttt{/tcb/extras=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item Adds \texttt{tcolorbox} \langle options\rangle to every box of a \textit{break sequence} after skin settings are done. This is quite late in box processing. Geometry and break settings should \textit{not be used} here, because they will either be ignored or have unexpected negative results. But it is possible to change most colors, skin effects, shadows, borders, frame code, etc. Note that using \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Usually, \texttt{/tcb/extras} for every box is very seldom an advantage over setting the options directly. Initially, \texttt{unbroken} and \texttt{middle} are sensible to apply.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/no extras}  
\hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially set)
\begin{itemize}
\item Removes all extras if set before.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras broken=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} and \textit{is} broken actually, then the \langle options\rangle are added to every box of the \textit{break sequence}. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} but \textit{is not} broken actually or if the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/unbreakable}, then the \langle options\rangle are added to the box. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/no extras unbroken}  
\hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially set)
\begin{itemize}
\item Removes the unbroken extras if set before.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras first=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} and \textit{is} broken actually, then the \langle options\rangle are added to the \textit{first} box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/no extras first}  
\hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially set)
\begin{itemize}
\item Removes the first extras if set before.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras middle=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} and \textit{is} broken actually, then the \langle options\rangle are added to every \textit{middle} box (if any) of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/no extras middle}  
\hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially set)
\begin{itemize}
\item Removes the middle extras if set before.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item If the box is set to be \texttt{/tcb/breakable} and \textit{is} broken actually, then the \langle options\rangle are added to the \textit{last} box of the break sequence. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/no extras last}  
\hspace{1cm} (style, no default, initially set)
\begin{itemize}
\item Removes the last extras if set before.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and first=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras first} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras middle and last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras middle} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and last=\{\langle options\rangle\}}  
\hspace{1cm} (no default, initially unset)
\begin{itemize}
\item This is an abbreviation for setting \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken} and \texttt{/tcb/extras last} together. \texttt{/tcb/extras} overwrites this key.\end{itemize}
\end{enumerate}
/tcb/extras first and middle={⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

This is an abbreviation for setting /tcb/extras first→P.408 and /tcb/extras middle→P.408 together. /tcb/extras→P.408 overwrites this key.

/tcb/extras title after break={⟨options⟩} (no default, initially unset)

If the box has a /tcb/title after break→P.402, then the ⟨options⟩ are added for all titles after the first break, i.e. all middle and last. The color, font, and alignment of titles after break can be adapted choosing ⟨options⟩, e.g. by /tcb/coltitle→P.34, /tcb/fonttitle→P.35, /tcb/halign title→P.38. Note that /tcb/colbacktitle→P.33 has to be placed into /tcb/extras middle and last→P.408.

/tcb/no extras title after break (style, no default, initially set)

Removes the title after break extras if set before.
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol}
% \usetikzlibrary{decorations.pathmorphing}
% \tcbuselibrary{skins}
\newtcolorbox{mybox}[1][{tile, 
  colback=green!7,coltitle=blue!50!black,colbacktitle=blue!5, 
  center title, 
  toprule=1.25mm,bottomrule=1.25mm, 
  extras unbroken and first={
    borderline north={0.25mm}{0.5mm}{blue,decoration={zigzag,amplitude=0.5mm},decorate}}, 
  extras unbroken and last={
    borderline south={0.25mm}{0.5mm}{blue,decoration={zigzag,amplitude=0.5mm},decorate}}, 
  #1}]
\begin{mybox}[title=My unbroken box]
\lipsum[1]
\end{mybox}
\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{mybox}[title=My broken box,
  enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=4.2cm,pad at break=2mm, 
  height fixed for=first and middle, ]
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
\end{multicols}

My unbroken box

My broken box
19.6  Breakable boxes and the \texttt{multicol} package

With version 4.10, the algorithm for detecting the available height for a \texttt{tcolorbox} inside a \texttt{multicol} environment was improved with help of Frank Mittelbach. This change \textit{may} impact existing user code which \textit{may} have to be adapted.

Unbreakable \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be used without special care inside a \texttt{multicols} environment from the \texttt{multicol} package \cite{10}. Since version 3.10, a breakable \texttt{tcolorbox} detects, if it is used inside a \texttt{multicols} environment. But choosing break points for a breakable box cannot be done by the balancing routine of \texttt{multicols}. By default, boxes will break at maximum column height. To get pleasant results, use the \texttt{/tcb/break at} \footnote{P.403} and \texttt{/tcb/height fixed for} \footnote{P.407} options.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol} % preamble
\footnotesize
\begin{multicols}{2}
\lipsum[1]
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=title,
colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
title=My breakable box,pad at break=1mm, break at=-{\baselineskip/0pt}]
\lipsum[2-4]
\end{tcolorbox}
\lipsum[4]
\end{multicols}
\end{verbatim}


My breakable box

This example is already set inside a \texttt{multicol} environment. This time, a \texttt{middle} part has full column height (here \texttt{\textheight}). \texttt{/tcb/height fixed for=\texttt{middle}} is used to spread this box part over the full height to align with neighboring columns.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw, breakable, size=title, colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, break at=-\baselineskip/0pt, height fixed for=middle ]
\lipsum[2-7]
\end{tcolorbox}


My breakable box


Nulla malesuada porttitor diam. Donec felis erat, congue non, volutpat at, tincidunt tristique, libero. Vivamus viverra fermentum felis.


quis dolor. Donec pellentesque, erat ac sagittis semper, nunc dui lobortis purus, quis congue purus metus ultricies tellus. Proin et quam. Class aptent taciti sociosqu ad litora torquent per conubia nostra, per inceptos hymenaeos. Praesent sapien turpis, fermentum vel, eleifend faucibus, vehicula eu, lacus.


The following example has a `\tcolorbox` which fills the `\multicols` environment completely. Here, `/tcb/height fixed for` `%P.407` is used to give all three columns the full height. Note that the appropriate `/tcb/break` at `%P.403` value is not computed automatically but set manually.

```
% \usepackage{lipsum,multicol} \% preamble
\small
\begin{multicols}{3}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,breakable,size=small, 
 colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=bfseries, 
 title=My breakable box, pad at break=2mm, drop fuzzy shadow, 
 height fixed for=all, break at=11.4cm ]
\lipsum[1-3]
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{multicols}
```

My breakable box


19.7 Break Point Insertion

A breakable box is not broken, if there is enough space on the current page or column. Therefore, typical penalty insertion with \break, \pagebreak, \columnbreak, ... may only work as expected, if the box is broken at least into two parts without inserting the penalties.

To force a page or column break, \tcbreak starts a new paragraph and inserts an insane tall rule which causes a break and which is immediately discarded. You may ignore this technical information and just use it as you would use \pagebreak.

For an unbreakable box, \tcbreak is identical to insert \par, i.e. it just starts a new paragraph.

Also see /tcb/break at → P.403 for defining height dependend breaks.
### 19.8 Break Sequence for the Skins

The following diagrams document the *break sequence* for different skins. Depending on the main skin of a `tcolorbox`, the actual skins of the *break sequence* parts are displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard</td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=standard jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=spartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhanced jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=enhancedlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=enhancedmiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolor jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolorfirst jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=bicolorlast jigsaw</td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=bicolormiddle jigsaw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbroken Box</td>
<td>Broken Boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skin=tile</td>
<td>skin=tilefirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilelast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=tilemiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

421
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamer</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
<td>skin=beamerfirst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unbroken Box</th>
<th>Broken Boxes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamermiddle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>skin=beamerlast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

422
19.9 Break by Hand (Faked Break)

See Section 19.6 on page 411 for real column breaks.

Since the appearance of broken boxes is done by skins, it is quite easy to 'fake a break'. For this, you actually don’t need the \texttt{breakable} library at all.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\textbf{My broken box}\\
This is a box which breaks from one column to another. I am sorry to say that this is a trick. Nevertheless, you may use this trick for your own purposes.
\end{tcolorbox}
The main purpose of this library is to store a \texttt{tcolorbox} into an array of box registers for later usage.

If the \texttt{tcolorbox} is not breakable, there is not much add-on compared to usual \TeX/\LaTeX{} box storage and usage (and you do not really need this library for that use case). For a breakable \texttt{tcolorbox}, this library allows to capture all partial boxes into a sequence of registers. The partial boxes can be used anywhere in arbitrary order.

The name of this library indicates \textit{magazine} in the sense of storage, but also in the sense of a journal where an article often is \textit{continued on page} \textit{x}. An example for this kind of application is given throughout this section starting on the right hand side. The creation of this library was motivated by Ulrike Fischer and Steven B. Segletes.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{magazine}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 399.

The box register operations of this library are global. \TeX{} grouping will not clear the registers when leaving the current group. Also be aware that extensive use of large box arrays may eat up \TeX{}’s available memory and registers.

\section{Creation and Resetting of Box Arrays}

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray{⟨name⟩}
\end{verbatim}

This creates a new box array called \texttt{⟨name⟩}. There already is a box array available with name \texttt{default} which can be used directly. Note that the creation is a global operation.

\begin{verbatim}
\newboxarray{myarray}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset{⟨name⟩}
\end{verbatim}

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{⟨name⟩} to zero. If \texttt{⟨name⟩} is not provided, \texttt{default} is used as name. Use this or \texttt{/tcb/reset box array} before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{P.427}. Otherwise, all boxes would be appended to the already existing boxes. This command does not clear box registers.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset % resets ‘default’
\boxarrayreset{myarray} % resets ‘myarray’
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/reset box array=⟨name⟩
\end{verbatim}

(default \texttt{default}, initially unset)

Resets the size counter of a box array \texttt{⟨name⟩} to zero. Use this or \texttt{\boxarrayreset} (which does the same) before you apply \texttt{/tcb/store to box array} \textsuperscript{P.427}.

\begin{verbatim}
/tcbset{
  reset box array, % resets ‘default’
  reset box array=myarray, % resets ‘myarray’
}
\end{verbatim}
\texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear[(name)]}

Works like \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayreset} to reset the size counter of a box array \langle name \rangle to zero. Additionally, all allocated box registers of the box array are cleared of their content. Note that the allocated box registers stay allocated. So, this may be useful to clear memory, but not to free registers for other applications. If \texttt{\textbackslash consumeboxarray} or \texttt{\textbackslash consumetcboxarray} was used to apply the stored boxes, there is no advantage in using \texttt{\textbackslash boxarrayclear}.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayclear \% clears 'default'
\boxarrayclear{myarray} \% clears 'myarray'
\end{verbatim}

20.2 Storing Content

\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/store to box array=(name)} (default default, initially unset)

Stores a \texttt{tcolorbox} or all parts of a break sequence of a \texttt{tcolorbox} into a box array \langle name \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing \texttt{default} box array is used. Otherwise, the box array has to be created beforehand with \texttt{\textbackslash newboxarray}. Note that the box has to be \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/breakable}, if the box shall break into several parts. Typically, manual break points are additionally defined by \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/break at}. Otherwise, the box parts will have a length of about \texttt{\textheight}. For most use cases, a \texttt{\textbackslash tcb/reset box array} should be applied to reset the box array counter.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced jigsaw,size=fbox,width=4cm,
  colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!10!black,
  enforce breakable,\% use only breakable in the real world!
  break at=7cm/4cm,
  height fixed for=all,
  watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart},
  reset box array,
  store to box array
]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{verbatim}
\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{2}
\useboxarray{3}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

If the first box part should fill the rest of the available space of the current page, you can use `\pagegoal-\pagetotal` minus some distance for the first element of `/tcb/break at` \textsuperscript{P.403}. You may want to have some additional distance to the preceding text.

\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,breakable, reset box array, store to box array, break at=\pagegoal-\pagetotal-5mm/0pt, height fixed for=first and middle]
\lipsum[1-15]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[blanker,width=4cm, fontupper=\footnotesize, enforce breakable,% use only breakable in the real world! break at=4cm, height fixed for=all, watermark text=\arabic{tcbbreakpart}, reset box array, store to box array]
\includegraphics[width=\linewidth]{Basilica_5.png}
\lipsum[1-2]
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcbitemize}[raster columns=3,raster equal height, size=small,halign=center,sharp corners,colback=blue!5]
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{5}
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{6}
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{1}
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{2}
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{3}
\tcbitem{\consumeboxarray}{4}
\end{tcbitemize}


/tcb/reset and store to box array \(=\) \langle name \rangle (style, default default, initially unset)

Combination of /tcb/reset box array \(\rightarrow\) P.426 and /tcb/store to box array \(\rightarrow\) P.427.

/tcb/do not store to box array (style, no default, initially set)

Disables the /tcb/store to box array \(\rightarrow\) P.427 option, if set before.

\begin{boxarraystore}\langle name \rangle \end{boxarraystore}

Stores the environment content into a box array \langle name \rangle. This corresponds to the standard \LaTeX{} environment \texttt{lrbox}, but the storage operation is global. As long as \texttt{\boxarrayreset} \(\rightarrow\) P.426 is not used, every new \texttt{\boxarraystore} adds a further box to the array.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarrayreset
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Mary}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Had}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{a}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Little}\end{boxarraystore}
\begin{boxarraystore}{default}\fbox{Lamb}\end{boxarraystore}
\useboxarray{5}\useboxarray{4}\useboxarray{3}\useboxarray{2}\useboxarray{1}\hfill
\useboxarray{1}\useboxarray{5}
\end{verbatim}

20.3 Retrieving Content

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetsize} \langle name \rangle \{ \langle macro \rangle \}

Stores the current size of a box array \langle name \rangle into a given \langle macro \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\boxarraygetsize{\mysize}
\foreach \n in {1,...,\mysize} { \useboxarray{\n} }
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\textbackslash useboxarray} \langle name \rangle \{ \langle index \rangle \}

Typesets the box with the given \langle index \rangle number from the box array \langle name \rangle. If no \langle name \rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name \rangle is used. It is silently ignored, if the \langle index \rangle is out of range. Note that \texttt{\useboxarray} corresponds to the standard \texttt{\usebox} macro, respectively, \texttt{\copy}.
\usetcboxarray\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Typesets the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle using \useboxarray \textsuperscript{P.429} as content of a \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14}. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. It is silently ignored, if the \langle index\rangle is out of range. The \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} can be customized by tcolorbox \langle options\rangle.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{code}
\boarraygetsize\{\mysize\}
\foreach \n in \{1,...,\mysize\} { \usetcboxarray\{\n\}\{on line,colframe=yellow, colback=yellow!10\} }
\end{code}
\end{tcolorbox}

\consecutewtcsboxarray\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}

Typesets the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. It is silently ignored, if the \langle index\rangle is out of range. In contrast to \useboxarray \textsuperscript{P.429}, \consecutewtcsboxarray corresponds to the standard \box macro, i.e. after typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\begin{code}
\boarraygetsize\{\mysize\}
\foreach \n in \{1,...,\mysize\} { \consecutewtcsboxarray\{\n\} }
\par
\end{code}
\end{tcolorbox}

\consumetcboxarray\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Typesets the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle using \consumetcboxarray as content of a \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14}. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. It is silently ignored, if the \langle index\rangle is out of range. The \tcbox \textsuperscript{P.14} can be customized by tcolorbox \langle options\rangle. After typesetting the box register is cleared and cannot be used again.

20.4 Box Dimensions

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetwidth[\langle name\rangle]{}\{\langle macro\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}}

Assigns the width of the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. If the \langle index\rangle is out of range, the \langle macro\rangle will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & width of box 1: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & width of box 2: \boxarraygetwidth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
width of box 1: 30.35799pt
width of box 2: 0pt

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetheight[\langle name\rangle]{}\{\langle macro\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}}

Assigns the height of the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. If the \langle index\rangle is out of range, the \langle macro\rangle will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & height of box 1: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & height of box 2: \boxarraygetheight{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
height of box 1: 9.89883pt
height of box 2: 0pt

\texttt{\textbackslash boxarraygetdepth[\langle name\rangle]{}\{\langle macro\rangle\}\{\langle index\rangle\}}

Assigns the depth of the box with the given \langle index\rangle number from the box array \langle name\rangle to a \langle macro\rangle. If no \langle name\rangle is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array \langle name\rangle is used. If the \langle index\rangle is out of range, the \langle macro\rangle will be set to 0pt.

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbox[size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5,on line,
reset and store to box array]{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray{1} & depth of box 1: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{1} \mylen \\
\useboxarray{2} & depth of box 2: \boxarraygetdepth{\mylen}{2} \mylen
\end{tabular}
\end{verbatim}

Test
depth of box 1: 3.69884pt
depth of box 2: 0pt
\boxarraygettotalheight\{⟨name⟩\}\{⟨macro⟩\}\{⟨index⟩\}

Assigns the total height of the box with the given ⟨index⟩ number from the box array ⟨name⟩ to a ⟨macro⟩. If no ⟨name⟩ is given, the already existing default box array is used. It is considered an error, if a not existing box array ⟨name⟩ is used. If the ⟨index⟩ is out of range, the ⟨macro⟩ will be set to 0pt.

--- continued from page 430 ---

for demonstration purposes. With the tools of this section, a magazine type document could be created, but this still needs a lot of manual control.

\boxarrayreset
\tcbox\{size=small,colframe=blue!20,colback=yellow!5, on line, store to box array\}{Test}
\begin{tabular}{ll}
\useboxarray\{1\} & total height of box 1: \boxarraygettotalheight\{\mylen\}\{1\} \mylen \\
\useboxarray\{2\} & total height of box 2: \boxarraygettotalheight\{\mylen\}\{2\} \mylen
\end{tabular}

Test
total height of box 1: 13.59767pt
total height of box 2: 0pt
20.5 Leaflet Example

The following full application example can be used to create leaflets. Obviously, the code can be adapted and customized in many ways.

\documentclass[a4paper,landscape]{article}
\usepackage[noheadfoot,margin=0pt]{geometry}
\usepackage[skins,raster,magazine]{tcolorbox}
\usepackage{lipsum}
\newenvironment{leaflet}{% 
  \begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,empty,colback=white, 
  sharp corners,size=minimal,left=10mm,right=10mm,top=10mm,bottom=10mm, 
  width=\textwidth/3, 
  breakable, 
  break at=\textwidth, 
  height fixed for=all, 
  reset box array, 
  store to box array,#1]}{\end{tcolorbox}}
\begin{document}
\begin{leaflet}[% 
  \begin{tcolorbox}[raster columns=3,raster equal skip=0pt,blankest] 
  \begin{tcbitemize} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{5\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{6\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{1\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{2\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{3\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{4\} 
  \end{tcbitemize} 
\end{tcolorbox} 
\}
\end{leaflet}
\pagestyle{empty}
\begin{document}
\begin{leaflet}[% \begin{tcolorbox}[raster columns=3,raster equal skip=0pt,blankest] 
  \begin{tcbitemize} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{5\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{6\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{1\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{2\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{3\} 
  \tcbitem\consumeboxarray\{4\} 
  \end{tcbitemize} 
\end{tcolorbox} 
\}
\begin{center}
\bfseries\LARGE Example
\end{center}
\section{Introduction}
\lipsum[1]
\section{Main Part A}
\lipsum[2-8]
\section{Main Part B}
\lipsum[9-15]
\section{Conclusion}
\lipsum[16-18]
\end{leaflet}
\end{document}

3 Main Part B

The main purpose of this library is to support creation of single page posters with \texttt{tcolorbox}es. A \texttt{tcbposter}\textsuperscript{\textendash}P.437 is a \texttt{tikzpicture} where \texttt{tcolorbox}es can be placed in a column oriented manner using \texttt{\Posterbox}\textsuperscript{\textendash}P.442 commands. This base concept is more or less copied from the great \texttt{baposter} package.

The \texttt{raster} library, see Section 16 on page 305, can produce similar looking results and may be more appropriate depending on the actual project.

- The \texttt{raster} library has a flow oriented concept, just like a conventional text flow. The text flow (box flow) is a merely endless ribbon which gets broken into lines (and paragraphs) and the lines are broken into pages. \texttt{raster} shapes the boxes to convenient sizes to fill lines and pages in a pleasant way.

- The \texttt{tcbposter} library supports a quite free placement of boxes inside a page. Basically, boxes are placed like \texttt{nodes} are placed inside a \texttt{tikzpicture}. In contrast to \texttt{raster}, this is a \textit{single} page and not a flow of pages. The poster is divided into columns and rows. There is a more or less gentle force to use the columns (or spans of columns) for positioning and sizing while the row placement is completely optional.

The creation of this library was motivated by Ignasi.

\begin{itemize}
\item Inside a \texttt{tikzpicture} there should be no embedded \texttt{tikzpicture}s. This rule is violated by the \texttt{poster} library. Be aware that there may be some unwanted interactions between the main \texttt{tikzpicture} and the embedded ones inside the \texttt{tcolorbox}es.
\end{itemize}

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{poster}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the libraries \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 169, \texttt{breakable}, see Section 19 on page 399, \texttt{magazine}, see Section 20 on page 426, and \texttt{fitting}, see Section 22 on page 450.

21.1 Overview

You get the best overview of the \texttt{poster} library and its facilities, if you look at the \textbf{Poster Tutorial} which is part of the \texttt{tcolorbox} documentation:

\url{tcolorbox-tutorial-poster.pdf}
\begin{tcbposter}[(options)]
\begin{environment content}
\end{tcbposter}

This creates a \texttt{tikzpicture} environment with suitable additional settings defined by the given \texttt{(options)}. Basically, \texttt{posterbox} \textsuperscript{P.442} and \texttt{posterboxenv} \textsuperscript{P.442} are used to place \texttt{tcolorboxes} as nodes into the environment, but additional \LaTeX{} code can also be used.

As \texttt{(options)} all \texttt{/tcb/posterset/} keys may be applied, namely:

- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/poster} \textsuperscript{P.439}: poster settings like columns, rows, sizes...
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage} \textsuperscript{P.440} and \texttt{/tcb/posterset/no coverage} \textsuperscript{P.440}: settings for a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} for background and margins.
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/boxes} \textsuperscript{P.441}: style of the \texttt{tcolorboxes} used for the poster.
- \texttt{/tcb/posterset/fontsize} \textsuperscript{P.441}: scaling of used fonts.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=10cm,spacing=2mm},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},

\posterbox{name=A,column=3,row=2}{My first box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Second box]{name=B,column=2,span=2,below=A}{My second box}
\posterbox[adjusted title=Third box]{name=C,column=2,between=B and bottom}{My third box}
\end{tcbposter}
Inside \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437}, there are several predefined \texttt{TikZ} nodes. These nodes share a common \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \textsuperscript{P.439} which is \texttt{TCBPOSTER@} by default. This prefix is used to discriminate the poster nodes from local nodes of any embedded \texttt{tikzpicture} environment. You will never need this prefix using \texttt{\posterbox} \textsuperscript{P.442} and its placement options, but if you want to refer to a predefined node using pure \texttt{TikZ} code. The predefined nodes (shown without prefix) are:

- \texttt{poster}: defines the bounding box of the poster (without the coverage).
- \texttt{top}: top position plus row spacing
- \texttt{bottom}: bottom position minus row spacing
- \texttt{middle}: vertical middle position
- \texttt{col1, col2, ...}: bounding box of column 1, column 2, ...
- \texttt{row1, row2, ...}: bounding box of row 1, row 2, ...

Further nodes are defined using the \texttt{/tcb/posterloc/name} \textsuperscript{P.443} option.

\begin{itemize}
  \item Never use a \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437}. But, if you do anyway, use a different \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix} \textsuperscript{P.439} for the embedded poster or you surely get a total mess.
\end{itemize}

There are several properties inside a \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} which may be useful for advanced code (skip the following on first reading):

- \texttt{\tcbposterwidth}: Width of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbposterheight}: Height of the poster (without margins).
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolspacing}: Column distance.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowspacing}: Row distance.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolumns}: Column quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrows}: Row quantity.
- \texttt{\tcbpostercolwidth}: Width of a column.
- \texttt{\tcbposterrowheight}: Height of a row.

\begin{tcbposter}{⟨options⟩}
\end{tcbposter}

Sets options for every following \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} inside the current \TeX{} group. For example, the numbers for rows and columns may be defined for the whole document by this:

\begin{tcbposter}{poster={columns=2,rows=3}}
\end{tcbposter}

See \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} for all feasible options.
21.3 Poster Settings

This option can be applied inside \tcbposter\textsuperscript{P.437} and \tcbposterset\textsuperscript{P.438} to set the given poster \textit{(option list)}, e.g.

\begin{tcbposter}
\texttt{poster=\{showframe,columns=5,rows=2,spacing=1mm,height=4cm\},}
\end{tcbposter}

For the \textit{(option list)}, see the following keys.

\texttt{poster=\{option list\}}

\texttt{(style, no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially 3)}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially 4)}

\texttt{(no default, initially 4mm)}

\texttt{(no default, initially 4mm)}

\texttt{(no default, initially 4mm)}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})}

\texttt{(no default, initially \texttt{false})
21.4 Coverage

\texttt{/tcb/posterset/coverage\{\langle option\ list\ \rangle\}}  \hspace{1em}  \text{(style, no default)}

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} and \texttt{\tcbposterset} \textsuperscript{P.438} and it adds an optional coverage for the poster which is a surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} with the given \langle option\ list\ \rangle. Here, margins and background settings for the poster can be given. The \texttt{coverage} has several default \texttt{tcolorbox} settings suitable for the purpose:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{enhanced, frame hidden, sharp corners, boxsep=0pt, boxrule=0pt, top=4mm, bottom=4mm, left=4mm, right=4mm, topmargin=2mm, bottommargin=2mm, colback=white}
\end{itemize}

The \langle option\ list\ \rangle can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}
  \begin{optionlist}
    \item poster = \{showframe, spacing=1mm\},
    \item coverage = \{height=5cm,
      "interior style={top color=yellow, bottom color=yellow!50!red},
      watermark text={My Poster}, watermark color=white,\}
  \end{optionlist}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{verbatim}

- For a typical poster, the option \texttt{/tcb/spread} \textsuperscript{P.100} will use the whole page for the poster coverage.
- Poster margins can be adapted by \texttt{/tcb/left} \textsuperscript{P.45}, \texttt{/tcb/right} \textsuperscript{P.46}, \texttt{/tcb/top} \textsuperscript{P.48}, \texttt{/tcb/bottom} \textsuperscript{P.49}.
- Poster background can be changed by \texttt{/tcb/colback} \textsuperscript{P.33}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style} \textsuperscript{P.170}, \texttt{/tcb/interior style image} \textsuperscript{P.171}, etc.
- Do not use \texttt{/tcb/poster/width} \textsuperscript{P.439} and \texttt{/tcb/poster/height} \textsuperscript{P.439} in combination with a \texttt{coverage}. Note that you may use \texttt{/tcb/width} \textsuperscript{P.40} and \texttt{/tcb/height} \textsuperscript{P.59} inside the \texttt{coverage} \langle option\ list\ \rangle. Note that this also is not necessary when \texttt{/tcb/spread} \textsuperscript{P.100} is applied.

\texttt{/tcb/posterset/no coverage}  \hspace{1em}  \text{(style, no value, initially set)}

Removes the surrounding \texttt{tcolorbox} completely.
21.5 Common Box Settings

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} and \texttt{\tcbposterset} \textsuperscript{P.438} and it is used to set up the style of the \texttt{tcolorbox}es inside the poster. The \texttt{(option list)} can contain any \texttt{tcolorbox} option, but box size options are not assumed to be useful here, because the size will be determined by the placement options.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
coverage = {height=5cm,  
interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},  
},  
boxes = {sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,  
colback=white,colframe=cyan,  
title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},  
fonttitle=\bfseries}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{First} & \textbf{Third} \\
\hline
First box & Third box \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\textbf{Second} &  \\
\hline
Second box &  \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

21.6 Font Scaling

This option can be applied inside \texttt{tcbposter} \textsuperscript{P.437} and \texttt{\tcbposterset} \textsuperscript{P.438}. It uses \texttt{/tcb/fit basedim} \textsuperscript{P.456} and \texttt{/tcb/fit fontsize macros} \textsuperscript{P.457} to redefine \texttt{\normalsize} to \texttt{(length)} and all other standard font size macros like \texttt{\small} and \texttt{\large} accordingly. This needs a freely scalable font family like \texttt{lmodern} to work. If \texttt{/tcb/posterset/fontsize} is not applied, there standard font size macros are not changed in any way.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {spacing=2mm,columns=3,rows=2},
coverage = {height=5cm,  
interior style={top color=yellow,bottom color=yellow!50!red},  
},  
boxes = {sharp corners=downhill,arc=3mm,boxrule=1mm,  
colback=white,colframe=cyan,  
title style={left color=black,right color=cyan},  
fonttitle=\bfseries  
fontsize = 15pt,  
% \texttt{\normalsize} is now 15pt
\end{tcbposter}
21.7 Box Placement

Inside a \texttt{tcbposter} environment, this places a \texttt{tcolorbox} with additional \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(options)} and the given \texttt{(box content)} at a place determined by \texttt{(placement)}. All \texttt{(placement)} options are described in the following. Note that \texttt{(box content)} cannot contain \texttt{verbatim} material, see \texttt{posterboxenv}.

\begin{tcbposter}[poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]\posterbox[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,row=2}{My first box}
\end{tcbposter}

This is the environment version of \texttt{posterbox}, i.e. inside a \texttt{tcbposter} environment, this places a \texttt{tcolorbox} with additional \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{(options)} and the given \texttt{(environment content)} at a place determined by \texttt{(placement)}. In contrast to \texttt{posterbox}, the \texttt{(environment content)} is allowed to contain \texttt{verbatim} material. Note that the implementation of \texttt{posterbox} is more efficient than the implementation of \texttt{posterboxenv}.

\begin{tcbposter}[poster = {showframe,height=4cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {size=small,beamer,
colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
]\begin{posterboxenv}[title=My title]{name=A,column=2,between=top and bottom}
My first box.
\texttt{\begin{tcblisting}{size=small,colback=yellow!10}}
My \textbf{first} poster listing.
\end{tcblisting}}
\end{posterboxenv}
\end{tcbposter}
Sets \( \langle name \rangle \) as reference for the current \texttt{poster}^\textsuperscript{P.442} or \texttt{posterboxenv}^\textsuperscript{P.442}. A TikZ shape name is constructed automatically as combination of \texttt{/tcb/poster/prefix}^\textsuperscript{P.439} and \( \langle name \rangle \).

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{poster} &= \{\text{showframe, height=2.5cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}, \\
\text{boxes} &= \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \\
\end{align*}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{posterbox}(name=A, column=2, row=2)\{My \text{ first box}\} \\
\text{node}[below right=4mm, fill=yellow] \ (X) \ at \ (TCBPOSTER@poster.north west) \ (Example \ A); \\
\text{draw}[blue, very thick, ->] \ (X) \ |- \ (TCBPOSTER@A); \\
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{poster} &= \{\text{showframe, height=2.5cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}, \\
\text{boxes} &= \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \\
\end{align*}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{posterbox}(row=1, column=2, span=2)\{First \ text{ box}\} \\
\text{posterbox}(row=2, column=2, span=0.8)\{Second \ box\} \\
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{poster} &= \{\text{showframe, height=2.5cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}, \\
\text{boxes} &= \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \\
\end{align*}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{align*}
\text{posterbox}(row=1, column*=2, span=2)\{First \ box\} \\
\text{posterbox}(row=2, column*=2, span=0.8)\{Second \ box\} \\
\end{tcbposter}
/tcb/posterloc/span=⟨number⟩

Sets the width of the current box to span ⟨number⟩ columns. ⟨number⟩ is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7. See /tcb/posterloc/column→P.443 and /tcb/posterloc/column*→P.443 for examples.

/tcb/posterloc/row=⟨number⟩

(no default, initially unset)

If this option is applied, the box is placed at the row denoted by ⟨number⟩. Also, the height is set as fixed according to /tcb/posterloc/rowspan.

/tcb/posterloc/rowspan=⟨number⟩

(no default, initially 1)

Sets the height of the current box to span ⟨number⟩ rows. ⟨number⟩ is also allowed to be a real number like 0.5 or 1.7.

/tcb/posterloc/fixed height

(no value, initially 0pt)

Sets the height of the current box span rows as denoted by /tcb/posterloc/rowspan. This can be used, if not /tcb/posterloc/row, but another height placement option is applied.
The box is placed below another box with the given \texttt{name}. Also, \texttt{name} can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 437.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{poster} & = & \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \\
\text{boxes} & = & \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \\
\end{array}\]
\begin{tcbboxes}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=A, column=1, below=top}\}{\text{First box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=B, column=1, below=A}\}{\text{Second box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=C, column=2, below=B}\}{\text{Third box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=D, column=3, below=row1}\}{\text{Fourth box}} \\
\end{array}
\end{tcbboxes}
\end{tcbposter}

The box is placed above another box with the given \texttt{name}. Also, \texttt{name} can be a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 437.

\begin{tcbposter}
\[\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{poster} & = & \{\text{showframe, height=3cm, spacing=2mm, rows=2}\}, \\
\text{boxes} & = & \{\text{beamer, colframe=blue!50!black, colback=blue!50, colupper=yellow!50}\}, \\
\end{array}\]
\begin{tcbboxes}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=A, column=1, above=bottom}\}{\text{First box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=B, column=1, above=A}\}{\text{Second box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=C, column=2, above=B}\}{\text{Third box}} \\
\text{posterbox}\{\text{name=D, column=3, above=row2}\}{\text{Fourth box}} \\
\end{array}
\end{tcbboxes}
\end{tcbposter}
The box is placed at the position with the given \textit{name}. This is quite likely a predefined node, see Section 21.2 on page 437.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}
The box is broken into partial boxes. These partial boxes are placed following the given \(\text{sequence}\) of placements. The feasible syntax for the \(\text{sequence}\) is:

\[
\langle \text{column a} \rangle \text{ between } \langle \text{name a1} \rangle \text{ and } \langle \text{name a2} \rangle \text{ then } \\
\langle \text{column b} \rangle \text{ between } \langle \text{name b1} \rangle \text{ and } \langle \text{name b2} \rangle \text{ then } \\
\langle \text{column c} \rangle \text{ between } \langle \text{name c1} \rangle \text{ and } \langle \text{name c2} \rangle \text{ then...}
\]

Obviously, this places the first part box at \(\langle \text{column a} \rangle \) between \(\langle \text{name a1} \rangle \) and \(\langle \text{name a2} \rangle \). The second box part is placed at \(\langle \text{column b} \rangle \) between \(\langle \text{name b1} \rangle \) and \(\langle \text{name b2} \rangle \), and so on.
If the box content of a `/tcb/posterloc/sequence` is too short to fill all reserved box parts, the empty boxes are drawn with the `/tcb/placeholder` style. This style can be redefined, e.g. to `/tcb/blankest`, if nothing should be drawn for empty boxes.

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=2.5cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{tcbposter}
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\end{tcbposter}

/\texttt{tcb/posterloc/xshift=\langle length\rangle}/ (no default, initially \texttt{0pt})

Horizontal shift of a box by \texttt{\langle length\rangle}.
Vertical shift of a box by \( \langle \text{length} \rangle \).

\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{filecontents}{test.tex}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}\[
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,row=1,yshift=-4mm}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,row=2,yshift=4mm}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{filecontents}
\end{tcbposter}

\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
\begin{tcbposter}
\begin{Verbatim}
\begin{tcbposter}\[
poster = {showframe,height=3cm,spacing=2mm,rows=2},
boxes = {beamer,colframe=blue!50!black,colback=blue!50,colupper=yellow!50},
\]
\posterbox{name=A,column=1,row=1,yshift=-4mm}{First box}
\posterbox{name=B,column=2,row=2,yshift=4mm}{Second box}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{Verbatim}
\end{tcbposter}
\end{center}
\end{figure}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\[ \tcbuselibrary{fitting} \]

### 22.1 Macros of the Library

\[ \tcbfit[\{\text{options}\}]{\{\text{box content}\}} \]

Creates a colored box where the given \textit{(box content)} is fitted to the width and height of the box. A \texttt{tcbfit} has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. In principle, most \textit{(options)} for a \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} can be used for \texttt{tcbfit} with some restrictions. A \texttt{tcbfit} cannot have a lower part and cannot be broken.
\textbf{\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim}} \hspace{1cm} \textit{(read-only \LaTeX{} length)}

This is a \LaTeX{} length adapted automatically by most variants of \texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.461}}}. Therefore, it never is to be changed by the user, but may be applied read-only. The \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim} corresponds to the font size and may also be used to calculate box margins or other distances in dependency. The initial and maximum value for \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim} is set by \texttt{/tcb/fit basedim}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.456}}}.

\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{\langle factor\rangle\}}

Selects a font size inside a \texttt{tcolorbox} which is scaled with the given \langle factor\rangle relative to \texttt{\textbackslash tcbfitdim}. Also see \texttt{/tcb/fit fontsize macros}\textsuperscript{\textsuperscript{\texttt{\textbackslash P.457}}}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.25\} Very tiny,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.5\} Small,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{1\} Normal,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{2\} Large,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{4\} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit basedim=10pt, fit to height=2cm]
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.25\} Very tiny,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{0.5\} Small,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{1\} Normal,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{2\} Large,}\n\texttt{\textbackslash tcbfontsize\{4\} Huge.}
\end{tcolorbox}
22.2 Producing \texttt{tcolorbox} Commands

\texttt{newtcolorbox}\{\texttt{init options}\} \{\texttt{name}\} \{\texttt{number}\} \{\texttt{default}\} \{\texttt{options}\}

Creates a new \texttt{macro} \texttt{name} based on \texttt{tcolorbox}. Basically, \texttt{newtcolorbox} operates like \texttt{newcommand}. The new \texttt{macro} \texttt{name} optionally takes \texttt{number}+1 arguments, where \texttt{default} is the default value for the optional first argument. The \texttt{options} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcolorbox}. The \texttt{init options} allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

```
newtcolorbox{mybox}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,width=4cm, height=1.5cm, halign=center}
mybox{This is my own box.}\par
mybox{This is my own box with more text to be written.}
```

```
\usenewtcolorbox{mybox}{2}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, boxsep=1mm,left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm, bottom=0mm,halign=center,valign=center, nobeforeafter,width=#1,height=#2}

\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{First box}
\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{Second box with more text}
\mybox{5cm}{2cm}{Third box with text}
\mybox{5cm}{3cm}{\lipsum[1]}
```

```
\usenewtcolorbox{mybox}{2}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,width=\texttt{number},height=\texttt{number}/3*2,\texttt{default}}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}
\mybox{\lipsum[2]}
```

```
\usenewtcolorbox{mybox}{2}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=\texttt{number}/2, height=\texttt{number}/2*3*2,\texttt{default}}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}{\lipsum[2]}
```

```
\renewtcolorbox\{\texttt{init options}\} \{\texttt{name}\} \{\texttt{number}\} \{\texttt{default}\} \{\texttt{options}\}

Operates like \texttt{newtcolorbox}, but based on \texttt{renewcommand} instead of \texttt{newcommand}. An existing \texttt{macro} is redefined.

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox[reset counter]{mybox}{2}{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, boxsep=1mm,left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm, bottom=0mm,halign=center,valign=center, nobeforeafter,width=#1,height=#2}

\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{First box}
\mybox{2.5cm}{1cm}{Second box with more text}
\mybox{5cm}{2cm}{Third box with text}
\mybox{5cm}{3cm}{\lipsum[1]}

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox[reset counter]{mybox}[2]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries, boxsep=1mm,left=0mm,right=0mm,top=0mm, bottom=0mm,halign=center,valign=center, nobeforeafter,width=#1,height=#2}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}{\lipsum[2]}

% \usepackage{lipsum}
\newtcolorbox[reset counter]{mybox}[2][2][]{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=\texttt{number}/2, height=\texttt{number}/2*3*2,\texttt{default}}

\mybox[colback=yellow]{5cm}{\lipsum[2]}

452
\NewTCBoxFit\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Creates a new command \langle name\rangle based on \tcboxfit\textsuperscript{P.450}. Basically, \NewTCBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name\rangle is constructed with the given argument (\langle specification\rangle). An error is issued if \langle name\rangle has already been defined. The \langle options\rangle are given to the underlying \tcboxfit\textsuperscript{P.450}.

Note that /tcb/savedelimiter\textsuperscript{P.32} is set to the given \langle name\rangle automatically. The \langle init options\rangle allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\ renew environments

\usepackage{lipsum}
\NewTCBoxFit\{\mybox\}\{O{} m !o\}\{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, width=#2,height=#2/3*2, IfValueT={#3}{height=#3}, #1\}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}\%\{\lipsum[2]\}
\mybox[colback=yellow]{6cm}[4cm]\{\lipsum[2]\}

\RenewTCBoxFit\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \RenewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTCBoxFit\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \langle name\rangle is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTCBoxFit\{\langle init options\rangle\}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle specification\rangle\}\{\langle options\rangle\}

Operates like \NewTCBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command \langle name\rangle is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.

453
\NewTotalTBoxFit\{\langle init options⟩\}\{\langle name⟩\}\{\langle specification⟩\}\{\langle options⟩\}\{\langle content⟩\}

Creates a new command \langle name⟩ based on \texttt{\textit{tcbfit}}\texttt{\textit{P.450}}. In contrast to \NewTBoxFit\texttt{\textit{P.453}}, also the \langle content⟩ of the \texttt{tcbfit} is specified. Basically, \NewTotalTBoxFit operates like \NewDocumentCommand. This means, the new command \langle name⟩ is constructed with the given argument \langle specification⟩. An error is issued if \langle name⟩ has already been defined. The \langle options⟩ are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbfit}\texttt{\textit{P.450}} which is filled with the specified \langle content⟩.

Note that /\texttt{tcb}/\texttt{savedelimiter}\texttt{\textit{P.32}} is set to the given \langle name⟩ automatically. The \langle init options⟩ allow setting up automatic numbering, see Section 5 from page 125.

\begin{verbatim}
% \usepackage{lipsum}
\NewTotalTBoxFit{\multibox}{\{\life}{0{10} \life}{m}}
{\nobeforeafter,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,\width=\#2,\height=\#2/3*2,\valign=center,\#1}
{\par
\if\textwidth
\life\in\{1,...,\#3\} \life\#4\}
\multibox{5cm}{I shall not repeat.}
\multibox[\colframe=blue!75\life\!white]{5cm}{20}{I shall not repeat.}\\
\multibox[\colback=yellow,\height=5cm]{14cm}{100}{I shall not repeat.}
\end{verbatim}

\ReNewTotalTBoxFit\{\langle init options⟩\}\{\langle name⟩\}\{\langle specification⟩\}\{\langle options⟩\}\{\langle content⟩\}

Operates like \NewTotalTBoxFit, but based on \ReNewDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. An existing command is redefined.

\ProvideTotalTBoxFit\{\langle init options⟩\}\{\langle name⟩\}\{\langle specification⟩\}\{\langle options⟩\}\{\langle content⟩\}

Operates like \NewTotalTBoxFit, but based on \ProvideDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The command \langle name⟩ is only created if it is not already defined.

\DeclareTotalTBoxFit\{\langle init options⟩\}\{\langle name⟩\}\{\langle specification⟩\}\{\langle options⟩\}\{\langle content⟩\}

Operates like \NewTotalTBoxFit, but based on \DeclareDocumentCommand instead of \NewDocumentCommand. The new command \langle name⟩ is always created, irrespective of an already existing command with the same name.
22.3 Option Keys of the Library

The font size for the content of a box with fixed width and fixed height can be adjusted automatically. This is called the fitbox capture mode. Note that the fit control algorithm constructs a series of versions for the box and selects the “best”. Therefore, the compilation time is quite longer than for a normal box. The \tcboxfit\textsuperscript{P.450} macro uses this algorithm by default.

The fit control keys are only applicable to unbreakable boxes without a lower part. The box content should not change counters.

\tcboxfit

Sets the /tcb/capture \textsuperscript{P.106} mode to fitbox, i.e. enables the font size adjustment algorithm. Thereby, a tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12} acts like \tcboxfit \textsuperscript{P.450} where the given \textit{box content} is fitted to the width and height of the box. Therefore, the box has to have a fixed height. If no fixed height is given, a square box is constructed. The font dimension \tcboxfitdim \textsuperscript{P.451} can also be used to adjust the margins of the box since a box with a tiny font may not need large margins. The number of constructed boxes is saved to the macro \tcboxfitsteps for analysis.

\begin{fitting}{4cm}
\lipsum[1]
\end{fitting}
\begin{fitting}{2cm}
\lipsum[2]
\end{fitting}
\begin{fitting}{1cm}
\lipsum[3]
\end{fitting}
/tcb/fit \texttt{to=(width) and (height)}

Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{P.455} and setting the \texttt{(width)} and \texttt{(height)} values separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=3cm and 2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given dimensions.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fit \texttt{to height=(height)}

Shortcut for using \texttt{/tcb/fit}\textsuperscript{P.455} and setting the \texttt{(height)} value separately.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to height=2cm]
This box content is fitted to the given height.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fit \texttt{basedim=(length)}

Sets the starting font dimension for the font size adjustment algorithm to \texttt{(length)}. The algorithm never enlarges this dimension. Therefore, the final \texttt{/tcb/fit dim}\textsuperscript{P.451} is identical to or small than \texttt{(length)}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=4cm and 2cm, fit basedim=50pt]
Enough words for the box.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/fit \texttt{skip=(real value)}

Sets the skip value of the selected font to \texttt{(real value)} times \texttt{/tcb/fit dim}\textsuperscript{P.451}.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit to=5cm and 4cm, fit skip=1.0 ]
\lipsum[1]
\end{tcolorbox}
Redefines the standard \LaTeX\ font size macros \tiny, \scriptsize, \footnotesize, \small, \normalsize, \large, \Large, \huge, and \Huge, to set font sizes relative to the current \tcbfitdimm\footnote{P.451}. Note that the display skip values for mathematical formulas are respected by the redefined macros. Also see \tcbfontsize\footnote{P.451}.

This text is not adapted:

This text is adapted:

The relative relative font size macros are also usable without the \textit{fit} algorithm.

Adapted Huge – Original Huge

Adapted title
The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed height up to the given \(<dimension>\), before a font size fit is applied. An optional \texttt{/tcb/fit width plus} is tried after the height adaption.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit height plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}

The box is allowed to enlarge the fixed width up to the given \(<dimension>\), before a font size fit is applied. An optional \texttt{/tcb/fit height plus} is tried before the width adaption.

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,fit width plus=1cm]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}
Typically but not necessarily, the optional title of a \texttt{tcolorbox} is not part of the fit operation. If a \texttt{/tcb/fit width plus} is applied, the title is also adapted to the new width. If counters are increased inside the title text, they may be increased more than one time. To avoid this, you are encouraged to use \texttt{/tcb/phantom} \textsuperscript{P.111} or \texttt{/tcb/step and label} \textsuperscript{P.112} to set counters or use automatic numbering, see Subsection 5.1 from page 125.

\texttt{/tcb/fit width from=\langle min\rangle to \langle max\rangle} \hfill (style, no default)

Sets the box width to \langle min\rangle and allows the width to grow up to \langle max\rangle.

\begin{verbatim}
\% \usepackage{lipsum}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,left=1mm,top=1mm,bottom=1mm, right=1mm,boxsep=0mm,height=4cm}

\begin{tcolorbox}[fit,width=\linewidth/2]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\begin{tcolorbox}[fit width from=\linewidth/2 to \linewidth]
\lipsum[2]
\end{tcolorbox}\par
\end{verbatim}
Sets the box height to \( \text{min} \) and allows the height to grow up to \( \text{max} \).

\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox. This is a tcolorbox.
\end{mybox}
\begin{mybox}
\lipsum[2]
\end{mybox}
Sets the algorithm for the fitting process after optionally width and height are adapted. In the following, adapting the font size means adapting \textbf{\texttt{tcbfitdim}} \textsuperscript{+P.451}. Feasible values for \texttt{name} are:

- **fontsize** (initial): The algorithm is a bisection method that adapts the font size until certain stop conditions are fulfilled. This is the most time-consuming method but it is robust and gives pleasant results.

  The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text is not scaled down. The aspect ratio is fully guaranteed.

- **fontsize\*:** First, the \texttt{fontsize} algorithm is applied. If the font was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **areysize**:\ The algorithm calculates the area size for the text without scaling the font. The text box is shaped for the needed aspect ratio in one or two steps. Finally, it is scaled down with a standard \texttt{\resizebox} macro.

  The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **areysize\*:** The \texttt{areysize} algorithm is applied, but if the content was scaled down and the resulting height is too small, the box is squeezed to fit the area.

  The used font has not to be scalable. Every box content is scaled down. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **hybrid**: First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areysize} fitting as above is applied.

  The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **hybrid\*:** First, this algorithm estimates the needed font size in one or two steps. Then an \texttt{areysize\*} fitting as above is applied.

  The used font has to be freely scalable for this method! Other content than text may be slightly rescaled. The aspect ratio cannot be fully guaranteed.

- **squeeze**: The text box is brutally scaled down to fit.

  The aspect ratio is very likely to be horrible. You should not use this method for final documents.
Quality ......................................... versus ......................................... Speed

Quality 

fontsize

hybrid

areasize

squeeze

Quality 

dotfill versus 
dotfill Speed

fontsize

hybrid

areasize
The following options set control parameters for the fit algorithm. Mainly, they apply
to the \texttt{fontsize} variant, see \texttt{/tcb/fit algorithm} \cite{p.461}. The options should be seen as
experimental and are likely to change in future versions, if necessary.

\begin{verbatim}
/tcb/fit maxstep=⟨number⟩ (no default, initially 20)
Sets the maximal step size for the font size adjustment algorithm. In normal situations,
the algorithm stops before reaching the initial value of 20 steps. If the box content does not
shrink, this value prevents an endless loop.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiff=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 0.1pt)
The algorithm stops, if the font size is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxfontdiffgap=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 1pt)
The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the font size is determined
within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiff=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 1pt)
The algorithm stops, if the (optionally) flexible box width is determined within a deviation
of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit maxwidthdiffgap=⟨dimension⟩ (no default, initially 10pt)
The algorithm stops, if the number of lines is determined and the (optionally) flexible box
width is determined within a deviation of ⟨dimension⟩.

/tcb/fit warning=⟨value⟩ (no default, initially off)
Typically, the fit control algorithm constructs several auxiliary boxes to determine the
optimal one. If not switched off, the construction of the auxiliary boxes may produce many
\texttt{hbox} warnings. This option key changes the \texttt{\hbadness} value.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{off}: Most of \texttt{\ Underfull \ hbox} and \texttt{\ Overfull \ hbox} warnings are switched off
    (including the ones for the finally used box).
  \item \texttt{on}: All warnings for all auxiliary boxes are displayed.
  \item \texttt{final}: Only warnings for the finally used box are displayed. Note that an additional
    box has to be constructed for these messages.
\end{itemize}
\end{verbatim}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\cbuselibrary{hooks}

For the skin related options, the library \skins has to be loaded separately.

### 23.1 Concept of Hooks

A hook is a placeholder in some \LaTeX code where additional code can be added. For example, the \LaTeX macro \texttt{\AtBeginDocument} adds code to a hook which is placed at the beginning of every document.

Several option keys of \tcolorbox allow providing some code which is added to specific places of a colored box. For example, /tcb/before upper \textsuperscript{P.71} places code before the content of the upper part. A following usage of this key overwrites any prior settings.

The library \hooks extends /tcb/before upper \textsuperscript{P.71} and several more existing keys to “hookable” versions, e.g. /tcb/before upper app \textsuperscript{P.465} and /tcb/before upper pre \textsuperscript{P.465}. The “hookable” keys don’t overwrite prior settings but either \texttt{append} or \texttt{prepend} the newly given code to the existing code.

The general naming convention (with some small exceptions) is:

- \texttt{(option key) app}: works like \texttt{(option key)} but \texttt{app}ends its code to the existing code.
- \texttt{(option key) pre}: works like \texttt{(option key)} but \texttt{pre}pends its code to the existing code.

If the original \texttt{(option key)} is used (again), all code will be overwritten. Therefore, the order of the option key usage is crucial.

\begin{tcolorbox}[title=My table]
\begin{tabular}{|Y||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
\hline
\textbf{Group} & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
\hline
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
\hline
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{tcolorbox}
23.2 Box Content Additions

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.11 from page 70.

/\text{tcb}/\text{before title app}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{before title}\quad\text{ after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{before title pre}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{before title}\quad\text{ after the color and font settings and before the content of the title.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{after title app}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{after title}\quad\text{ after the content of the title.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{after title pre}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{after title}\quad\text{ after the content of the title.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{before upper app}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{before upper}\quad\text{ or /\text{tcb}/\text{before upper}*\quad\text{ after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{before upper pre}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{before upper}\quad\text{ or /\text{tcb}/\text{before upper}*\quad\text{ after the color and font settings and before the content of the upper part.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{after upper app}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{after upper}\quad\text{ or /\text{tcb}/\text{after upper}*\quad\text{ after the content of the upper part.}

/\text{tcb}/\text{after upper pre}{\langle\text{code}\rangle}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends the given \langle\text{code}\rangle to /\text{tcb}/\text{after upper}\quad\text{ or /\text{tcb}/\text{after upper}*\quad\text{ after the content of the upper part.}

```latex
\begin{tcolorbox}[
\text{ams align,}\%
this sets `before upper*' and `after upper*'\n\text{colback=yellow!10!white,\text{colframe=red!50!black,\n\text{before upper app={\frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}&=\sqrt{2}.\}},\n\text{after upper pre={\frac{\pi}{2}}&=1.\}},\]
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} &= \infty.\quad(23)\n∫ x^2 \, dx &= \frac13 x^3 + c.\quad(24)\nsin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) &= 1.\quad(25)
\end{tcolorbox}
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/before lower app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given \texttt{(code)} to \texttt{/tcb/before lower}\textsuperscript{P.73} or \texttt{/tcb/before lower*}\textsuperscript{P.73} after the color and font settings and \texttt{before} the content of the lower part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/before lower pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given \texttt{(code)} to \texttt{/tcb/before lower}\textsuperscript{P.73} or \texttt{/tcb/before lower*}\textsuperscript{P.73} after the color and font settings and \texttt{before} the content of the lower part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/after lower app</code></td>
<td>Appends the given \texttt{(code)} to \texttt{/tcb/after lower}\textsuperscript{P.74} or \texttt{/tcb/after lower*}\textsuperscript{P.74} after the content of the lower part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>/tcb/after lower pre</code></td>
<td>Prepends the given \texttt{(code)} to \texttt{/tcb/after lower}\textsuperscript{P.74} or \texttt{/tcb/after lower*}\textsuperscript{P.74} after the content of the lower part.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.3 Embedding into the Surroundings

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.14 from page 87.

The “hookable” versions are usable inside the document. In the preamble, they can only be used after explicit setting of /tcb/before \(\text{P.87}\) and /tcb/after \(\text{P.87}\) or by e.g. /tcb/parskip \(\text{P.91}\).

/tcb/before app=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before \(\text{P.87}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/before pre=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before \(\text{P.87}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/after app=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after \(\text{P.87}\) after the colored box.

/tcb/after pre=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after \(\text{P.87}\) after the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
[title=My title,before app={The box follows:\[4pt\]},
 after app={This is the end.}]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

/tcb/before float app=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before float \(\text{P.86}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/before float pre=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/before float \(\text{P.86}\) before the colored box.

/tcb/after float app=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Appends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after float \(\text{P.86}\) after the colored box.

/tcb/after float pre=\langle code \rangle (no default)

Prepends the given \langle code \rangle to /tcb/after float \(\text{P.86}\) after the colored box.
23.4 Overlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 4.12 from page 80.

\[\text{/tcb/overlay app=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to /tcb/overlay\[^{+P.80}\].

\[
\% \text{\usepackage[patterns]{tikz}} \%
\% \text{\usepackage[skins]{tikz}} \%
\tcbsset{frogbox/.style={enhanced, colback=green!10, colframe=green!65!black, enlarge top by=5.5mm, overlay={\foreach \x in {2cm,3.5cm} { \begin{scope}[shift={([xshift=\x]frame.north west)}] \path[draw=green!65!black,fill=green!10, line width=1mm] (0,0) arc (0:180:5mm); \path[fill=black] (-0.2,0) arc (0:180:1mm); \end{scope}}}}}
\tcbsset{ribbon/.style={overlay app=\%\path[fill=blue!75!white, draw=blue, double=white!85!blue, preaction={opacity=0.6, fill=blue!75!white}, line width=0.1mm, double distance=0.2mm, pattern=fivpointed stars, pattern color=white!75!blue] ([xshift=-0.2mm, yshift=-1.02cm]frame.north east) -- ++(-1,1) -- ++(-0.5,0) -- ++(1.5,-1.5) -- cycle;}}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox, title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox, ribbon, title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox, title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[frogbox, ribbon, title=My title]
This is a \textbf{tcolorbox}.
\end{tcolorbox}

\[\text{/tcb/overlay pre=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay}\[^{+P.80}\).

\[\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken app=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken}\[^{+P.81}\).

\[\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken pre=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken}\[^{+P.81}\).

\[\text{/tcb/overlay first app=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Appends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay first}\[^{+P.81}\).

\[\text{/tcb/overlay first pre=⟨graphical code⟩} \text{ (no default)}\]

Prepends the given \(⟨\text{graphical code}⟩\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay first}\[^{+P.81}\).

468
/tcb/overlay middle app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay middle}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay middle pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay middle}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay last app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay last pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay broken app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay broken}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay broken pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay broken}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken and first}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and first pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken and first}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay middle and last app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay middle and last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay middle and last pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay middle and last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken and last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay unbroken and last pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay unbroken and last}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay first and middle app={graphical code} (no default)
Appends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay first and middle}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.

/tcb/overlay first and middle pre={graphical code} (no default)
Prepends the given \(\langle\text{graphical code}\rangle\) to \(\text{/tcb/overlay first and middle}\) \(\rightarrow\) P.81.
23.5 Watermarks

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 10.3 from page 187.

Watermarks are special overlays. The \texttt{hooks} library allows the combination of several watermarks and overlays.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ app=\texttt{\langle text\rangle}}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\langle text\rangle}} to the colored box.

\begin{tcolorbox}
\texttt{\textbackslash{}tcset\{colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\texttt{\bfseries}\}}
\begin{tcolorbox}[enhanced,title=My title,watermark graphics=Basilica_5.png,watermark opacity=0.25,watermark text app=Basilica,watermark color=Navy]
\lipsum[1-2]
\tcblover
This example uses a public domain picture from\texttt{\langle\url{http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png}\rangle}\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcolorbox}

\texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ pre=\texttt{\langle text\rangle}}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\langle text\rangle}} to the colored box.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ app\ on=\texttt{\langle part\rangle\ is\ \texttt{\langle text\rangle}}}\quad\text{(no default)}

Appends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ on} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\langle part\rangle\ is\ \texttt{\langle text\rangle}}} the named \texttt{\langle part\rangle} of a break sequence.

\texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ pre\ on=\texttt{\langle part\rangle\ is\ \texttt{\langle text\rangle}}}\quad\text{(no default)}

Prepends a \texttt{/tcb/watermark\ text\ on} \textsuperscript{\texttt{\langle part\rangle\ is\ \texttt{\langle text\rangle}}} the named \texttt{\langle part\rangle} of a break sequence.
/tcb/watermark graphics app=(file name) (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics→P.188 referenced by (file name) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics pre=(file name) (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics→P.188 referenced by (file name) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark graphics app on=(part) is (file name) (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark graphics on→P.188 the named (part) of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by (file name).

/tcb/watermark graphics pre on=(part) is (file name) (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark graphics on→P.188 the named (part) of a break sequence. The picture is referenced by (file name).

/tcb/watermark tikz app=(graphical code) (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz→P.189 with the given tikz (graphical code) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre=(graphical code) (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz→P.189 with the given tikz (graphical code) to the colored box.

/tcb/watermark tikz app on=(part) is (graphical code) (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.189 the named (part) of a break sequence.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre on=(part) is (graphical code) (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.189 the named (part) of a break sequence.

% \usepackage{tikz}
\tcbset{colback=red!5!white, colframe=red!75!black, fonttitle=\bfseries, watermark color=Navy, watermark opacity=0.25, smiley/.style={watermark tikz pre={%\path[fill=yellow,draw=yellow!75!red] (0,0) circle (1cm);\fill[red] (45:5mm) circle (1mm);\fill[red] (135:5mm) circle (1mm);\draw[line width=1mm,red] (215:5mm) arc (215:325:5mm);}}}\begin{tcolorbox} [enhanced, title=My title, watermark text=Watermark, smiley] \lipsum[1-2] \end{tcolorbox}

My title

/tcb/watermark tikz app on=(part) is (graphical code) (no default)
Appends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.189 the named (part) of a break sequence.

/tcb/watermark tikz pre on=(part) is (graphical code) (no default)
Prepends a /tcb/watermark tikz on→P.189 the named (part) of a break sequence.
23.6 Underlays

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.8 on page 217. There are no app type keys since underlays are stackable by default.

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay} \rightarrow \text{P. 217}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay unbroken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay unbroken} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay first} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay middle} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay last} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay boxed title pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay boxed title} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay broken pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay broken} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay unbroken and first pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay unbroken and first} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay middle and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay middle and last} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay unbroken and last pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay unbroken and last} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]

\[
\text{/tcb/underlay first and middle pre}=(\text{graphical code}) \quad \text{(no default)} \quad \text{Prepends the given } (\text{graphical code}) \text{ to } /\text{tcb/underlay first and middle} \rightarrow \text{P. 218}.
\]
23.7 Finishes

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 10.9 on page 219. There are no app type keys since finishes are stackable by default.

/tcb/finish pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish → P.219.

/tcb/finish unbroken pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken → P.220.

/tcb/finish first pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish first → P.220.

/tcb/finish middle pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish middle → P.220.

/tcb/finish last pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish last → P.220.

/tcb/finish broken pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish broken → P.220.

/tcb/finish unbroken and first pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken and first → P.220.

/tcb/finish middle and last pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish middle and last → P.220.

/tcb/finish unbroken and last pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish unbroken and last → P.220.

/tcb/finish first and middle pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/finish first and middle → P.220.

23.8 Skin Code

The following option keys extend the options given in Subsection 9.2 from page 158.

/tcb/frame code app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/frame code → P.158.

/tcb/frame code pre=(graphical code) (no default)

Prepends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/frame code → P.158.

/tcb/interior titled code app=(graphical code) (no default)

Appends the given (graphical code) to /tcb/interior titled code → P.158.
My title


/tcb/interior titled code pre={(graphical code)}

Prepends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/interior titled code\(^{P.158}\).

/tcb/interior code app={(graphical code)}

Appends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/interior code\(^{P.159}\).

/tcb/interior code pre={(graphical code)}

Prepends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/interior code\(^{P.159}\).

/tcb/segmentation code app={(graphical code)}

Appends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/segmentation code\(^{P.159}\).

/tcb/segmentation code pre={(graphical code)}

Prepends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/segmentation code\(^{P.159}\).

/tcb/title code app={(graphical code)}

Appends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/title code\(^{P.160}\).

/tcb/title code pre={(graphical code)}

Prepends the given \( \text{(graphical code)} \) to /tcb/title code\(^{P.160}\).
23.9 Extras

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 19.5 on page 408. There are no app type keys since extras are stackable by default.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras unbroken \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras first pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras first \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras middle pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras middle \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras last pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras last \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras broken pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras broken \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and first pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras unbroken and first \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras middle and last pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras middle and last \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras unbroken and last pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras unbroken and last \textsuperscript{+P.408}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/extras first and middle pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/extras first and middle \textsuperscript{+P.409}.
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

23.10 Listings

The following option keys extend the options given in Section 17 from page 327.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/listing options app={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Appends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/listing options \textsuperscript{+P.337}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/listing options pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/listing options \textsuperscript{+P.337}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/minted options app={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Appends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/minted options \textsuperscript{+P.340}.
    \end{itemize}
  \item \texttt{/tcb/minted options pre={\{options\}}} \hspace{1cm} (no default)
    \begin{itemize}
    \item Prepends the given \texttt{\{options\}} to /tcb/minted options \textsuperscript{+P.340}.
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\tcbuselibrary{xparse}

This loads the package \texttt{xparse} \cite{15}.

Note that up to version 5.0.2 this library contained code which needed the \texttt{xparse} package. Since nowadays this package has become basically a part of the \LaTeX{} kernel, the code of the library was migrated to other parts of the \texttt{tcolorbox} package. So, the remaining library is nearly a stub which only loads \texttt{xparse}.

Instead of including the \texttt{xparse} library, it is recommended to include the \texttt{xparse} package directly, \textbf{if really needed} (the \LaTeX{} kernel contains essentially everything needed). The library is kept for compatibility.
The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

```
\tcbuselibrary{external}
```

The purpose of this library is to support externalization of document snippets like graphics or boxes which can be compiled stand-alone. These snippets are written to external files, compiled and the resulting pdf files are included to the main document as images. The whole procedure saves compilation time, if such a snippet is costly to compile but needs to compile just once or very seldom.

There are very good alternatives to this library. One should consider the \texttt{standalone} package or the TikZ externalization library instead. The \texttt{external} library is something in between and can be seen as poor man variant of the TikZ externalization library.

The main differences between TikZ externalization and \texttt{external} are:

- TikZ \texttt{external} compiles the whole original document in a sophisticated way while \texttt{external} uses only the preamble or a part of the preamble of the original document.
- TikZ \texttt{external} can automatically externalize all \texttt{tikzpicture} environments while \texttt{external} externalizes marked snippets only.
- Code snippets to be externalized by \texttt{external} are not restricted to \texttt{tikzpicture} environments. But these snippets have to be stand-alone without dependencies to the rest of the document.

Why should somebody use \texttt{external} instead of the more powerful TikZ \texttt{external}? One reason could be compilation speed, but the main reason for creating the library at all was that TikZ \texttt{external} tends to choke on complicated documents where the sophisticated mechanism stumbles. Since \texttt{external} does not use the original document body for compilation, this cannot happen.

Source snippets are compiled, if their \texttt{md5} checksum has changed. They are not compiled automatically, if option settings are changed or anything outside the snippet is changed. Use `/tcb/external(force remake)^{P.478}` to force compilation in this case or simply delete the externalized pdf oder md5 files.

To use the externalization options, the compiler has to be called with the \texttt{-shell-escape} permission to authorize potentially dangerous system calls. Be warned that this is a security risk.
25.1 Preparation of a Document for Externalization

The preamble of the main document has to contain the \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE} command. Without this command, no externalization operation will be executed.

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE}

It is mandatory for externalization that this command is used once in the preamble of the main document. Every setting \textit{before} \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE} will also be used for compiling an external snippet. Every setting \textit{after} \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE} will be ignored for compiling an external snippet. Place this command right before \texttt{\begin{document}}, if you are not absolutely sure about another place.

The main document has to look like the following:

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass[a4paper]{book}
\usepackage{...}
\% for example
\% anything
\% ...
\% Typically, all or the very most settings for the document.
\tcbEXTERNALIZE
\% Typically, just before \begin{document}
\% Additional settings which are ABSOLUTELY irrelevant for the
\% stand-alone snippets.
\% \begin{document}
\% The document.
\% This also contains the marked snippets for externalization.
\end{document}
\end{verbatim}

During compilation, a \texttt{/tcb/external/runner} file is dynamically created (several times). This is the actual main file for compiling an externalized snippet.

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{/tcb/external/runner=(file name)} 
(no default, initially \texttt{\jobname_run.tex})

Sets the \texttt{(file name)} for dynamically created runner file. This is the actual main file for a document snippet. Typically, the initial setting is not needed to be changed.

\texttt{\tcbset{external/runner=myrunner.tex}}

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{/tcb/external/prefix=(text)} 
(no default, initially \texttt{external/})

The \texttt{(text)} is prefixed to any \texttt{/tcb/external/name} for an externalization snippet. The initial setting implies saving all snippets into an external/ subdirectory. Depending on the operation system, the subdirectory may have to be created manually once.

\begin{verbatim}
\% Use a ‘real’ prefix instead of writing into a subdirectory:
\tcbset{external/prefix=ext_}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{/tcb/external/externalize=true|false} 
(default true, initially true)

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled if necessary. If set to \texttt{false}, the marked snippets are not compiled but included as text. \texttt{/tcb/external/externalize} can only be used after \texttt{\tcbEXTERNALIZE}.

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake=true|false} 
(default true, initially false)

If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are always compiled. If set to \texttt{true}, the marked snippets are compiled only if necessary. The necessity is given, if a compiled pdf file is missing or the md5 checksum of the source snippet has changed.

\texttt{N 2015-03-11} \texttt{/tcb/external/!} 
(style)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake} to \texttt{true}.

\texttt{N 2015-06-12} \texttt{/tcb/external/-} 
(style)

Shortcut for setting \texttt{/tcb/external/externalize} to \texttt{false}.

478
25.2 Marking Externalization Snippets

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tikzpicture}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
{\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcbexternal}

Marks the environment content as a snippet for externalization. Typically, the content is a \texttt{tikzpicture} or something similar. It is important to note that the snippet should not have any dependencies with the rest of the document, e.g. referencing counters or setting counters is not possible. The \texttt{(name)} is automatically prefixed with /tcb/external/prefix → P.478. In combination, this has to be a unique file name. It is advised to not use spaces or umlauts for the name. The \texttt{(options)} are keys from the /tcb/external/ key tree.

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box,colframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow,interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

If a \texttt{tcolorbox} → P.12 is externalized, one should use /tcb/nobeforeafter → P.87 for the box. Indentation and distances to the text before and after have to be given separately outside the \texttt{tcbexternal} environment.

\begin{tcbexternal}{example_tcolorbox}
\begin{tcolorbox}[nobeforeafter,enhanced,fonttitle=\bfseries,title=Externalized Box,coffolframe=red!50!black,drop fuzzy shadow,interior style={fill overzoom image=goldshade.png}]
This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{tcbexternal}

This complete tcolorbox is externalized. One cannot use numbered boxes here. Note the \texttt{minipage} option which tells the current line width to the external snippet.
The interior of the tcolorbox is externalized. One can use numbered boxes without problems. Note that the text color has to be set for the text manually since it is converted into an image.

\begin{tabularx}{\linewidth}{|l||Y|Y|Y|Y||Y|}
\hline
Group & One & Two & Three & Four & Sum \\
\hline
Red & 1000.00 & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 10000.00 \\
Green & 2000.00 & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 14000.00 \\
Blue & 3000.00 & 4000.00 & 5000.00 & 6000.00 & 18000.00 \\
\hline
Sum & 6000.00 & 9000.00 & 12000.00 & 15000.00 & 42000.00 \\
\hline
\end{tabularx}

The \langle name \rangle is automatically prefixed with /tcb/external/prefix → P.478. In combination, this has to be a unique file name for externalization. Typically, this key is not used directly but is set indirectly as mandatory parameter, see tcbexternal → P.479.
This is an externalized version of \tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12} created using \newtcbexternalizetcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.486}:

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}

\begin{extcolorbox}{example_extcolorbox}
[ enhanced,colframe=red!50!black,colback=yellow!10, fonttitle=\bfseries,drop fuzzy shadow, title=My external box ]

This box is completely externalized.

\begin{tcolorbox}[colframe=blue,colback=blue!5,before skip=6pt]
Inner box.
\end{tcolorbox}
\end{extcolorbox}

My external box

This box is completely externalized.

Inner box.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Never} externalize numbered boxes.
  \item \textbf{Never} externalize boxes which contain references to other things, e.g. using \texttt{\ref} or \texttt{\cite}.
  \item \textbf{Never} externalize breakable boxes.
\end{itemize}
This is an externalized version of \texttt{tikzpicture} created using \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment} → P. 486:

\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{extikzpicture}{tikzpicture}{}{}{}

\texttt{(options) and (name)} are given to the underlying \texttt{tcbexternal} → P. 479 environment, while \texttt{(tikz options)} are given to \texttt{tikzpicture}.

\begin{center}
\begin{extikzpicture}
\begin{preamble}
\usepackage{pgfplots}, % add package for external graph
input source on error=false, % do not load source on error
\end{preamble}
\begin{axis}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\preamble{\usepackage{pgfplots}}, % add package for external graph
\input source on error=false, % do not load source on error
\end{tikzpicture}%
\end{axis}
\end{extikzpicture}
\end{center}
The text content of a \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.328} is externalized with the given \texttt{name}. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{tcblisting}{externalize listing=example_listing, bicolor,colback=yellow!10,colframe=yellow!50!black, colbacklower=white,center lower}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
  {\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[fill=yellow!50!white] (0,0) circle (11mm);
\path[fill=white] (0,0) circle (9mm);
\foreach \w/\c in {90/red,210/green,330/blue}
  {\path[shading=ball,ball color=\c] (\w:1cm) circle (7mm);}
\end{tikzpicture}

The text content of a \texttt{dispExample*} \textsuperscript{P.497} is externalized with the given \texttt{name}. Note that the listing part is not externalized.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside,externalize example=example_example}
\tikz\path[shading=ball, ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{dispExample*}

\begin{tikzpicture}
\path[shading=ball, ball color=red] circle (7mm);
\end{tikzpicture}

Combination of \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} and \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake} \textsuperscript{P.478}.

Combination of \texttt{/tcb/externalize example} and \texttt{/tcb/external/force remake} \textsuperscript{P.478}.
25.3 Customization

/\texttt{tcb/external/safety}=⟨\texttt{length}⟩ (no default, initially 2\texttt{mm})

The snippet box is surrounded with a safety border with a thickness of ⟨\texttt{length}⟩. This border is automatically trimmed during picture inclusion. The reason for this mechanism is to catch box content which extrudes over the bounding box. For example, shadows of a \texttt{tcolorbox} are painted outside the bounding box and would be lost otherwise.

/\texttt{tcb/external/environment}=⟨\texttt{env}⟩ (no default, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with an environment ⟨\texttt{env}⟩ without parameters. Note that this option is ignored for \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} \textsuperscript{P.483}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/environment with percent}=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to \texttt{true}, the \texttt{\begin} and \texttt{\end} code of \texttt{/tcb/external/environment} is appended with a percent sign. For verbatim environments, this option typically has to be set to \texttt{false}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/minipage}=⟨\texttt{length}⟩ (default \texttt{\linewidth}, initially unset)

Surrounds the exported snippet text with a minipage. The optional ⟨\texttt{length}⟩ parameter sets the width of the minipage. Note that the default width is the current line width of the main document. See \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479} for examples. Note that this option is ignored for \texttt{/tcb/externalize listing} \textsuperscript{P.483}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/plain} (no value, initially set)

Removes any text which was set to surround the snippet. This removes the setting of \texttt{/tcb/external/minipage}, but is independent of \texttt{/tcb/external/safety}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/compiler}=⟨\texttt{text}⟩ (no default, initially \texttt{pdflatex})

Sets the name of the compiler for the snippets. Note that this compiler has to support the \texttt{\pdfmdfivesum} primitive e.g. using the \texttt{pdftexcmds} package. This should work for \texttt{xelatex} and \texttt{lualatex}.

/\texttt{tcb/external/runs}=⟨\texttt{number}⟩ (no default, initially 1)

Sets the number of compiler runs for the snippet.

\begin{verbatim}
\texttt{\begin{tcbexternal}[minipage,runs=2]{example_raster}
  \texttt{\begin{tcbitemize}[raster equal height,
    size=small,colframe=red!50!black,colback=red!10!white]
  \tcbitem One
  \tcbitem \Huge Two
  \tcbitem Three
  \tcbitem Four
  \end{tcbitemize}
  \end{tcbexternal}}
\end{verbatim}

/\texttt{tcb/external/input source on error}=true|false (default true, initially true)

If set to \texttt{true}, the source code of the snippet is loaded instead of the failed pdf picture. Typically, this will lead to an error stop at the faulty place of the source and such helps detecting the cause. If the source input compiles without error, the document setup may be incorrect, see Section 25.1 on page 478. Maybe, the \texttt{external}/ subdirectory has to be created manually in this case, see \texttt{/tcb/external/prefix} \textsuperscript{P.478}.

If the option is set to \texttt{false}, the compilation stops immediately on an error. The log file of the external snippet has to be consulted for error messages in this case.

484
The given \code{} is added before the snippet document. Typically, this means before \documentclass. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \options{} are passed to the given \package{} for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with \PassOptionsToPackage. This not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \options{} are passed to the given \class{} for the snippet document. This is a shortcut for using /tcb/external/preclass with \PassOptionsToClass. This not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preclass settings.

The given \code{} is added to the preamble of the snippet document. This is not used for compilation of the main document.

The given \options{} are added as parameter for \tcbset \textsuperscript{P.13} to the preamble of the snippet document. This are not used for compilation of the main document.

Removes all additional /tcb/external/preamble settings.

Expands to \true{}, if executed during snippet compilation, and to \false{}, if executed during main document compilation. This can be used before \tcbEXTERNALIZE \textsuperscript{P.478} to give different setting to snippet and main document.

\begin{quote}
\begin{verbatim}
\tcbifexternal{\true}\{\false}
{\usepackage{onlyforexternal}}
{\usepackage{onlyformain}}
\end{verbatim}
\end{quote}
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin⟩}{⟨end⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨newenv⟩ which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}. Further, the given ⟨options⟩ are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨env⟩. All further parameters of ⟨newenv⟩ are given to ⟨env⟩ as parameters. The included image is prepended by ⟨begin⟩ and appended by ⟨end⟩.

\texttt{extikzpicture} \textsuperscript{P.482} is an example application for \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}.

\begin{extabular}{example_tabular}{|l|p{6cm}|r|}
\hline
A & B & C \\
\hline
a & This table is externalized as snippet. Obviously, this only makes sense for highly complex tables. & b \\
\hline
\end{extabular}

\renewtcbexternalizeenvironment{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}

Identical to \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}, but the environment ⟨newenv⟩ is created by \texttt{\renewenvironment} instead of \texttt{\newenvironment}.

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{⟨newenv⟩}{⟨env⟩}{⟨options⟩}{⟨begin end options⟩}

Creates a new environment ⟨newenv⟩ which is based on \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}. This environment takes \textit{at least} one optional parameter and one mandatory parameter. These two parameters are passed to \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}. Further, the given ⟨options⟩ are always added to the option list of \texttt{tcbexternal} \textsuperscript{P.479}.

The environment content is externalized and the external snippet is surrounded by an environment ⟨env⟩. All further parameters of ⟨newenv⟩ are given to ⟨env⟩ as parameters. \textbf{In contrast to} \texttt{\newtcbexternalizeenvironment}, the environment ⟨env⟩ is intended to be based on \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} or \texttt{tcblisting} \textsuperscript{P.328}.

The ⟨begin end options⟩ are options for settings the space before and after the included image using \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.87}, \texttt{/tcb/before skip} \textsuperscript{P.89}, \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.87}, or \texttt{/tcb/after skip} \textsuperscript{P.89}.

\begin{extcolorbox} P.481 \end{extcolorbox} is an example application for \texttt{\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox}.

\begin{extcolorbox} P.481 \end{extcolorbox} is an example application for \texttt{\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox}.

Use the exact identical values for \texttt{/tcb/before} \textsuperscript{P.87} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \textsuperscript{P.87} inside ⟨begin end options⟩ as they where used for definition of ⟨env⟩! Otherwise, externalized and non-externalized version will have different spacings.
**Definition in the preamble:**

\newtcblisting{myownlisting}[2][
  enhanced,colback=red!5!white,colframe=red!75!black,fonttitle=\bfseries,
  colbacktitle=red!50!yellow,before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt,
  title={#2},#1]

\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox{exmyownlisting}{myownlisting}\
{minipage,environment with percent=false}\
{before skip=6pt,after skip=6pt} same values as for mylisting

\begin{exmyownlisting}{example_mylisting}\
{My externalized example box}\
This is my \LaTeX\ box.
\end{exmyownlisting}

My externalized example box

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

This is my \LaTeX\ box.

\renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox{(newenv)}{(env)}{(options)}{(begin end options)}

Identical to \renewtcbexternalizetcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.486}, but the environment \textit{newenv} is created by \renewenvironment instead of \renewenvironment.

\tcbiffileprocess{(condition)}{(source)}{(md5-file)}{(target)}{(true)}{(false)}

This is a low-level macro which is internally used. The MD5 digest of a \textit{source} file is compared with a stored MD5 digest from an auxiliary \textit{md5-file}. If they are not equal, the auxiliary \textit{md5-file} is updated to store the current MD5 digest. Further,

- if \textit{condition} equals 0, \textit{true} is executed.
- if \textit{condition} equals 1:
  - If the current and stored MD5 digests were different, \textit{true} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \textit{target} file is not existing, \textit{true} is executed.
  - Otherwise, if the \textit{target} file is older than the \textit{md5-file}, \textit{true} is executed.
  - Otherwise, \textit{false} is executed.
- if \textit{condition} equals 2, \textit{false} is executed.

The intended processing purpose of the \textit{true} code is to produce a \textit{target} file from the given \textit{source} file.
25.4 Troubleshooting and FAQ

- **I use the default settings, but the external subdirectory is not created.** Depending on operating system and compiler, an *external* subdirectory is automatically created or not. If not, create such a directory manually or add the following to your document:\footnote{The *shellesc* package is loaded automatically by the library.}:

  \ShellEscape{mkdir external}

  or

  \ShellEscape{mkdir -p external}

  If the combination of /tcb/external/prefix\footnote{P.478} and chosen snippet name points to another subdirectory than *external*, this has to be adapted.

- **I use the minted package and I get a cache directory for every externalized snippet.** To avoid this problem, there are several ways.

  - If you do not need *minted* inside the snippet code, you may use \usepackage{minted} after \tcbEXTERNALIZE\footnote{P.478} or use \tcbifexternal\footnote{P.485} to switch *minted* off for the external code. If *minted* is already included by another package, add the following to your preamble:

    \tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={draft}{minted}}

  - If *minted* is needed for the snippet code, caching can be switched off by adding the following to your preamble:

    \tcbset{external/PassOptionsToPackage={cache=false}{minted}}

    Alternatively, the *cachedir* option of *minted* may be used to redirect the cache.
This library has the single purpose to support \TeX\ package documentations like this one. Actually, the visual nature follows the approach from Till Tantau’s \texttt{pgf} \cite{pgf} documentation. Typically, this library is assumed to be used in conjunction with the class \texttt{ltxdoc} or alike. Denis Bitouzé, Muzimuzhi, and many others provided very valuable input for this library.

The library is loaded by a package option or inside the preamble by:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{documentation}
\end{verbatim}

This also loads the library \texttt{skins}, see Section 10 on page 169, the library \texttt{raster}, see Section 16 on page 305, the library \texttt{listings}, see Section 17 on page 327, the library \texttt{xparse}, see Section 24 on page 476, and a bunch of packages, namely \texttt{makeidx}, \texttt{marginnote}, \texttt{refcount}, and \texttt{hyperref}. The packages \texttt{pifont} and \texttt{marvosym} should be installed for some symbols, but need not to be loaded.

\begin{itemize}
\item The package \texttt{makeidx} is loaded only, if \texttt{printindex} is not already defined. Therefore, one can include an alternative to \texttt{makeidx} like \texttt{imakeidx} before the library \texttt{documentation} is used.
\item The package \texttt{marginnote} is loaded only, if \texttt{marginnote} is not already defined.
\item In contrast to other \texttt{tcolorbox} options, the option settings for \texttt{documentation} are typically not getting reset by /\texttt{tcb/reset} \textsuperscript{+P.120}, i.e. they keep their values for embedded boxes.
\item In combination with DocStrip, /\texttt{tcb/verbatim ignore percent} \textsuperscript{+P.146} may be helpful.
\end{itemize}

For UTF-8 support load (ignore this when using \texttt{Xe\LaTeX}):

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{listingsutf8,documentation}
\end{verbatim}

For \texttt{minted} \cite{minted} support, load:

\begin{verbatim}
\tcbuselibrary{documentation,minted}
\tcbset{listing engine=minted}
\end{verbatim}

### 26.1 Macros of the Library

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{docCommand}[⟨options⟩]{⟨name⟩}{⟨parameters⟩}
⟨command description⟩
\end{docCommand}
\end{verbatim}

Documents a \LaTeX macro with given \texttt{⟨name⟩} where \texttt{⟨name⟩} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{⟨options⟩} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{+P.13}. This macro takes mandatory or optional \texttt{⟨parameters⟩}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refCom} \textsuperscript{+P.500}{⟨name⟩}. 

\newpage

\begin{docCommand}{foomakedocSubKey}{\marg{name}}{\marg{key path}}
Creates a new environment \marg{name} based on \refEnv{docKey} for the
documentation of keys with the given \marg{key path}.
\end{docCommand}

\foomakedocSubKey{(name)}{(key path)}

Creates a new environment (name) based on docKey \textsuperscript{P. 493} for the documentation of keys with
the given (key path).

\begin{docCommand}{foomakedocSubKey*}\%
{\marg{name}}{\marg{key path}}
Creates a new environment \marg{name} based on \refEnv{docKey} for the
documentation of keys with the given \marg{key path}.
\end{docCommand}

\foomakedocSubKey*{(name)}{(key path)}

Creates a new environment (name) based on docKey \textsuperscript{P. 493} for the documentation of keys with
the given (key path).

\begin{docCommand*}\%
{\marg{name}}{\marg{key path}}
Creating a new environment \marg{name} based on docKey \textsuperscript{P. 493} for the documentation of keys with the
given \marg{key path}.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommands}\[
\begin{array}{l}
doc no index, \% no index entries for this example \\
doc name = \marg{envname}, \\
doc parameter = \marg{envname}, \\
\end{array}
\]

Identical to docCommand \textsuperscript{P. 489}, but without index entry.

\begin{docCommands}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\langle\{options\}\rangle \{\langle name\rangle\} \{\langle parameters\rangle\}
\end{array}
\]

Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} macro variants simultaneously. The given \langle options\rangle are
set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset \textsuperscript{P. 13}} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every
variant is described by an option set \langle variant1\rangle, \langle variant2\rangle, and so on. The most crucial
options are /tcb/doc name \textsuperscript{P. 503} and /tcb/doc parameter \textsuperscript{P. 503}.

\begin{docCommands}\[
\begin{array}{l}
\newtheorem{\langle envname\rangle} \\
\newtheorem{\langle envname\rangle}\{\langle numbered within\}\} \\
\newtheorem{\langle number\rangle\{\langle envname\\}} \\
\newtheorem*{\langle envname\rangle} \\
\end{array}
\]

\newtheorem{\langle envname\rangle}
\begin{docEnvironment}\{(options)\}\{(name)\}\{(parameters)\}
\begin{environment description}
Documents a \LaTeX{} environment with given \(\langle\text{name}\rangle\). The given \(\langle\text{options}\rangle\) are set with \texttt{\tcbsset}\textsuperscript{\(\rightarrow\)P.13}. This environment takes mandatory or optional \(\langle\text{parameters}\rangle\). It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refEnv}\textsuperscript{\(\rightarrow\)P.500}\(\langle\text{name}\rangle\).
\end{environment description}
\end{docEnvironment}

\begin{docEnvironment*}\{(options)\}\{(name)\}\{(parameters)\}
\begin{environment description}
Identical to \texttt{docEnvironment}, but without index entry.
\end{environment description}
\end{docEnvironment*}
Documents several (similar) \LaTeX{} environment variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{(options)} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} \textsuperscript{p.\,13} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{(variant1)}, \texttt{(variant2)}, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc name \textsuperscript{p.\,503} and /tcb/doc parameter \textsuperscript{p.\,503}.

\begin{docEnvironments}{\texttt{(options)}}{\texttt{(variant1)},\texttt{(variant2)},...}
\end{docEnvironments}

\begin{redbox}{\texttt{(options)}}{\texttt{(title)}}
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{(box content)} & \texttt{(a red colored box)} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
\end{redbox}

\begin{greenbox}{\texttt{(options)}}{\texttt{(title)}}
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{(box content)} & \texttt{(a green colored box)} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
\end{greenbox}

\begin{bluebox}{\texttt{(options)}}{\texttt{(title)}}
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{(box content)} & \texttt{(a blue colored box)} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
\end{bluebox}

\begin{custombox}{\texttt{(options)}}{\texttt{(color)}}{\texttt{(title)}}
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|c|c|}
\hline
\texttt{(box content)} & \texttt{(a colored box)} \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
\end{custombox}

example
\begin{docKey}[\langle key path \rangle][\langle options \rangle] \{\langle name \rangle\} \{\langle parameters \rangle\} \{\langle description \rangle\}

\langle key description \rangle
\end{docKey}

Documents a key with given \langle name \rangle and an optional \langle key path \rangle. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \tcbset \rightarrow P.13. This key takes mandatory or optional \langle parameters \rangle as value with a short \langle description \rangle. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \refKey \rightarrow P.500 \{\langle name \rangle\}.

\begin{docKey}[\langle name \rangle] \{\langle parameters \rangle\}
\end{docKey}

\begin{docKey}[] \{\langle options \rangle\}
\end{docKey*}

Identical to \texttt{docKey}, but without index entry.

\begin{docKeys}[] \{\langle variant1 \rangle, \langle variant2 \rangle, \ldots \}
\end{docKeys}

Documents several (similar) key variants simultaneously. The given \langle options \rangle are set with \tcbset \rightarrow P.13 and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \langle variant1 \rangle, \langle variant2 \rangle, and so on. The most crucial options are /tcb/doc keypath \rightarrow P.503, /tcb/doc name \rightarrow P.503, /tcb/doc parameter \rightarrow P.503, and /tcb/doc description \rightarrow P.504.

\begin{docKeys}[
    doc no index,  % no index entries for this example
doc keypath = mykeyroot,
doc parameter = {=\meta{length}},
]
{[
    doc name = width,
doc description = initially \texttt{10cm},
],
    doc name = height,
doc description = initially \texttt{7cm},
}]
\end{docKeys}

\begin{docKey}{mykeyroot/width}{\langle length \rangle}  \text{(initially 10cm)}
\end{docKey}

\begin{docKey}{mykeyroot/height}{\langle length \rangle}  \text{(initially 7cm)}
\end{docKey}

\begin{docKey}{example}{
\end{docKey}
\begin{docPathOperation}[(options)]\{\name\}\{\parameters\}
\{operation description\}
\end{docPathOperation}

Documents a Ti\kZ path operation with given \texttt{\name}. The given \texttt{\options} are set with \texttt{\tcbset}. This Ti\kZ path operation takes mandatory or optional \texttt{\parameters}. It is automatically indexed and can be referenced with \texttt{\refPathOperation}.

\begin{docPathOperation}{fooop}\{\oarg\{opt\}\{\meta\name\}\colOpt\{at(\meta\coord)\}\}
\{operation description\}
\end{docPathOperation}

\begin{docPathOperations}\{\name\}\{\parameters\}\{\options\}\{\variants\},\ldots\}
\{command description\}
\end{docPathOperations}

Documents several (similar) Ti\kZ path operation variants simultaneously. The given \texttt{\options} are set with \texttt{\tcbset} and are valid for all variants and the documentation text. Every variant is described by an option set \texttt{\variant1}, \texttt{\variant2}, and so on. The most crucial options are \texttt{/tcb/doc name} and \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter}.

\begin{docPathOperations}\{\name\}\{\parameters\}\{\options\}\{\variants\}\}
\{command description\}
\end{docPathOperations}

Identical to \texttt{docPathOperation}, but without index entry.

\begin{docPathOperations}\[
\{do\ no\ index, \ % \ no\ index\ entries\ for\ this\ example\}
\{\}
\{\ 
\{\ 
\{\ 
\{\ 
\}
\{\ 
\{\ 
\{\ 
\}
\}
\}
\}
\}
\}
\end{docPathOperations}

\texttt{\path \ldots \rectangular\{corner\ or\ cycle\} \ldots;} 
\texttt{\path \ldots \circular\{\options\} \ldots;} 
\texttt{\path \ldots \elliptical\{\options\} \ldots;}
\documentclass\{\textheading\}
\documentclass\*{\textheading\}

Documents a value with given \texttt{name}. Typically, this is a value for a key. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset`\textsuperscript{\textminus P.13}. This value is automatically indexed for \texttt{\documentclass} and has no index entry for \texttt{\documentclass\*}.

A feasible value for \texttt{\refKey\{foo\footitle\}} is \texttt{\documentclass\*\{foovalue\}}.

A feasible value for \texttt{/foo\footitle\textsuperscript{\textminus P.493} is foovalue.}

\documentclass\{\auxcommand\}
\documentclass\*{\auxcommand\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX\ macro with given \texttt{name} where \texttt{name} is written without backslash. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset`\textsuperscript{\textminus P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed for \texttt{\documentclass\auxcommand} and has no index entry for \texttt{\documentclass\*\auxcommand\}. The macro \texttt{\documentclass\auxcommand\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The macro \texttt{fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\documentclass\*{\auxcommand\}

Documents an auxiliary or minor \LaTeX\ environment with given \texttt{name}. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset`\textsuperscript{\textminus P.13}. This macro is automatically indexed indexed for \texttt{\documentclass\auxenvironment} and has no index entry for \texttt{\documentclass\*\auxenvironment\}. The environment \texttt{\documentclass\auxenvironment\{fooauxenv\}} holds some interesting data.

The environment \texttt{fooauxenv} holds some interesting data.

\documentclass\*{\auxcommand\}

Documents an auxiliary key with given \texttt{name} and an optional \texttt{key path}. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset`\textsuperscript{\textminus P.13}. It is automatically indexed for \texttt{\documentclass\auxkey} and has no index entry for \texttt{\documentclass\*\auxkey\}. The key \texttt{\documentclass\auxkey\{foo\}\{fooaux\}} holds some interesting data.

The key \texttt{fooaux} holds some interesting data.

\documentclass\*{\auxcommand\}

Documents a counter with given \texttt{name}. The given \texttt{options} are set with \texttt{\textbackslash tcbset`\textsuperscript{\textminus P.13}. The counter is automatically indexed for \texttt{\documentclass\counter} and has no index entry for \texttt{\documentclass\*\counter\}. The counter \texttt{\documentclass\counter\{foocounter\}} can be used for computation.

The counter \texttt{foocounter} can be used for computation.
\docLength\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}
\docLength\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}*

Documents a length with given \langle\text{name}\rangle. The given \langle\text{options}\rangle are set with \tcbset\textsuperscript{P.13}. The length is automatically indexed for \docLength and has no index entry for \docLength*.

The length \docLength\{foolength\} can be used for computation.

The length \foolength can be used for computation.

\docColor\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}
\docColor\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}\{\langle\text{options}\rangle\}*

Documents a color with given \langle\text{name}\rangle. The given \langle\text{options}\rangle are set with \tcbset\textsuperscript{P.13}. The color is automatically indexed for \docColor and has no index entry for \docColor*.

The color \docColor\{foocolor\} is available.

The color \foocolor is available.

\cs\{\langle\text{name}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[4]} to typeset a command word \langle\text{name}\rangle where the backslash is prefixed. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \cs\{foocommand\}.

This is a foocommand.

\meta\{\langle\text{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{doc} \textsuperscript{[9]} to typeset a meta \langle\text{text}\rangle. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a \meta\{text\}.

This is a \{text\}.

\marg\{\langle\text{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[4]} to typeset a \langle\text{text}\rangle with curly brackets as a mandatory argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is a mandatory \marg\{argument\}.

This is a mandatory \{argument\}.

\oarg\{\langle\text{text}\rangle\}

Macro from \texttt{ltxdoc} \textsuperscript{[4]} to typeset a \langle\text{text}\rangle with square brackets as an optional argument. The library overwrites the original macro.

This is an optional \oarg\{argument\}.

This is an optional \{(argument)\}.
\sarg
Macro to typeset * as an optional star.

This is an optional \sarg.
This is an optional *.

\brackets{(text)}
Sets the given (text) with curly brackets.

Here we use \brackets{some text}.
Here we use {some text}.

\begin{dispExample}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{dispExample}

Creates a colored box based on a \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.12}. It displays the environment content as source code in the upper part and as compiled text in the lower part of the box. The appearance is controlled by /tcb/documentation listing style \texttt{P.511} and the style /tcb/docexample \texttt{P.511}. It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispExample}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
This is a \LaTeX\ example.

\begin{dispExample*}{(options)}
\langle environment content \rangle
\end{dispExample*}

The starred version of dispExample takes \texttt{tcolorbox} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.12} (options) as parameter. These (options) are executed after /tcb/docexample \texttt{P.511}.

\begin{dispExample*}{sidebyside}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispExample*}

This is a \LaTeX\ example.
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\begin{dispListing}
\begin{environment content}
\end{environment content}
\end{dispListing}

Creates a colored box based on a \tcolorbox \textsuperscript{P.12}. It displays the environment content as source code. The appearance is controlled by \texttt{/tcb/documentation listing style} \textsuperscript{P.511} and the style \texttt{/tcb/docexample} \textsuperscript{P.511}. It may be changed by redefining this style.

\begin{dispListing}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing}

\begin{dispListing*}{\langle \texttt{options} \rangle}
\begin{environment content}
\end{environment content}
\end{dispListing*}

The starred version of \texttt{dispListing} takes \texttt{tcolorbox} \textsuperscript{P.12} \texttt{\langle options \rangle} as parameter. These \texttt{\langle options \rangle} are executed after \texttt{/tcb/docexample} \textsuperscript{P.511}.

\begin{dispListing*}{\langle \texttt{options} \rangle={\texttt{title=My listing}}}
This is a \LaTeX\ example.
\end{dispListing*}

\begin{absquote}
\begin{environment content}
\end{environment content}
\end{absquote}

Used to typeset an abstract as quoted and small text.

\begin{absquote}
|tcolorbox| provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.
\end{absquote}

\texttt{tcolorbox} provides an environment for colored and framed text boxes with a heading line. Optionally, such a box can be split in an upper and a lower part.


\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKey}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle key path\rangle\}

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on docKey$^{\text{P.493}}$ for the documentation of keys with the given \langle key path\rangle as root. The new environment \langle name\rangle takes the same parameters as docKey$^{\text{P.493}}$ itself. A second starred environment \langle name\rangle is also created, which is identical to \langle name\rangle but without index entry.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbmakedocSubKey}{docFooKey}{foo}
\begin{docFooKey}{foodummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key.
\end{docFooKey}
\end{tcbmakedocSubKey}
\begin{tcbmakedocSubKey*}{docFooKeys}{foo another dummy}{=\meta{nothing}}{no default, initially empty}
Some key (not indexed).
\end{tcbmakedocSubKey*}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/\texttt{foo/foodummy}=\langle\texttt{nothing}\rangle (no default, initially empty)
Some key.
/\texttt{foo/foo another dummy}=\langle\texttt{nothing}\rangle (no default, initially empty)
Some key (not indexed).
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{tcbmakedocSubKeys}\{\langle name\rangle\}\{\langle key path\rangle\}

Creates a new environment \langle name\rangle based on docKeys$^{\text{P.493}}$ for the documentation of keys with the given \langle key path\rangle as root. The new environment \langle name\rangle takes the same parameters as docKeys$^{\text{P.493}}$ itself.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{tcbmakedocSubKeys}{docFooKeys}{foo}
\begin{docFooKeys}
\item[doc parameter = \meta{nothing}]
\item[doc description = no default, initially empty],
\{ doc name = foodummy 2,
\},
\{ doc name = foo another dummy 2,
\{ doc no index,
\}
\}
Some description.
\end{docFooKeys}
\end{tcbmakedocSubKeys}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
/\texttt{foo/foodummy 2}=\langle\texttt{nothing}\rangle (no default, initially empty)
/\texttt{foo/foo another dummy 2}=\langle\texttt{nothing}\rangle (no default, initially empty)
Some description.
\end{verbatim}
\refCom\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.

We have created \foomakedocSubKey \rightarrow P. 490 as an example.

\refCom\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented \LaTeX\ macro with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is written without backslash. There is no page reference.

We have created \refCom\{foomakedocSubKey\} as an example.

We have created \foomakedocSubKey as an example.

\refEnv\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \langle name \rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.

We have created foocolorbox \rightarrow P. 491 as an example.

\refEnv\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented \LaTeX\ environment with given \langle name \rangle. There is no page reference.

We have created \refEnv\{foocolorbox\} as an example.

We have created foocolorbox as an example.

\refKey\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented key with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is the full path name of the key. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.

We have created /foo/footitle \rightarrow P. 493 as an example.

\refKey\{\langle name \rangle\}

References a documented key with given \langle name \rangle where \langle name \rangle is the full path name of the key. There is no page reference.

We have created \refKey\{/foo/footitle\} as an example.

We have created /foo/footitle as an example.
\refPathOperation\{\langle name\rangle\}
References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name\rangle. The page reference is suppressed if it links to the same page.

We have created \refPathOperation\{fooop\} as an example.

We have created fooop → P. 494 as an example.

\refPathOperation*\{\langle name\rangle\}
References a documented TikZ path operation with given \langle name\rangle. There is no page reference.

We have created \refPathOperation*\{fooop\} as an example.

We have created fooop as an example.

\refAux\{\langle name\rangle\}
References some auxiliary environment, key, value, or color. The \langle name\rangle is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink → P.513, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAux{/foo/footitle} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /foo/footitle as an example.

\refAuxcs\{\langle name\rangle\}
References some auxiliary macro \langle name\rangle where \langle name\rangle is written without backslash. The \langle name\rangle is colored according to /tcb/color hyperlink → P.513, if hyperref colorlinks are set, but there is no real link.

Some pages back, one can see \refAuxcs{fooaux} as an example.

Some pages back, one can see /fooaux as an example.

\colDef\{\langle text\rangle\}
Sets \langle text\rangle with the command color, see /tcb/color command → P.513.

This is my \colDef\{text\}.

This is my text.

\colOpt\{\langle text\rangle\}
Sets \langle text\rangle with the option color, see /tcb/color option → P.513.

This is my \colOpt\{text\}.

This is my text.
\colFade{(text)}

Sets \textit{(text)} with the fade color, see \texttt{/tcb/color fade}\textsuperscript{\textdegree}P.513.

This is my \colFade{text}.

This is my \textit{text}.

\tcbdocmarginnote[(options)]{(text)}

Creates a \texttt{tcolorbox} note with the given \textit{(text)} inside the margin using the \texttt{marginnote} package. The style of the \texttt{tcolorbox} is predefined and can be altered by \texttt{/tcb/doc marginnote}\textsuperscript{\textdegree}P.505 and the given \textit{(options)}.

Some text \tcbdocmarginnote\texttt{Note A}

which is commented by a note inside the margin.
Alternatively to \tcbdocmarginnote, you can always use \texttt{marginnote} with a \texttt{tcolorbox} directly.\par
This is further text\%
\tcbdocmarginnote\texttt{colframe=blue!50!white, colback=blue!5!white}\texttt{(Note B)}

with another note.

Note A

Note B

\tcbdocnew{(date)}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the \texttt{/tcb/doclang/new}\textsuperscript{\textdegree}P.514 text with the given \textit{(date)}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocnew\texttt{1981-10-29}.
% Next one is displayed in the margin:
\tcbdocmarginnote{\tcbdocnew\texttt{1978-02-09}}


New: 1978-02-09

\tcbdocupdated{(date)}

Auxiliary macro which typesets the \texttt{/tcb/doclang/updated}\textsuperscript{\textdegree}P.514 text with the given \textit{(date)}. It may be redefined for customization.

\tcbdocupdated\texttt{2014-09-19}.

26.2 Entry Content Option Keys

\texttt{/tcb/doc name\{name\} (no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \{name\} of the entry to document, i.e. the \{name\} of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.491}, etc. the \{name\} is set by a mandatory parameter, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc name}. \texttt{/tcb/doc name} also sets \{name\} to \texttt{/tcb/doc label} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.504}, \texttt{/tcb/doc index} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.504}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc sort index} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.504}.

```
\begin{docCommands}
\[
\begin{array}{l}
\texttt{doc no index, \% no index entries for this example} \\
\texttt{doc name = \textbf{bfseries},} \\
\end{array}
\]
\end{docCommands}
```

\texttt{\bfseries}

Font setting to bold face.

\texttt{/tcb/doc parameter\{parameters\} (no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \{parameters\} of the entry to document, i.e. the \{parameters\} of the command, environment, key, etc. For \texttt{docCommand} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.491}, etc. the \{parameters\} is set by a mandatory option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc parameter}.

```
\begin{docCommands}
\[
\begin{array}{l}
\texttt{doc no index, \% no index entries for this example} \\
\texttt{doc name = textbf,} \\
\texttt{doc parameter = \marg\{text\},} \\
\end{array}
\]
\end{docCommands}
```

\texttt{\textbf{\{text\}}} Sets \{text\} in bold face.

\texttt{/tcb/doc keypath\{key path\} (no default, initially empty)}

Sets the \{key path\} of the key to document. For \texttt{docKey} \texttt{\textasciitilde P.493} and \texttt{docKey* \textasciitilde P.493} the \{key path\} is set by a specialized option, but can also be set by \texttt{/tcb/doc keypath}.

```
\begin{docKeys}
\[
\begin{array}{l}
\texttt{doc no index, \% no index entries for this example} \\
\texttt{doc keypath = tikz,} \\
\texttt{doc name = fill,} \\
\texttt{doc parameter = \colOpt\{=\marg\{color\}\},} \\
\texttt{doc description = default is scope's color setting,} \\
\end{array}
\]
\end{docKeys}
```

\texttt{/tikz/fill\{color\} (default is scope's color setting)}

This option causes the path to be filled.
Sets a (short!) additional \textit{description} for \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, or \texttt{docPathOperation} \textsuperscript{P.494}. Such a description is mandatory for \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}.

\begin{docCommand*}[doc description=my description]{myCommandF}{\marg{argument}}
\texttt{myCommandF}\{\langle argument\rangle\}
\end{docCommand*}

This is the documentation of \texttt{myCommandF} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{myCommandF} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline]{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{-|}\{\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle\} ...
\end{docPathOperation*}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-|}.

\begin{docCommands}
\texttt{doc name = l_tcobox_example_tl, doc sort index = example_tl, \% sorted unter e like example}
\end{docCommands}

\begin{docPathOperation}{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{path \ldots -\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle \ldots;}
\end{docPathOperation}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-}. Note that the description \textit{text} may overlap with the text on the left hand side if too long. Linebreaks can be used inside the \textit{text}.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc label=pathline2]{-\textbar}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{-|}\{\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle\} ...
\end{docPathOperation*}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-|}. If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, then \textit{text} is used for labeling instead of the name of the definition.

\begin{docPathOperation*}[doc index=foo path (horizontal then vertical), doc label=pathline2]{-\textbar}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{-|}\{\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle\} ...
\end{docPathOperation*}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-|}.

\begin{docPathOperation}{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{path \ldots -\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle \ldots;}
\end{docPathOperation}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-}. If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, then \textit{text} is used for the index instead of the name of the definition.

\begin{docPathOperation}{-{}-}{\meta{coordinate or cycle}}
\texttt{path \ldots -\langle coordinate or cycle\rangle \ldots;}
\end{docPathOperation}

This is the documentation of \texttt{-}.

If used inside the option list of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, then \textit{text} is used for as sort key for the index instead of the name of the definition.
If set to **false**, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. The same effect is achieved by using e.g. `docCommand`→P.490 instead of `docCommand`→P.489.

**/tcb/doc into index=true/false** 
(default **true**, initially **true**) 

If set to **false**, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using `/tcb/doc into index=false`.

**/tcb/doc no index** 
(style, initially unset) 

If set, no index entries are written for the main documentation environments. This is a shortcut for using `/tcb/doc into index=false`.

**/tcb/doc marginnote=⟨options⟩** 
(no default, initially empty) 
Sets style ⟨options⟩ for the displayed box of the \tcbdocmarginnote →P.502 command.

- `\tcbset{doc marginnote={colframe=blue!50!white,colback=blue!5!white}}%` 
  This is some text \tcbdocmarginnote{Note A} which is commented by a note inside the margin.

  **Note A** 
  This is some text which is commented by a note inside the margin.

**/tcb/doc new=⟨date⟩** 
(style, no default) 

Adds a marginnote with a “New: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part. The intended use is inside the option list of `docCommand`→P.489, `docEnvironment`→P.491, etc.

- `\begin{docCommand}{doc new=2000-01-01}{foosomething}{\marg}{text}` 
  Some command for something. 
  `\end{docCommand}`

  **New:** 2000-01-01
  \foosomething{⟨text⟩}
  Some command for something.

**/tcb/doc updated=⟨date⟩** 
(style, no default) 

Adds a marginnote with a “Updated: ⟨date⟩” message at the beginning of the upper box part. 

**/tcb/doc new and updated=⟨new date⟩{⟨update date⟩}** 
(style, no default) 

Adds a marginnote with “New: ⟨new date⟩” and “Updated: ⟨update date⟩” messages at the beginning of the upper box part. See `/tcb/doc new`. 

505
26.3 Entry Customization Option Keys

\( /tcb/doc\ left=\langle length \rangle \)  (no default, initially 2em)
Sets the left hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489},
\texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}\[doc left=2cm,doc left indent=-2cm\]{myCommandA}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandA}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}.\texttt{\refCom{myCommandA}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{\myCommandA}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandA} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{\myCommandA} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

\( /tcb/doc\ right=\langle length \rangle \)  (no default, initially 0em)
Sets the right hand offset of the documentation texts from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489},
\texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}\[doc right=2cm\]{myCommandB}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandB}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}.\texttt{\refCom{myCommandB}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{\myCommandB}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandB} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{\myCommandB} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

\( /tcb/doc\ left\ indent=\langle length \rangle \)  (no default, initially -2em)
Sets the left hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489},
\texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}\[doc left indent=2cm\]{myCommandC}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandC}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}.\texttt{\refCom{myCommandC}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{\myCommandC}{\langle argument \rangle}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandC} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{\myCommandC} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}

\( /tcb/doc\ right\ indent=\langle length \rangle \)  (no default, initially 0pt)
Sets the right hand indent of documentation heads from \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489},
\texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, to \langle length \rangle.

\begin{docCommand*}\[doc right indent=-10mm,doc right=10mm,doc description=test value\]{myCommandD}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandD}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}.\texttt{\refCom{myCommandD}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}

\begin{docCommand*}{\myCommandD}{\langle argument \rangle}
(test value)
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandD} which takes one \langle argument \rangle. \texttt{\myCommandD} does some funny things with its \langle argument \rangle.
\end{docCommand*}
The head lines of the main documentation environments \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, etc, are \texttt{tcolorboxes} inside a \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307}. Options to the surrounding \texttt{tcbrasters} and the embedded \texttt{tcolorboxes} can be given using the following keys.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc raster command=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Sets \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for the surrounding \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307} of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docCommand*} \textsuperscript{P.490}, and \texttt{docCommands} \textsuperscript{P.490}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset \{doc raster command={raster before skip=7mm,raster after skip=0mm}\}}
\end{quote}

This is an example text.

\begin{quote}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandI}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandI}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{\refCom{myCommandI}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{docCommand*}
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\myCommandI{\langle argument\rangle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandI} which takes one \texttt{\langle argument\rangle}. \texttt{\myCommandI} does some funny things with its \texttt{\langle argument\rangle}.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc raster environment=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Sets \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for the surrounding \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307} of \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{P.491}, \texttt{docEnvironment*} \textsuperscript{P.491}, and \texttt{docEnvironments} \textsuperscript{P.492}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc raster key=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Sets \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for the surrounding \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307} of \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{P.493}, \texttt{docKey*} \textsuperscript{P.493}, and \texttt{docKeys} \textsuperscript{P.493}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc raster path=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Sets \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for the surrounding \texttt{tcbraster} \textsuperscript{P.307} of \texttt{docPathOperation} \textsuperscript{P.494}, \texttt{docPathOperation*} \textsuperscript{P.494}, and \texttt{docPathOperations} \textsuperscript{P.494}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc raster=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Shortcut for setting the same \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for \texttt{/tcb/doc raster command}, \texttt{/tcb/doc raster environment}, \texttt{/tcb/doc raster key}, and \texttt{/tcb/doc raster path}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcb/doc head command=\langle options \rangle} \quad \text{(no default, initially empty)}
\end{quote}

Sets \langle\texttt{options}\rangle for the head line of \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{P.489}, \texttt{docCommand*} \textsuperscript{P.490}, and \texttt{docCommands} \textsuperscript{P.490}.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash tcbset \{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!20!white, right color=blue!20!white}}\}}
\end{quote}

This is an example text.

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\textbackslash begin\{docCommand*\}\{myCommandE\}\{\marg{argument}\}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\refCom{myCommandE}} which takes one \texttt{\meta{argument}}. \texttt{\refCom{myCommandE}} does some funny things with its \texttt{\meta{argument}}.
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
\texttt{\myCommandE{\langle argument\rangle}}
This is the documentation of \texttt{\myCommandE} which takes one \texttt{\langle argument\rangle}. \texttt{\myCommandE} does some funny things with its \texttt{\langle argument\rangle}.
/tcb/doc head environment=⟨options⟩
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨options⟩ for the head line of docEnvironment →P.491, docEnvironment* →P.491, and docEnvironments →P.492.

\tcbset{doc head environment={beamer,boxsep=2pt,arc=2pt,colback=green!20!white}}
\begin{docEnvironment*}{myEnvironment}{⟨argument⟩}
This is the documentation of \refEnv{myEnvironment} which takes one \meta{argument}.
\end{docEnvironment*}

/tcb/doc head key=⟨options⟩
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨options⟩ for the head line of docKey →P.493, docKey* →P.493, and docKeys →P.493.

\tcbset{doc head key={boxsep=4pt,arc=4pt,boxrule=0.6pt,frame style=fill,interior style=fill,colframe=green!50!black}}
\begin{docKey}{/foo/myKey}{}{no value}
This is the documentation of \refKey{/foo/myKey}.
\end{docKey}

/tcb/doc head path=⟨options⟩
(no default, initially empty)
Sets ⟨options⟩ for the head line of docPathOperation →P.494, docPathOperation* →P.494, and docPathOperations →P.494.

\tcbset{doc head command={interior style={fill,left color=red!7!white,right color=blue!7!white}}}\begin{docPathOperation*}{-{}-}{⟨coordinate or cycle⟩}This is the documentation of \refPathOperation{-{}-}.
\end{docPathOperation*}

/tcb/doc head=⟨options⟩
(no default, initially empty)
Shortcut for setting the same ⟨options⟩ for /tcb/doc head command →P.507, /tcb/doc head environment, /tcb/doc head key, and /tcb/doc head path.
The description texts of the main documentation environments \texttt{docCommand} \textsuperscript{{P.}489}, \texttt{docEnvironment} \textsuperscript{{P.}491}, \texttt{docKey} \textsuperscript{{P.}493}, etc, are set in a compact form without indentation and \texttt{parskip=Opt}. This settings can overruled by using the following keys to insert code before (or after) the description texts.

\begin{tcblisting}{before doc body command=(code)}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandG}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandG} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myCommandG} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{after doc body command=(code)}
\begin{docCommand*}{myCommandH}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myCommandH} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myCommandH} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docCommand*}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{before doc body environment=(code)}
\begin{docEnvironment}{myEnvironment}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myEnvironment} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myEnvironment} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docEnvironment}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{after doc body environment=(code)}
\begin{docEnvironment}{myEnvironment}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myEnvironment} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myEnvironment} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docEnvironment}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{before doc body key=(code)}
\begin{docKey}{myKey}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myKey} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myKey} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docKey}
\end{tcblisting}

\begin{tcblisting}{after doc body key=(code)}
\begin{docKey}{myKey}{\marg{argument}}
This is the documentation of \refCom{myKey} which takes one \meta{argument}. \refCom{myKey} does some funny things with its \meta{argument}.
\end{docKey}
\end{tcblisting}
Executes \code{} before the description texts of \texttt{docPathOperation} \rightarrow P.494 and \texttt{docPathOperation*} \rightarrow P.494.

Executes \code{} after the description texts of \texttt{docPathOperation} \rightarrow P.494 and \texttt{docPathOperation*} \rightarrow P.494.

Shortcut for setting the same \texttt{options} for \texttt{/tcb/before doc body} command \rightarrow P.509, \texttt{/tcb/before doc body environment} \rightarrow P.509, \texttt{/tcb/before doc body key} \rightarrow P.509, and \texttt{/tcb/before doc body path}.

Shortcut for setting the same \texttt{options} for \texttt{/tcb/after doc body} command \rightarrow P.509, \texttt{/tcb/after doc body environment} \rightarrow P.509, \texttt{/tcb/after doc body key} \rightarrow P.509, and \texttt{/tcb/after doc body path}.
26.4 General Customization Option Keys

\texttt{/tcb/docexample} (style, no value)

Sets the style for \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} with the colors \texttt{ExampleBack} and \texttt{ExampleFrame}. To change the appearance of the examples, this style can be redefined.

\begin{verbatim}
% Predefined style:
\tcbset{
  docexample/.style={colframe=ExampleFrame,colback=ExampleBack,
    before skip=\medskipamount,after skip=\medskipamount,
    fontlower=\footnotesize}
}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{/tcb/documentation listing options} \texttt{=\{key list\}} (no default, initially style=tcbdocumentation)

Sets the options from the package \texttt{listings} \cite{7}. They are used inside \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} = \texttt{listings} only.

\texttt{/tcb/documentation listing style} \texttt{=\{listing style\}} (no default, initially tcbdocumentation)

Abbreviation for \texttt{documentation listing options=} \texttt{\{style=\ldots\}}. This key sets a \texttt{(style)} for the \texttt{listings} package, see \cite{7}. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/listing style} \texttt{=\{style\}} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} = \texttt{listings} only.

\texttt{/tcb/documentation minted options} \texttt{=\{key list\}} (no default, initially \texttt{tabsize=2,fontsize=\texttt{\small}})

Sets the options from the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14} which are used during typesetting of the listing, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted options} \texttt{=\{key list\}} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} = \texttt{minted} only.

\texttt{/tcb/documentation minted style} \texttt{=\{key list\}} (no default, initially unset)

Sets a \texttt{(style)} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{16} for the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted style} \texttt{=\{key list\}} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} = \texttt{minted} only.

\texttt{/tcb/documentation minted language} \texttt{=\{programming language\}} (no default, initially \texttt{latex})

Sets a \texttt{(programming language)} known to \texttt{Pygments} \cite{16} for the package \texttt{minted} \cite{14}, if used. Note that this is not identical to the key \texttt{/tcb/minted language} \texttt{=\{programming language\}} which is used for “normal” listings. Used for \texttt{/tcb/listing engine} = \texttt{minted} only.

The following two keys are deprecated and without function (v3.50 and above). Use \texttt{/tcb/before} \texttt{=\{macros\}} and \texttt{/tcb/after} \texttt{=\{macros\}} with appropriate values instead. Also see \texttt{/tcb/docexample}.

\texttt{/tcb/before example} \texttt{=\{macros\}} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \texttt{(macros)} which are executed before \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} additional to \texttt{/tcb/before}.

\texttt{/tcb/after example} \texttt{=\{macros\}} (no default, initially empty)

Sets the \texttt{(macros)} which are executed after \texttt{dispExample} and \texttt{dispListing} additional to \texttt{/tcb/after}.
/tcb/keywords bold=true|false 
(default true, initially true)

Keyword used in docEnvironment→P.491, docCommand→P.489, etc. are printed boldface (or not). Since the typewriter font is used, the effect may be invisible with Computer Modern fonts or similar which do not have a bold variant. Note that references to keywords are not printed boldface at all.

/tcb/index command=(macro) (no default, initially \index)

Replaces the internally used \index macro by the given ⟨macro⟩. The ⟨macro⟩ has to take one mandatory argument like \index. This option is mutually exclusive with /tcb/index command name.

/tcb/index command name=(name) (no default, initially unset)

Replaces the internally used \index macro by \index[(name)], i.e. \index{...} is replaced by \index[(name)]{...}. This option is intended to be used with \imakeidx and is mutually exclusive with /tcb/index command.

/tcb/index format=(format) (no default, initially pgf)

Determines the basic ⟨format⟩ of the generated index. Feasible values are:

- pgfsection: The index is formatted like in the pgf documentation (as a section).
- pgfchapter: The index is formatted like in the pgf documentation (as a chapter).
- pgf: Alias for pgfsection.
- doc: The index is assumed to be formatted by doc or ltxdoc. The usage of makeindex with -s gind.ist is assumed. The package hypdoc has to be loaded before tcolorbox. Only a limited set of customizations will work! This option cannot be unset when used!
- off: The index is not formatted by tcolorbox. Use this, if the index is formatted by other package like \imakeidx.

/tcb/index actual=(character) (no default, initially @)

Sets the character for “actual” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index quote=(character) (no default, initially ”)

Sets the character for “quote” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index level=(character) (no default, initially !)

Sets the character for “level” in automatic indexing.

/tcb/index default settings (style, no value)

Sets the makeindex default values for /tcb/index actual, /tcb/index quote, and /tcb/index level.

/tcb/index german settings (style, no value)

Sets the makeindex values recommended for German language texts. This is identical to setting the following:

\tcbset{index actual={=},index quote={!},index level={>}}
If set to `true`, the index entries are annotated with short descriptions given by `/tcb/doclang/environment`→`P.514`, `/tcb/doclang/key`→`P.514`, and others.

If set to `true`, the index entries colorized according to the color settings given by `/tcb/color environment`, `/tcb/color key`, and others.

If set to `true`, an additional index grouping is created where entries are gathered, e.g. `/tcb/index gather counters` creates an index entry ‘Colors’, see `/tcb/doclang/colors`→`P.514`, which gets all colors as sub entries.

Switches all index gather options from above to `true` (all) or `false` (none).

Sets the highlight color used by macro definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by environment definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by key definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by value definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by counter definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by length definitions.

Sets the highlight color used by color definitions.

Sets the highlight color for `/tcb/color command`, `/tcb/color environment`, `/tcb/color key`, `/tcb/color path`, `/tcb/color value`, `/tcb/color counter`, `/tcb/color length`, and `/tcb/color color`.

Sets the color used for optional arguments.

Sets the color used for faded text like `\path` in `docPathOperation`→`P.494`.

Sets the color for all hyper-links, i.e. all internal and external links.
26.5 Language Option Keys

The following keys are provided for language specific settings. The English language is predefined.

/tcb/english language (style, no value)
Sets all language specific settings to English.

/tcb/doclang/color=(text) (no default, initially color)
Text used in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/colors=(text) (no default, initially Colors)
Heading text in the index for colors.

/tcb/doclang/commands=(text) (no default, initially Commands)
Heading text in the index for commands.

/tcb/doclang/counter=(text) (no default, initially counter)
Text used in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/counters=(text) (no default, initially Counters)
Heading text in the index for counters.

/tcb/doclang/environment=(text) (no default, initially environment)
Text used in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environments=(text) (no default, initially Environments)
Heading text in the index for environments.

/tcb/doclang/environment content=(text) (no default, initially environment content)
Text used in docEnvironment→P. 491.

/tcb/doclang/index=(text) (no default, initially Index)
Heading text for the index.

/tcb/doclang/key=(text) (no default, initially key)
Text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/keys=(text) (no default, initially Keys)
Heading text used in the index for keys.

/tcb/doclang/length=(text) (no default, initially length)
Text used in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/lengths=(text) (no default, initially Lengths)
Heading text in the index for lengths.

/tcb/doclang/new=(text) (no default, initially New)
Announcement text for new content.

/tcb/doclang/path=(text) (no default, initially path operation)
Text used in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/paths=(text) (no default, initially Path operations)
Heading text in the index for path operations.

/tcb/doclang/pageshort=(text) (no default, initially P.)
Short text for page references.

/tcb/doclang/updated=(text) (no default, initially Updated)
Announcement text for updated content.
26.6 Predefined Colors of the Library

The following colors are predefined. They are used as default colors in some library commands.

Option ☐, Definition ☐, ExampleFrame ☐, ExampleBack ☐, Hyperlink ☐, Fade ☐.
A  Picture Credits

The following pictures were used inside this documentation.

- **Basilica_5.png**
  - http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Basilica_5.png
  - Photograph taken by Thomas F. Sturm.

- **lichtspiel.jpg**

- **crinklepaper.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **pink_marble.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **blueshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org

- **goldshade.png**
  - Created with GIMP.
  - http://www.gimp.org
References


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- key, 478</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foo path (horizontal then vertical) path operation, 504</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/foo/myKey key, 508</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>! key, 478</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 value, 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 value, 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 value, 168</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>above key, 445</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absquote environment, 498</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add to height key, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add to list key, 134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add to natural height key, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>add to width key, 40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjust text key, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjusted title key, 23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjusted title after break key, 402</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after key, 87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after app key, 467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after doc body key, 510</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after doc body command key, 509</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after doc body environment key, 509</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after doc body key key, 509</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after doc body path key, 510</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after example key, 511</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after float key, 86</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after float app key, 467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after float pre key, 467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after lower key, 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after lower app key, 466</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after lower pre key, 466</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after lower* key, 74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after pre key, 467</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after skip key, 89</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after skip balanced key, 88</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after title key, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after title app key, 465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after title pre key, 465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after title* key, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after upper key, 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after upper app key, 465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after upper pre key, 465</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after upper* key, 72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alert key, 288</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all key, 10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all value, 54, 55, 316, 404, 407</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align lower key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align upper key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align* key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align* lower key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams align* upper key, 387</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams equation key, 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams equation lower key, 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams equation* key, 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams equation* lower key, 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams equation* upper key, 386</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather lower key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather upper key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather* key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather* lower key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams gather* upper key, 388</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams nodisplayskip key, 389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams nodisplayskip lower key, 389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ams nodisplayskip upper key, 389</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc key, 42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc is angular key, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arc is curved key, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>areasize value, 461</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>areasize* value, 461</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as-is value, 283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at key, 446</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at begin tikz key, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at begin tikz reset key, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at end tikz key, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at end tikz reset key, 214</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom key, 178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom center key, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom left key, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom right key, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom text left key, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom text right key, 177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to bottom* key, 178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top key, 178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top center key, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top left key, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top right key, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top text left key, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top text right key, 176</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach boxed title to top* key, 178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach title key, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach title to upper key, 25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto value, 110, 382</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto counter key, 125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto limited value, 110</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auto outer arc key, 44</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoparskip key, 91</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base value, 92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>base color key, 296</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baseline key, 92</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baselineskip value, 404</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
beamer key, 258
beamer Skin, 258
beamer alerted key, 288
beamer hidden key, 287
beamerfirst Skin, 260
beamermiddle Skin, 261
beamernodeSkin, 260
bean arc key, 43
before key, 87
before app key, 467
before doc body key, 510
before doc body command key, 509
before doc body environment key, 509
before doc body key key, 509
before doc body path key, 510
before example key, 511
before float key, 86
before float app key, 467
before float pre key, 467
before lower key, 73
before lower app key, 466
before lower pre key, 466
before lower* key, 73
before nobreak key, 93
before pre key, 467
before skip key, 89
before skip balanced key, 88
before title key, 70
before title app key, 465
before title pre key, 465
before title* key, 70
before upper key, 71
before upper app key, 465
before upper pre key, 465
before upper* key, 71
beforeafter skip key, 89
beforeafter skip balanced key, 88
below key, 445
between key, 446
bicolor key, 244
bicolor Skin, 243
bicolor jigsaw key, 250
bicolor jigsaw Skin, 250
bicolorfirst Skin, 247
bicolorfirst jigsaw Skin, 251
bicolorlast Skin, 249
bicolorlast jigsaw Skin, 253
bicolormiddle Skin, 248
bicolormiddle jigsaw Skin, 252
blank key, 233
blanker key, 266
blankest key, 267
blend before title key, 130
blend before title code key, 131
blend into key, 129
bookmark key, 114
bookmark* key, 114
borderline key, 199
borderline east key, 202
borderline horizontal key, 203
borderline north key, 202
borderline south key, 202
borderline vertical key, 203
borderline west key, 202
both value, 142
down key, 49
down value, 39, 92, 136, 315
down seam value, 136
downloadkey, 41
downloadrule at break key, 406
downseep at break key, 406
downtitle key, 49
box align key, 92
\boxarrayclear, 427
\boxarraygetbox, 431
\boxarraygetdepth, 432
\boxarraygetheight, 432
\boxarraygetsize, 429
\boxarraygettotalheight, 433
\boxarraygetwidth, 432
\boxarrayreset, 426
boxarraystore environment, 429
boxed title size key, 180
boxed title style key, 181
boxes key, 441
boxrule key, 42
boxsep key, 45
\brackets, 497
break value, 391
break at key, 403
breakable key, 9, 401
broken value, 187–189
capture key, 106
center key, 97
center value, 36, 39, 92, 136, 315
center lower key, 38
center seam value, 136
center title key, 39
center upper key, 38
change value, 391
change apart value, 391
change break value, 391
change standard value, 390
check odd page key, 115
circular arc key, 43
clear preamble key, 485
clear preclass key, 485
clip lower key, 198
clip title key, 197
clip upper key, 197
clip watermark key, 193
clipted value, 297
code key, 120
colback key, 33
colbacklower key, 245
colbacktitle key, 33
\colDef, 501
\colFade, 502
colframe key, 33
collower key, 34
colon value, 130
colon hang value, 130 \colOpt, 501
color key, 514
color color key, 513
color command key, 513
color counter key, 513
color definition key, 513
color environment key, 513
color fade key, 513
color from key, 296
color hyperlink key, 513
color key, 513
color length key, 513
color option key, 513
color path key, 513
color value key, 513
Colors
Definition, 515
ExampleBack, 515
ExampleFrame, 515
Fade, 515
foocolor, 496
Hyperlink, 515
Option, 515
tcbcolback, 166
tcbcolbacklower, 166
tcbcolbacktitle, 166
tcbcolframe, 166
tcbcollower, 166
tcbcoltitle, 166
tcbcolupper, 166
colspacing key, 514
coltext key, 34
coltitle key, 34
column key, 443
column* key, 443
columns key, 439
colupper key, 34
Commands
\boxarrayclear, 427
\boxarraygetbox, 431
\boxarraygetdepth, 432
\boxarraygetheight, 432
\boxarraygetsize, 429
\boxarraygettotalheight, 433
\boxarraygetwidth, 432
\boxarrayreset, 426
\brackets, 497
\colDef, 501
\colFade, 502
\colOpt, 501
\consumeboxarray, 430
\consumetcboxarray, 430
\cs, 496
\DeclareTCBInputListing, 336
comment outside listing key, 349
column side listing key, 348
counter key, 514
Counters
  fooCounter, 495
tcb raster column, 307
tcb raster num, 307
tcb raster row, 307
counters key, 514
coverage key, 440
CrefName key, 128
crefname key, 128
\cs, 496
dash value, 130
draft mode, 226
downhill value, 54, 55
\docValue, 495
draftmode key, 226
drop fuzzy midday shadow key, 205
drop fuzzy shadow key, 204
drop fuzzy shadow east key, 208
drop fuzzy shadow north key, 208
drop fuzzy shadow northeast key, 208
extikzpicture environment, 482
extras key, 408
extras broken key, 408
extras broken pre key, 475
extras first key, 408
extras first and middle key, 409
extras first and middle pre key, 475
extras first pre key, 475
extras last key, 408
extras last pre key, 475
extras middle key, 408
extras middle and last key, 408
extras middle and last pre key, 475
extras middle pre key, 475
extras title after break key, 409
extras unbroken key, 408
extras unbroken and first key, 408
extras unbroken and first pre key, 475
extras unbroken and last key, 408
extras unbroken and last pre key, 475
extras unbroken pre key, 475
extrude bottom by key, 102
extrude by key, 102
extrude left by key, 101
extrude right by key, 101
extrude top by key, 102

Fade color, 515
fade in key, 298
fade out key, 298

Fadings
  east, 297
  north, 297
  semi east, 297
  semi north, 297
  semi south, 297
  semi west, 297
  south, 297
  west, 297
false value, 87, 93, 317, 401
fbox value, 50
figures value, 129
fill downwards key, 99
final value, 463
finish key, 219
finish broken key, 220
finish broken pre key, 473
finish fading vignette key, 303
finish first key, 220
finish first and middle key, 220
finish first and middle pre key, 473
finish first pre key, 473
finish last key, 220
finish last pre key, 473
finish middle key, 220
finish middle and last key, 220
finish middle and last pre key, 473
finish middle pre key, 473
finish pre key, 473
finish raised fading vignette key, 302
finish unbroken key, 220
finish unbroken and first key, 220
finish unbroken and first pre key, 473
finish unbroken and last key, 220
finish unbroken and last pre key, 473
finish unbroken pre key, 473
finish vignette key, 302
first value, 187–189, 407
first and middle value, 187, 407
fit key, 455
fit algorithm key, 461
fit basedim key, 456
fit fontsize macros key, 457
fit height from key, 460
fit height plus key, 458
fit maxfondiff key, 463
fit maxfondiffgap key, 463
fit maxstep key, 463
fit maximwidthdiff key, 463
fit maximwidthdiffgap key, 463
fit skip key, 456
fit to key, 456
fit to height key, 456
fit warning key, 463
fit width from key, 459
fit width plus key, 458
fitbox value, 106
fitting key, 9
fixed height key, 444
flip title key, 178
float key, 85
float* key, 85
floatplacement key, 85
flush center value, 36, 38, 39
flush left key, 97
flush left value, 36, 38, 39
flush right key, 97
flush right value, 36, 38, 39
flushleft lower key, 38
flushleft title key, 39
flushleft upper key, 38
flushright lower key, 38
flushright title key, 39
flushright upper key, 38
fontlower key, 35
fontsize key, 441
fontsize value, 461
fontsize* value, 461
fonttitle key, 35
fontupper key, 35
\fooaux, 495, 512
fooaux key, 495
foonauxenv environment, 495
foocolor color, 496
foocolorbox environment, 495
foocolorbox* environment, 491
foocounter counter, 495
foodummy key, 499
foodummy 2 key, 499
\foolength length, 496
\foomakedocSubKey, 490
\foomakedocSubKey*, 490
fooop path operation, 494
\foosomething length, 496
fooop path operation, 494
fooop path operation, 494
footitle key, 493
force nobeforeafter key, 87
force remake key, 478
forced value, 52, 98
forced center value, 110
forced left value, 110
forced right value, 110
frame code key, 158
frame code app key, 473
frame code pre key, 473
frame empty key, 158
frame engine key, 155
frame hidden key, 170
frame style key, 169
frame style image key, 169
frame style tile key, 170
freelance key, 278
freelance Skin, 278
freelance value, 155, 156
freelancelast Skin, 278
freelancemiddle Skin, 278
freeze extension key, 358
freeze file key, 358
freeze jpg key, 358
freeze none key, 358
freeze pdf key, 358
freeze png key, 358
fuzzy halo key, 205
fuzzy shadow key, 211
geometry nodes key, 157
graphical environment key, 155
graphics directory key, 282
graphics options key, 282
graphics orientation key, 283
graphics pages key, 282
grow sidewards by key, 97
grow to left by key, 96
grow to right by key, 96
halign key, 36
halign code key, 37
halign lower key, 37
halign lower code key, 37
halign title key, 38
halign title code key, 38
halign upper key, 36
halign upper code key, 37
halo key, 205
bbox key, 106
bbox value, 106
bbox boxed title key, 185
height key, 59, 439
height fill key, 62
height fixed for key, 407
height from key, 60
height plus key, 59
hide key, 287
highlight math key, 385
highlight math style key, 385
hooks key, 9
horizontal size key, 295
hybrid value, 461
hybrid* value, 461
Hyperlink color, 515
hyperlink key, 221
hyperlink interior key, 222
hyperlink node key, 222
hyperlink title key, 222
hyperref key, 221
hyperref interior key, 221
hyperref node key, 221
hyperref title key, 221
hypertarget key, 114
hyperurl key, 222
hyperurl interior key, 222
hyperurl node key, 222
hyperurl title key, 222
hyperurl* key, 222
hyperurl* interior key, 222
hyperurl* node key, 222
hyperurl* title key, 222
hyphenationfix key, 108
if odd page key, 115
if odd page or oneside key, 115
if odd page or oneside* key, 116
if odd page* key, 116
IfBlankF key, 121
IfBlankT key, 121
IfBlankTF key, 121
IfBooleanF key, 123
IfBooleanT key, 123
IfBooleanTF key, 123
\ifboxarrayempty, 431
IfEmptyF key, 121
IfEmptyT key, 121
IfEmptyTF key, 121
IfNoValueF key, 122
IfNoValueT key, 122
IfNoValueTF key, 122
Image comment key, 343
\imagename, 280
\imagepage, 281
index key, 114, 514
index actual key, 512
index annotate key, 513
index colorize key, 513
526
index command key, 512
index command name key, 512
index default settings key, 512
index format key, 512
index gather all key, 513
index gather colors key, 513
index gather commands key, 513
index gather counters key, 513
index gather environments key, 513
index gather keys key, 513
index gather lengths key, 513
index gather none key, 513
index gather paths key, 513
index gather values key, 513
index german settings key, 512
index level key, 512
index quote key, 512
index* key, 114
inherit height key, 63
input source on error key, 484
inside node key, 293
interior code key, 159
interior code app key, 474
interior code pre key, 474
interior empty key, 159
interior engine key, 156
interior hidden key, 171
interior style key, 170
interior style image key, 171
interior style tile key, 171
interior titled code key, 158
interior titled code app key, 473
interior titled code pre key, 474
interior titled empty key, 158
interior titled engine key, 155
invisible key, 27
invisible value, 24, 27, 29
justify value, 36

key key, 514

Keys

/foo/myKey, 508
/foo/
  fooaux, 495
  foodummy, 499
  foodummy 2, 499
  footitle, 493
/tcb/
  add to height, 61
  add to list, 134
  add to natural height, 61
  add to width, 40
  adjust text, 23
  adjusted title, 23
  adjusted title after break, 402
  after, 87
  after app, 467
  after doc body, 510
  after doc body command, 509
after doc body environment, 509
after doc body key, 509
after doc body path, 510
after example, 511
after float, 86
after float app, 467
after float pre, 467
after lower, 74
after lower app, 466
after lower pre, 466
after lower*, 74
after pre, 467
after skip, 89
after skip balanced, 88
after title, 70
after title app, 465
after title pre, 465
after title*, 70
after upper, 72
after upper app, 465
after upper pre, 465
after upper*, 72
alert, 288
ams align, 387
ams align lower, 387
ams align upper, 387
ams align*, 387
ams align lower, 388
ams align upper, 388
ams align*, 388
ams gather, 388
ams gather lower, 388
ams gather upper, 388
ams gather*, 388
ams gather lower, 388
ams gather upper, 388
ams gather*, 388
ams nodisplayskip, 389
ams nodisplayskip lower, 389
ams nodisplayskip upper, 389
arc, 42
arc is angular, 44
arc is curved, 44
at begin tikz, 214
at begin tikz reset, 214
at end tikz, 214
at end tikz reset, 214
attach boxed title to bottom, 178
attach boxed title to bottom center, 177
attach boxed title to bottom left, 177
attach boxed title to bottom right, 177
column*, 443
downsize, 443
font, 443
grow, 444
height, 444
name, 443
row, 444
rowspan, 444
sequence, 447
span, 444
xshift, 448
yshift, 449
/tcb/posterset/
boxes, 441
coverage, 440
fontsize, 441
no coverage, 440
poster, 439
/tcb/vig/
base color, 296
color from, 296
draw method, 297
east size, 294
east style, 295
fade in, 298
fade out, 298
horizontal size, 295
inside node, 293
lower left corner, 293
lowered color, 296
north size, 294
north style, 295
outside node, 294
over node, 294
over node offset, 294
raised color, 296
scope, 296
semi fade in, 298
semi fade out, 298
size, 295
south size, 294
south style, 295
upper right corner, 293
vertical size, 295
west size, 294
west style, 296
xmax, 293
xmin, 293
ymax, 293
ymin, 293
/tikz/
tcb fill frame, 175
tcb fill interior, 175
tcb fill title, 175
keys key, 514
keywords bold key, 512
label key, 111
label is label key, 111
label is zlabel key, 111
label separator key, 380
label type key, 112
landscape* value, 283
last value, 187–189, 407
left key, 45
left value, 36, 142, 315
left skip key, 90
left* key, 45
lefthand ratio key, 139
lefthand width key, 138
leftlower key, 46
leftright skip key, 90
lefrule key, 41
leftrtitle key, 46
leftupper key, 46
length key, 514
Lengths

/fooleNGTH, 496
lengths key, 514
lifted shadow key, 212
lines before break key, 402
list entry key, 134
list inside key, 132
list text key, 134
list type key, 132
listing above comment key, 350
listing above text key, 349
listing above* comment key, 350
listing above* text key, 349
listing and comment key, 346
listing and text key, 342
listing engine key, 342
listing file key, 342
listing inputencoding key, 338
listing only key, 342
listing options key, 337
listing options app key, 475
listing options pre key, 475
listing outside comment key, 349
listing outside text key, 347
listing remove caption key, 338
listing side comment key, 348
listing side text key, 347
listing style key, 337
listing utf8 key, 339
listings key, 9
listings value, 129, 342
listingsutf8 key, 9
lower left corner key, 293
lower separated key, 31
lowerbox key, 29
lowered color key, 296

magazine key, 9
many key, 10
\marg, 496
margin value, 392
margin apart value, 392
margin break value, 392
marker key, 239
math key, 386
math lower key, 386
maximum key, 62
\meta, 496
middle key, 49
middle value, 187–189, 407
middle and last value, 187–189, 407
minimal value, 50
minimum center value, 110
minimum for current equal height group key, 68
minimum for equal height group key, 68
minimum left value, 110
minimum right value, 110
minipage key, 106, 484
minipage value, 106, 308
minipage boxed title key, 185
minipage boxed title* key, 185
minted key, 9
minted value, 342
minted language key, 340
minted options key, 340
minted options app key, 475
minted options pre key, 475
minted style key, 341
most key, 10
move upwards key, 99
move upwards* key, 99
name key, 443, 480
nameref key, 113
natural height key, 59
new key, 514
\newboxarray, 426
\newtcbexternalizeenvironment, 486
\newtcbexternalizetcolorbox, 486
\NewTCBInputListing, 336
\newtcbinputlisting, 335
\NewTCBListing, 333
\newtcblisting, 331
\NewTCBox, 20
\newtcb, 19
\NewTCBoxFit, 453
\newtcbfit, 452
\NewTcbTheorem, 372
\newtcbtheorem, 372
\NewTColorBox, 16
\newtcolorbox, 15
\NewTotalTCBox, 21
\NewTotalTCBoxFit, 454
\NewTotalTColorBox, 18
nirvana key, 124
no borderline key, 201
no boxed title style key, 184
no counter key, 126
no coverage key, 440
no extras key, 408
no extras first key, 408
no extras last key, 408
no extras middle key, 408
no extras title after break key, 409
no extras unbroken key, 408
no finish key, 220
no finish first key, 220
no finish last key, 220
no finish middle key, 220
no finish unbroken key, 220
no label type key, 112
no listing options key, 337
no overlay key, 81
no process key, 355
no recording key, 148
no shadow key, 204
no underlay key, 217
no underlay boxed title key, 218
no underlay first key, 218
no underlay last key, 218
no underlay middle key, 218
no underlay unbroken key, 218
no watermark key, 189
nobeforeafter key, 87
nofloat key, 85
none value, 52, 98, 142, 316, 404, 407
noparskip key, 91
nophantom key, 111
normal value, 50, 180
north fading, 297
north value, 54, 55
north size key, 294
north style key, 295
northeast value, 54, 55
northwest value, 54, 55
notitle key, 23
notitle after break key, 402
number format key, 127
number freestyle key, 127
number within key, 127
\oarg, 496
octogon arc key, 43
off value, 463, 512
on value, 463
on line key, 109
only key, 286
opacityback key, 57
opacitybacklower key, 245
opacitybacktitle key, 57
opacityfill key, 57
opacityframe key, 57
opacitylower key, 58
opacitytext key, 58
opacitytitle key, 58
opacityupper key, 58
Option color, 515
outer arc key, 44
outside node key, 294
over node key, 294
over node offset key, 294
overlaplower key, 246
overlay key, 80
overlay app key, 468
\skinExampleSet, 228

Skins

beamer, 258
beamerfirst, 260
beamerlast, 261
beamermiddle, 260
biclor, 243
biclor jigsaw, 250
bicolorfirst, 247
bicolorfirst jigsaw, 251
bicolorlast, 249
bicolorlast jigsaw, 253
bicolormiddle, 248
bicolormiddle jigsaw, 252
draft, 276
empty, 265
emptyfirst, 268
emptylast, 269
emptymiddle, 269
enhanced, 231
enhanced jigsaw, 237
enhancedfirst, 235
enhancedfirst jigsaw, 238
enhancedlast, 236
enhancedlast jigsaw, 242
enhancedmiddle, 235
enhancedmiddle jigsaw, 239
freelance, 278
freelancefirst, 278
freelancelast, 278
freelancemiddle, 278
spartan, 275
standard, 229
standard jigsaw, 230
tile, 254
tilefirst, 255
tilelast, 257
tilemiddle, 256
widget, 262
widgetfirst, 263
widgetlast, 264
widgetmiddle, 265
skins key, 9
small value, 50
smart shadow arc key, 212
south fading, 297
south value, 54, 55
south style key, 294
south style, 295
southeast value, 54, 55
southwest value, 54, 55
space key, 64
space to key, 65
space to both key, 65
space to lower key, 64
space to upper key, 64
spacing key, 439
span key, 444
spartan key, 275
spartan Skin, 275
spartan value, 155, 156
split key, 66
spread key, 100
spread downwards key, 100
spread inwards key, 99
spread outwards key, 99
spread sideways key, 100
spread upwards key, 100
spread upwards* key, 100
square key, 64
squeeze value, 461
squeezed title key, 24
squeezed title* key, 24
standard key, 229
standard Skin, 229
standard value, 155, 156, 180, 390
standard jigsaw key, 230
standard jigsaw Skin, 230
step key, 112
step and label key, 112
store to box array key, 427
subtitle style key, 26
tables value, 129
tabulars key, 76
tabulars* key, 76
tabularx key, 77
tabularx* key, 77
tcb fill frame key, 175
tcb fill interior key, 175
tcb fill title key, 175
\tcbreak, 414
tcbclipframe environment, 194
tcbclipinterior environment, 196
tcbcliptitle environment, 196
tcbcolback color, 166
tcbcolbacklower color, 166
tcbcolbacktitle color, 166
tcbcolframe color, 166
tcbcollower color, 166
tcbcoltitle color, 166
tcbcolupper color, 166
\tcbcinedraftmode, 225
\tcbccounter, 125
\tcbdocmarginnote, 502
\tcbdocnew, 502
\tcbdocupdated, 502
tcbexternal environment, 479
\cbdEXTERNALIZE, 478
\tcffitsteps, 455
\tcffontsize, 451
\tcffitsteps, 455
\tcffontsize, 451
title key, 23

title value, 50, 180

title after break key, 402

title code key, 160

title code app key, 474

title code pre key, 474

title empty key, 160

title engine key, 156

title filled key, 33

title hidden key, 173

title style key, 172

title style image key, 173

title style tile key, 173

titlebox key, 24

titlerule key, 42

\useboxarray, 429
\usetcbboxarray, 430

unbreakable key, 402

unbroken value, 187–189

unbroken and first value, 187–189

underlay key, 217

underlay boxed title key, 218

underlay boxed title pre key, 472

underlay broken key, 218

underlay broken pre key, 472

underlay first key, 218

underlay first and middle key, 218

underlay first and middle pre key, 472

underlay first pre key, 472

underlay last key, 218

underlay last pre key, 472

underlay middle key, 218

underlay middle and last key, 218

underlay middle and last pre key, 472

underlay middle pre key, 472

underlay pre key, 472

underlay raised fading vignette key, 301

underlay raised shading vignette key, 301

underlay shade in vignette key, 301

underlay unbroken key, 218

underlay unbroken and first key, 218

underlay unbroken and first pre key, 472

underlay unbroken and last key, 218

underlay unbroken and last pre key, 472

underlay unbroken and last pre key, 472

underlay vignette key, 300

unlimited value, 400, 401

updated key, 514

uphill value, 54, 55

upper right corner key, 293

upperbox key, 27

use color stack key, 404

use counter key, 126

use counter from key, 126

use counter* key, 126

use height from group key, 69

Values

0, 168
1, 168
2, 168
all, 54, 55, 316, 404, 407
areasize, 461
areasize*, 461
as-is, 283
auto, 110, 382
auto limited, 110
base, 92
baselineskip, 404
both, 142
bottom, 39, 92, 136, 315
bottom seam, 136
break, 391
broken, 187–189
center, 36, 39, 92, 136, 315
center seam, 136
change, 391
change apart, 391
change break, 391
change standard, 390
clipped, 297
colon, 130
colon hang, 130
copy, 180
dash, 130
dash hang, 130
direct, 297
doc, 512
downhill, 54, 55
east, 54, 55
empty, 155, 156
evenpage, 52, 98
false, 87, 93, 317, 401
fbox, 50
figures, 129
final, 463
first, 187–189, 407
first and middle, 187, 407
fitbox, 106
flush center, 36, 38, 39
flush left, 36, 38, 39
flush right, 36, 38, 39
fontsize, 461
widgetlast Skin, 264
widgetmiddle Skin, 263
width key, 40, 439

xmax key, 293
xmin key, 293
xparse key, 10
xshift key, 179, 448

ymax key, 293
ymin key, 293
yshift key, 179, 449
yshift* key, 179
yshifttext key, 179